

AMERICAN CUTTING EDGE



LEVEL 3

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

with minidictionary

www.irLanguage.com

STUDENTS' BOOK

sarah cunningham peter moor
with jane comyns carr



longman.com

AMERICAN CUTTING EDGE

LEVEL 3



این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجع زبان ایرانیان
به صورت نشر برخط و حامل به ثبت رسیده است.
کپی برداری از آن خلاف قانون، شرع و اخلاق است و شامل پیگرد خواهد شد.



STUDENTS' BOOK

sarah cunningham peter moor
with jane comyns carr

Module	Grammar	Vocabulary	Reading and Listening
Module 1 Leisure and lifestyle page 6 Do you remember? page 14	1) Question forms 2) Present Simple Pronunciation: weak forms in questions	Vocabulary: leisure activities WB Vocabulary booster: sports	Reading: <i>My idea of fun!</i>
Module 2 Important firsts page 15 Do you remember? page 22	1) Past Simple 2) Time phrases often used in the past (<i>in, on, at, ago</i>) Pronunciation: pronunciation of Past Simple forms	Vocabulary: words to describe feelings Pronunciation: stress in adjectives Wordspot: <i>feel</i>	Listening: <i>The first time ever I saw your face</i> (song) WB Listen and read: <i>The magic of movies</i>
Module 3 The best way to learn page 23 Do you remember? page 30	1) <i>Can, can't, have to, don't have to</i> 2) <i>Should/Shouldn't</i> Pronunciation: weak forms of <i>can/can't</i>	Vocabulary: studying new vocabulary WB Vocabulary booster: things in a school	Reading: <i>What's the secret of successful language learning?</i>
Module 4 Special occasions page 31 Do you remember? page 38	1) Present Continuous (and Present Simple) 2) Present Continuous for future arrangements	Vocabulary: dates and special occasions Pronunciation: <i>th /θ/ or /ð/</i> Wordspot: <i>day</i> WB Vocabulary booster: special occasions	Listening: New Year in two different cultures WB Listen and read: <i>Religious festivals around the world</i>
Module 5 Appearances page 39 Do you remember? page 46	1) Comparatives and superlatives 2) Describing what people look like Pronunciation: schwa /ə/	Wordspot: <i>look</i> Pronunciation: counting the number of syllables WB Vocabulary booster: parts of the face and body	Reading: <i>You're gorgeous!</i>
Module 6 Time off page 47	1) Intentions and wishes (<i>going to, planning to, would like to, would prefer to</i>) 2) Predictions (<i>will and won't</i>) Pronunciation: contractions of <i>I am</i> and <i>I would</i> Pronunciation: contractions of <i>will</i>	Vocabulary: vacations WB Vocabulary booster: things you take on vacation	Listening: the vacation from hell WB Listen and read: vacation advertisements
Consolidation Modules 1–6 (pages 54–55)			
Module 7 Fame and fortune page 56 Do you remember? page 64	1) Present Perfect and Past Simple with <i>for</i> 2) Present Perfect and Past Simple with other time words Pronunciation: contractions and weak forms	Vocabulary: ambitions and dreams Wordspot: <i>know</i>	Reading: <i>Before they were famous</i>
Module 8 Countries and cultures page 65 Do you remember? page 71	1) Using articles 2) Phrases with and without <i>the</i>	Vocabulary: geographical features Pronunciation: geographical terms WB Vocabulary booster: things you find in cities	WB Listen and read: <i>Volcanos</i>

Task and Speaking

Writing

Functions and Situations

Preparation for task: read a fact file from a website

Task: compile a fact file about your partner (extended speaking)

Optional writing: write your fact file

WB **Improve your writing:** punctuation (1)

Real life: questions you can't live without

Pronunciation: stress and intonation in *-wh* questions

Preparation for task: people describe the first time they did something (listening)

Task: tell a first-time story (extended speaking)

Writing: linking ideas in narrative

WB **Spelling:** *-ed* endings

Preparation for task: teacher talking about her class contract (listening)

Task: make a list of guidelines for a language class (extended speaking)

Optional writing: write the classroom guidelines

WB **Improve your writing:** writing a paragraph

WB **Spelling:** finding mistakes

Real life: making requests and asking for permission

Pronunciation: polite intonation

Preparation for task: important dates (listening)

Task: prepare and talk about a personal calendar (extended speaking)

Writing: a letter of invitation

WB **Improve your writing:** a letter of invitation

WB **Spelling:** *-ing* forms

Real life: phrases for special occasions

Pronunciation: friendly, positive intonation

Preparation for task: description of a crime

Task: describe a suspect to the police (extended speaking)

Optional writing: write a description of a suspect

WB **Improve your writing:** writing a description

WB **Spelling:** double letters

Real life: social chitchat

Pronunciation: intonation for sounding interested

Preparation for task: vacation words and phrases

Task: plan your dream vacation (extended speaking)

Writing: write a postcard

WB **Improve your writing:** more postcards

WB **Spelling:** words with *-ed* and *-ing*

Preparation for task: discuss questions to ask famous people

Task: prepare an interview (extended speaking)

Optional writing: write your interview

WB **Improve your writing:** a minibiography

Real life: checking that you understand

Pronunciation: stress in questions

Preparation for task: Quiz *How much do you know about New Zealand?* (extended listening)

Task: complete a map of New Zealand (extended speaking)

Writing: formal and informal letters

WB **Improve your writing:** formal letters and informal notes

WB **Spelling:** plural nouns

Module	Grammar	Vocabulary	Reading and Listening
--------	---------	------------	-----------------------

Module 9 Old and new page 72 Do you remember? page 80	1) <i>May, might, will definitely, etc.</i> 2) <i>Present tense after if, when, before, and other time words</i> <i>Pronunciation: won't</i>	Vocabulary: modern and traditional Wordspot: <i>change</i> WB Vocabulary booster: technology	Reading: <i>The changing face of shopping</i>
--	--	---	--

Module 10 Take care! page 81 Do you remember? page 88	1) <i>Used to</i> 2) <i>Past Continuous</i> <i>Pronunciation: weak and strong forms of be</i>	Vocabulary: accidents <i>Pronunciation: stress in medical vocabulary</i>	Reading and listening: <i>Health problems: How much do you know?</i> WB Listen and read: <i>The secrets of sleep</i>
--	---	--	---

Module 11 The best things in life ... page 89	1) <i>Gerunds (-ing forms), verbs of liking and disliking</i> 2) <i>Like doing and would like to do (gerunds and infinitives)</i> <i>Pronunciation: weak and strong forms of to</i>	Wordspot: <i>like</i> WB Vocabulary booster: <i>-ed and -ing adjectives</i>	Reading: <i>When an interest becomes an obsession ...</i>
---	---	--	--

Consolidation Modules 7–11 (pages 97–98)

Module 12 Must have it! page 99 Do you remember? page 106	1) <i>Passive forms (past, present, future)</i> 2) <i>Sentences joined with that, which, and who</i> <i>Pronunciation: stress and weak forms with the passive</i>	Vocabulary: objects	Listening: designer goods WB Listen and read: <i>Diamonds are forever</i>
--	---	----------------------------	--

Module 13 The right kind of person page 107 Do you remember? page 115	1) <i>Present Perfect Simple and Continuous with the "unfinished past"</i> 2) <i>How long ...?, for, since, and all</i> <i>Pronunciation: contractions and weak forms</i>	Vocabulary: jobs and personal characteristics Wordspot: <i>how</i> WB Vocabulary booster: jobs	WB Reading: <i>Jobsearch.com</i>
--	---	---	---

Module 14 Building your dreams page 116 Do you remember? page 123	1) <i>Some, any, and quantifiers</i> 2) <i>Describing where things are</i> <i>Pronunciation: linking</i>	Vocabulary: describing houses and apartments WB Vocabulary booster: things in a house	Reading: <i>Building your dream ...</i>
--	--	--	--

Module 15 Money, money, money page 124 Do you remember? page 130	1) <i>Past Perfect</i> 2) <i>Reported speech</i> <i>Pronunciation: contractions of had and will</i>	Vocabulary: verb phrases to do with money Wordspot: <i>make</i>	WB Listen and read: The history of money
---	---	--	---

Module 16 Imagine ... page 131	1) <i>Conditional sentences with would</i> 2) <i>Will and would</i> <i>Pronunciation: contractions of will and would</i>	WB Vocabulary booster: people in politics, religion, and public life	Reading: John Lennon and Martin Luther King Listening: <i>Imagine (song)</i> <i>Pronunciation: stress in nouns and adjectives</i>
--	--	---	---

Consolidation Modules 12–16 (page 138)

Communication activities (pages 142–148)

Task and Speaking

Writing

Functions and Situations

Preparation for task: discuss entering a competition

Task: decide on five improvements to your school or office (extended speaking and listening)

Optional writing: competition entry form

Real life: shopping in a department store

Preparation for task: description of a rescue

Task: describe a rescue and decide who is Hero of the Year (extended speaking)

Writing: using adverbs in narrative

WB **Improve your writing:** adverbs

Preparation for task: discuss the most important things in life

Task: make a list of the most important things in life (extended speaking)

WB **Spelling:** words ending with *-ion*

Real life: finding things in common

Pronunciation: Stress

Preparation for task: people discussing what to take on a trip (listening)

Task: decide what you need for a trip (extended speaking)

WB **Improve your writing:** joining sentences with *which, who, and, because, and but*

WB **Spelling:** silent *-g* and *-gh*

Real life: making suggestions

Pronunciation: intonation in suggestions

Preparation for task: description of two candidates for mayor of Queenstown (listening)

Task: select a new mayor for Queenstown (extended speaking)

Writing: an application for a job

WB **Improve your writing:** error correction

Real life: an application for a job

Preparation for task: people talking about their favorite room (listening)

Task: describe a favorite room (extended speaking)

Writing: giving directions

WB **Improve your writing:** notes giving directions

WB **Spelling:** same pronunciation, different spelling (homophones)

Real life: giving directions

Preparation for task: *Is this man Britain's unluckiest criminal?* (reading)

Task: find the differences between two stories (extended listening and speaking)

WB **Improve your writing:** punctuation in direct speech

Real life: dealing with money

Pronunciation: intonation in questions and requests

Preparation for task: discussing the new planet Hero

Task: choose people to start a space colony (extended speaking)

Creative writing: Write a letter to a friend on Earth

WB **Improve your writing:** error correction

WB **Spelling:** silent "w"

module 1

Leisure and lifestyle

► Vocabulary: leisure activities


► Question forms

► Present Simple

Task: Compile a fact file about your partner

Vocabulary and speaking

Leisure activities

1 a)  Look at the pictures. Which of the activities from the box can you see?


sunbathing	going to the gym
playing computer games	going dancing
playing the guitar	playing soccer
entertaining friends	surfing the Internet
going for a run	going shopping

b) Discuss the questions in pairs or small groups.

- Which of these things do you do in your free time?
- What else do you do in your free time?

I go to the gym a lot in my free time.

Really? I never go to the gym!

2  A survey asked people in the United Kingdom how they spend their free time. Look at the results. Which statements do you think are true?

- British people spend most of their free time at home.
- British people are very fit and healthy.
- The people who answered were probably old.
- Most British people don't have a very interesting life!



www.irLanguage.com

Top 10 Leisure Activities for adults in the United Kingdom

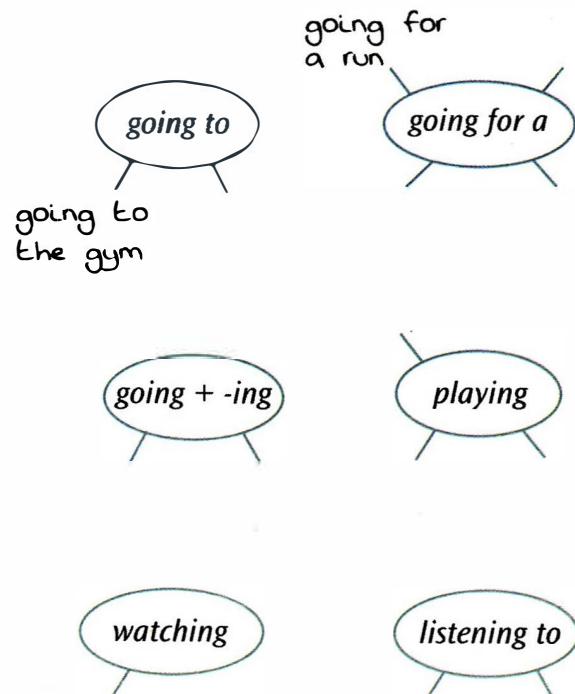
- 1 Watching television
- 2 Visiting/Entertaining friends
- 3 Listening to the radio
- 4 Listening to cassettes/CDs
- 5 Reading books
- 6 Going to a restaurant
- 7 Going for a drink
- 8 Gardening
- 9 Going for a drive
- 10 Going for a walk



3 a) Make a similar list of the top ten leisure activities for people in your country. The list can be for people of all ages, or just for young people.

b) Compare your list with other students. What are the differences?

4 a) Look back at the phrases in Exercises 1 and 2, and complete the diagrams below. Pay attention to phrases which have *the*, *a*, *to*, and *for*.



b) Add one more example to the groups above.

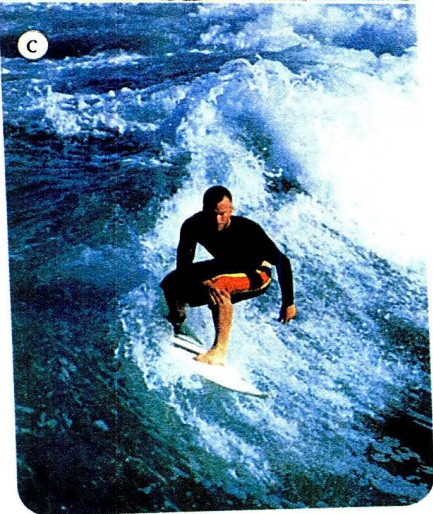
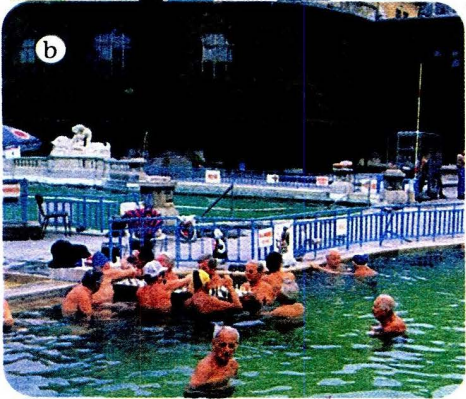
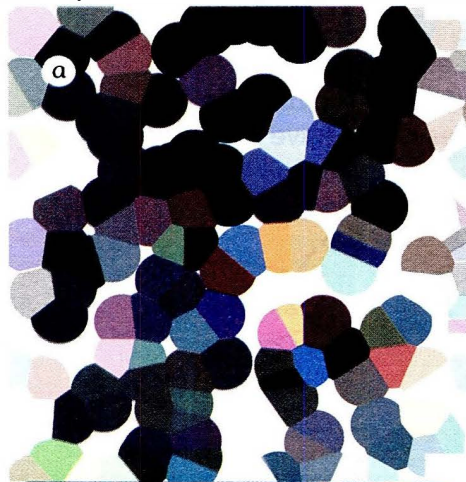
c) It is very important to try and remember words that go together (word combinations).

For example: go shopping

What do you think is the best way to remember these phrases?

Reading

1 What are the people doing in each picture below? Which countries do you think they are in?



2 Look at the three parts of the article, and match them to the pictures. Check your answers to Exercise 1.

My idea of fun!

People around the world relax in very different ways. We look at favorite leisure activities on three continents ...

1 Surfing capital of the world

Any sunny day on the coast of Australia, you can see hundreds of young people going to the beach. They all share Australia's national passion – surfing. "My friends and I usually go down to the beach before breakfast in the summer," says 19-year-old Jim Wolfe, "and come home again for dinner!" At weekends it is quite normal to drive hundreds of kilometers to find that "perfect wave." But in Sydney, the biggest city in Australia, you don't have that problem – there are thirty-four beaches close to the city center!

2 A "Big Day"

Birding or birdwatching is a hobby concerned with the observation and study of birds. Birding can be one of the quieter and more relaxing outdoor activities. Early morning is typically the busiest time of the day for birding since many birds are very hungry and they are searching for food, and thus are easier to find and observe. A North American one-day competition is called a "Big Day"; in Britain it is a "Bird Race". Teams trying to win such a competition usually have to be in the field for twenty-four hours. They usually drive hundreds of kilometers, and some have employed private jets and helicopters to reach the competition area.

3 A day in the "banya"

If you're happy to take a bath in public, then a Russian *banya* or bath house is the place for you. Russians of all types meet there ... at any time of day. They go there to relax, to talk to their friends, or even to discuss business. "It doesn't matter if you're old or young, fat or thin. Nobody cares, nobody looks at you ... it's a wonderful place!" says 24-year-old Masha, a student from St. Petersburg. There are cold baths, as well as a hot room where the temperature can reach forty-three degrees centigrade.

3 Read the texts and complete the table below. Compare answers with a partner.

	When do people do this?	What kind of people do it?	Why do they do it?
surfing			
birdwatching			
the <i>banya</i>			


4 Which of these ways of relaxing would you like to try? Why? If you want to relax, what do you usually do?

Language focus 1

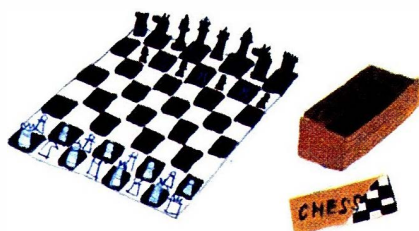
Question forms

1 Discuss the following questions in pairs or groups.


- Do you like sports or not? Which sports do you play?
- Do you watch many sports on TV?
- Do you play any games like chess or cards?

2  How much do you know about sports and games? Work in groups. Answer as many of the questions as you can in **five** minutes.

A question of sports!



- a** How often do the Winter Olympics happen?
- b** When were the Barcelona Olympics?
- c** How does a 100-meter race start?
- d** Where does the sport of judo come from?
- e** How long does an ice hockey game last?
- f** What kind of ball do they use in the game of rugby?
- g** In which country is baseball the national sport?
- h** How many dots are there on a die?
- i** Who starts in a game of chess: the black or the white player?
- j** In which sports do players use a racket?
- k** Why does the referee toss a coin at the beginning of a soccer game?
- l** What happens if the score is a tie at the end of the World Cup soccer final?

3  [1.1] Listen and check your answers.
Which group got the highest score?

Grammar analysis

Wh- questions

1 Look at the question words underlined in Exercise 2. Which question word(s) do we use to ask about:

- a a person? Who
- b a place?
- c a thing?
- d a time?
- e the reason for something?
- f the way you do something?

2 We often add another word to *how*, *what*, and *which* to make two-word questions (for example, *how often*). Find five examples in Exercise 2.

Word order in questions

In questions, the verb (or auxiliary verb) usually comes **before** the subject of the sentence. Put questions d), e), and f) from Exercise 2 into the correct columns.

Question words	verb/ auxiliary	subject (+ main verb)
When	were	the Barcelona Olympics?
How often	do	the Winter Olympics happen?

► **Language summary A/B, page 149.**



Practice

1 [1.2] Find the correct answers to the questions in the boxes below. Then listen and check.

- a 1 When do you usually play soccer?
2 Who do you play with?
3 Where do you usually play soccer?
4 Why do you play?

Some people from college. On Sunday mornings.
In the local park. It's fun, and it's good exercise.

- b 1 How often do you have English lessons?
2 How long are the lessons?
3 Which days are the lessons on?
4 How many teachers do you have?

Two. Twice a week.
Tuesdays and Thursdays. Two hours.

- c 1 What time is it? 3 What date is it?
2 What day is it? 4 How much is it?

Monday. About ten dollars.
The sixteenth, I think. Nearly half past three.

Pronunciation

[1.3] In the questions above *are*, *do*, and *you* are very weak because they are in the middle of the question. Listen and practice.

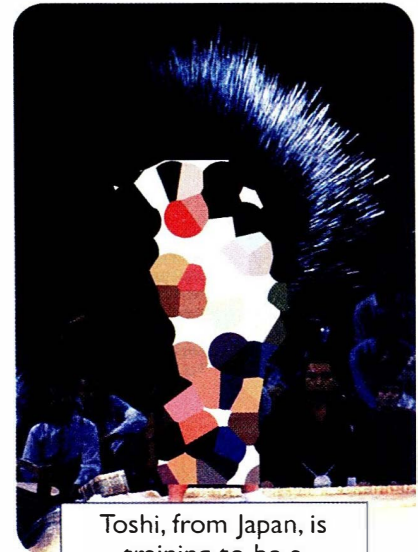
/ər/ /dʒə/
How long *are* the lessons? Who *do you* play with?

2 Are the statements below true about your teacher? Prepare questions to find out. Ask and check.

- 1 He/She gets up before eight o'clock on weekends.
What time do you get up on weekends?
- 2 He/She goes dancing once a week.
- 3 He/She goes to school by motorcycle.
- 4 His/Her birthday is in August.
- 5 He/She likes classical music.
- 6 His/Her favorite color is orange.
- 7 There are five people in his/her family.
- 8 His/Her journey to school takes more than half an hour.
- 9 He/She wants to visit Japan and Australia.

Language focus 2

Present Simple

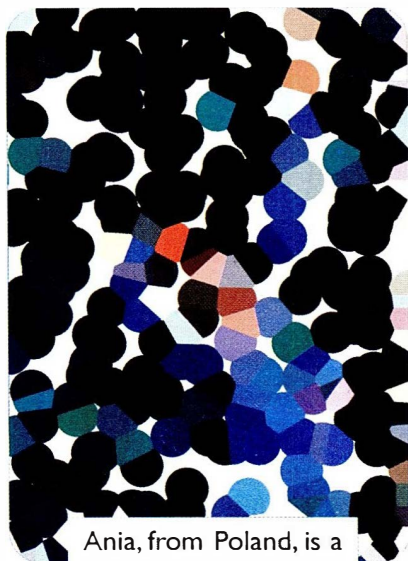


Toshi, from Japan, is training to be a sumo wrestler.

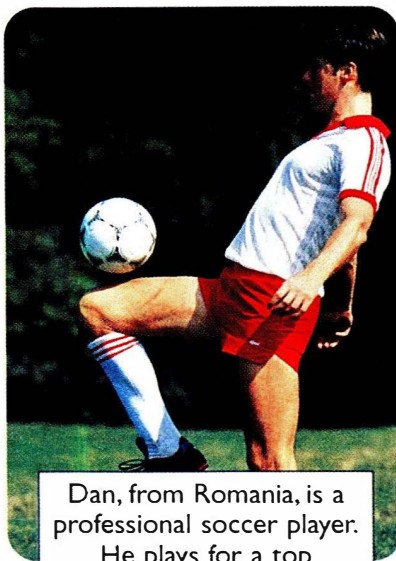
1 Look at the photos of three sports people. Can you guess who:

- a has a big lunch (with lots of beer) and then goes to sleep for a few hours?
- b doesn't eat very much?
- c runs 8 km at least four times a week?
- d trains for eight hours every day?
- e usually trains before breakfast?
- f weighs about 40 kg?
- g weighs about 175 kg?
- h is 1.5 m tall?
- i is 1.95 m tall?
- j earns about \$50,000 a week?
- k receives money from his/her parents every month?

2 [1.4] Listen and check your answers. Whose life sounds the most difficult? Why?



Ania, from Poland, is a champion gymnast.



Dan, from Romania, is a professional soccer player. He plays for a top Italian club.

Grammar analysis

Present Simple

1 We use the Present Simple to talk about habits.

*He has a big lunch and then **goes** to sleep for a few hours.*

And things that are generally/always true.

*He **earns** about \$25,000 a week.*

2 What are the question and negative forms of the examples above?

How often?

1 The phrases below tell us how often things happen. Think of other words to replace those underlined.

every month on Sundays five times a week

These phrases are usually at the end (or beginning) of the sentence.

He runs five times a week.

Every month he receives money from his parents.

2 Here are some more phrases that tell us how often something happens. Number them from 1 (= most often) to 6 (= least often).

sometimes ☐ *often* ☐ *usually* ☐ *never* ☐
always ☐ *occasionally* ☐

These adverbs usually come before the main verb.

*He **never** smokes and he **doesn't usually** eat meat.*

► Language summary C/D, page 149.

Practice

1 Use the prompts below to make more sentences about the three athletes.

For example: eat/Ania/a healthy diet/always
Ania always eats a healthy diet.

- a for many hours/all of them/train/every day
- b much money/Ania and Toshi/not earn
- c Ania/at 7:00/get up/usually
- d never/before midnight/go to bed/she
- e live in/Toshi/a special training camp called a *heya*
- f on the floor/he/sleep/often
- g lots of fan letters/receive/every week/he
- h not play/Dan/in every match
- i two sports cars/own/he
- j miss/he/his family in Romania
- k phone/about four times a week/he/his mother

2 a) You are going to interview your partner. Work in groups, A and B. Group A looks at page 139. Group B looks at page 145. Complete the gaps with *are you?* or *do you?*

b) Work in pairs with a person from the other group. Ask and answer the questions.

What time do you usually get up?

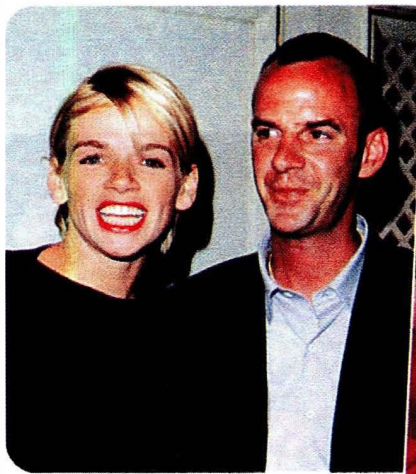
Normally about half past six. How about you?

Compile a fact file about your partner


Personal vocabulary

Useful language

- "Where/when ... born?"
- "How tall ...?"
- "How many ...?"
- "What is/are your ...?"
- "Who's your favorite ...?"
- "... married?"
- "What's/are your favorite ...?"
- "Describe your typical day..."
- "Tell me about ..."
- "What about ...?"
- "Anything else?"



Preparation for task

- 1 Zoe Ball is a radio DJ and children's TV host in Britain. Look at the photos. What do you think her life is like?
- 2  The following fact file about Zoe Ball appeared on a website. Read it for two minutes then close your book. What can you remember about Zoe?

THE ZOE BALL ZONE!

FULL NAME Zoe Louise Ball.

BORN Blackpool, November 1970.

HEIGHT 5'10".

FAMILY Three brothers, two sisters. Father, Johnny Ball, was a children's TV host in 1980s.

RELATIONSHIP Married to DJ Fatboy Slim.

EDUCATION Holy Cross Convent School and City Polytechnic (four months only). "I never did any work, even though I loved school. People at school called me Dumbo because of my big ears!"

JOB Radio DJ, host of children's TV programme.

TYPICAL DAY No day is typical: "It depends if I have to record the TV show, or if I have meetings, or interviews to do."

HOBBIES Eating, movies, music,

PETS A cat called Tom – eighteen years old and very weak.

FAVORITE FOODS Chocolate and bananas, but not together!

FAVORITE BANDS Massive Attack, Pulp, Portishead.

FAVORITE SONG "All the Time in the World," Louis Armstrong.

FAVORITE MOVIES *Play it again Sam*, *Breakfast at Tiffany's*.

HERO Woody Allen.

MONEY "I'm a shopaholic – I love spending money on clothes, vacations, and lots and lots of music."

AMBITIONS (She says!) to have lots of children, and to train as a teacher (!!!). Not to be famous any more. "In ten years' time I hope people say, 'Zoe Ball? What happened to her?'"

- 3 With a partner, decide what questions the interviewer asked Zoe.

► Useful language

For example: What's your full name?

Task

1 You are going to interview another student in your class for a fact file. You can add extra topics if you want to.

a) Spend a few minutes planning and practicing your questions.

► Useful language

b) Think about your own answers to these questions and ask your teacher for any other words or phrases you need.

► Personal vocabulary

Fact File

Full name:
Born:
Occupation:
Typical day:
Family:
Relationships/Best friends:
Pets:
Favorite ways of relaxing:
Favorite ... :
Hero/heroine:
Ambitions:
Other:

2 a) Work in pairs with someone you do not normally talk to in class. Ask and answer your questions to complete the fact files.

b) Tell the class two things you discovered about your partner.

Optional writing

Write your fact file, and put it on the wall for other students to read. Attach a photo if you can.

Real life

Questions you can't live without

1 Look at the pictures. Discuss which questions in the box below you might hear or ask in each situation.



Where are you from?

How do you spell ...?

Where's the nearest (bank)?

Do you speak English?

Anything else?

Can we have the check, please?

Where are the toilets, please?

Can I help you?

What's your date of birth?

How long are you going to stay?

How much does this cost?

Which part of (Poland) are you from?

Sorry, could you repeat that, please?

What time is it?

2 a) [1.5] Listen to three conversations. In which of the situations above do they take place?


b) Listen again. Check the questions from the box that you heard.

Pronunciation

The most important words are stressed (strong) in these questions.

Where are you from?

Notice that normally *wh*-questions go **down** at the end.

- 1  [1.6] Listen and practice the questions. Copy the voices on the recording. Start with the strong words first, like this:

Where ... from? >

Where are you from?

- 2 Look at the tapescript on page 158 and practice the conversations with a partner. Pay attention to the stress and intonation in the *wh*-questions.

- 3 With a partner, write similar conversations for the situations in three other pictures on page 13. Practice your conversations.

Do you remember?

1 Discuss in pairs. Where do you do the following?

- play computer games
- go dancing
- go for a run
- read books or magazines
- listen to CDs or cassettes
- go shopping for clothes

2 Cross out the question word which is not correct.

- a) *What/When/Who* is your date of birth?
- b) *How/What/How often* do you come to class?
- c) *How Long/Why/Where* are you learning English?
- d) *What color/How old/When* is your car?
- e) *What date/When/What* does your vacation start?

3 Put these questions in the correct order. Ask and answer the questions.

- a) your/national/of/What/country/sport/is/the/?
- b) spell/surname/you/How/your/do/?
- c) teachers/school/many/in/How/there/your/are/?
- d) starts/soccer/Who/and/a/game/stops/?
- e) English/start/time/does/What/class/your/?
- f) of/listen/What/music/to/you/sort/do/?

4 Which one of the following sentences is correct? Correct the other four.

- a) Demi Moore receive a lot of fan letters.
- b) I don't get up always late on the weekends.
- c) My sister never goes to bed before midnight.
- d) She every week writes to her grandparents.
- e) My boyfriend doesn't earns much money.

5 Write in the missing preposition and answer the questions using the tapescripts on page 158 to help you.

- a) Who trains ^{for} eight hours a day *Ania*
- b) Who eats a diet of rice, meat, and beer?
- c) Who goes a run most mornings?
- d) Who receives money his parents?
- e) Who lives her mother in Lublin?

module 2

Important firsts

- Past Simple
 - Time phrases often used in the past
 - Vocabulary: words to describe feelings
 - Wordspot: feel
- Task: tell a first time story

Language focus 1

Past Simple

1 Discuss the questions below.

What is your favorite movie?
Which of these do you enjoy?

- horror movies
- musicals
- gangster movies
- romantic comedies
- historical romances
- detective stories

Do you enjoy old movies?
If so, which ones and why?

2 You are going to read about the first feature movie. First guess the correct answers below.

- a The first feature movie appeared in:
1906 1916 1926
- b It came from:
France Australia the US
- c It was:
a comedy a gangster movie
a romantic movie

3 Read the first paragraph to check.

THE STORY OF THE KELLY GANG

Charles Tait, an Australian movie director, (1) *made* the first feature movie, *The Story of the Kelly Gang*, in 1906. The movie (2) the true story of Ned Kelly, a famous Australian gangster and his gang, who (3) horses and cattle, (4) banks, and often (5) metal armor for protection. Although they (6) criminals, Kelly and his gang (7) heroes to the ordinary people of Australia, because many of them (8) the government at that time.

The movie (9) for eighty minutes and (10) just \$450

to make! The Canadian actor who (11) Kelly obviously (12) there was a future in the movie business, because he (13) before the end of filming, and so Tait, the director, (14) make the last scenes without him. Because there were no close-ups, no one (15) see that it was a different actor playing Kelly!

The movie (16) at the Athenaeum Hall in Melbourne on December 24th, 1906. It (17) a great success, making over \$25,000 at the box office. ★



4 Complete the text with the verbs below.

became disappeared ~~made~~ stole was
cost didn't think had to opened told were
could robbed lasted played hated wore

5 [2.1] Listen and check your answers.

Grammar analysis

- How do we form the Past Simple of **regular** verbs? Underline six examples in the box in Exercise 4 on page 15.
- The other (positive) verbs are irregular. Write down the infinitive forms.
became become
- How do we form the negative and question forms of these verbs? Notice and remember the special Past Simple form of *be*.

► *Language summary A, page 150.*

Practice

1 Discuss the answers to the quiz below. Then check your answers on page 139.

2 a) Work in pairs or teams, A and B. A looks at the questions and answers on page 139. B looks at the questions and answers on page 143.

b) Put the questions and answers into the correct form of the Past Simple.

c) Take turns to ask and answer the questions.

Famous Firsts Quiz!

- 1 What nationality was the first woman to receive a college degree?

a British
b Italian
c Russian



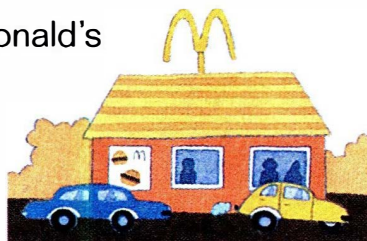
- 2 What did the world's first vending machine sell?

a chocolate
b cigarettes
c postcards



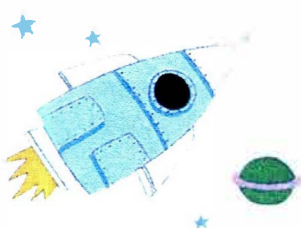
- 3 When did the first McDonald's restaurant open?

a in the 1950s
b in the 1960s
c in the 1980s



- 4 What was the first animal in space?

a a dog
b a monkey
c a mouse



Pronunciation

- 1 MD Look at the Past Simple forms below. If necessary, check the infinitives and meaning in your minidictionary. Which of the pairs rhyme?

A	B
a cried	died ✓
b cut	put
c appeared	heard
d paid	played
e said	stayed
f saw	wore
g worried	hurried
h sent	meant
i kissed	missed
j thought	taught

- 2 [2.2] Listen and check your answers. Practice saying the verbs.

- 3 Work in pairs. Test your partner like this:

cry

cried

3 a) Write three things about yourself. Two should be **true** and one **false**.

- Things you did yesterday.
- Places you went to last year.
- Things you bought last month.
- Movies you saw last year.
- Things you didn't like when you were a child.

b) Read out your ideas. Your partner decides which is false.

Yesterday
I went swimming, I sent
some emails, and I
watched TV.

You didn't go
swimming!

That's right!

Language focus 2

Time phrases often used in the past: *in, on, at, ago*

Number the phrases below 1–12 from the least recent to the most recent.


- four months ago ☐
- last weekend ☐
- on Monday morning ☐
- in the 1980s ☐
- in November of last year ☐
- 100 years ago ☐
- at eight o'clock this morning ☐
- yesterday afternoon ☐
- in 1998 ☐
- on January 1st this year ☐
- ten hours ago ☐
- in the eighteenth century ☐

Grammar analysis

- Complete the rules with *in, on, at, or* \emptyset .
 - With times (for example 7:30) we use ...
 - With days, dates (for example *July 7th*) and parts of days (for example *Thursday afternoon*) we use ...
 - With longer periods of time: months, seasons, years, decades, and centuries (for example *the 1960s*) we use ...
 - With *last* and *yesterday* (for example, *last night, yesterday morning*) we use ...
- Which of these phrases is wrong with *ago*?
ten weeks ago a long time ago ten thousand years ago
a few minutes ago years and years ago the summer ago

► **Language summary B, page 150.**

Practice

-  [2.3] Listen and answer questions a–j, using the time phrases in the box in your answers.
- Play the game *When did you last ...?* You will need a watch.
 - Your partner chooses a question to ask you. You talk about that topic for **twenty seconds** without stopping. Use at least one time phrase in your answer.
 - If you can't answer, your partner chooses another question.

When did you last ...?

- go to a wedding
- rent a video
- go on a long car trip
- go to a disco or nightclub
- stay up all night
- go for a run
- speak English (apart from in class)
- take an exam
- perform in a play or a concert
- lose something important
- go a whole day without eating

When did you last go
to a wedding?

The last wedding I went to
was my sister's wedding about
two years ago.

Vocabulary

Words to describe feelings

- 1 **MD** How do the people feel in each of the pictures below?
Choose one of the adjectives from the box.

nervous excited worried bored guilty
disappointed afraid angry relaxed fed up
surprised embarrassed in a good mood



- 2 Which of the words in the box describe:

a positive feelings? b negative feelings?

- 3 Use the words from Exercise 1 to answer the questions below.
Ask your partner the same questions.

How do you normally feel?

- After an evening at home watching TV
- Just before an important exam
- If you can't remember someone's name
- If you have to speak in front of a lot of people
- If you have to wait in a long line in a store
- If you don't go out on a Saturday night
- If you go to a big rock concert
- If you miss a train or a bus
- If you see a big spider
- If a large animal like a cow comes toward you

Pronunciation

[2.4] Listen, write the word and mark the stress like this:

• •
nervous

Listening

The first time ever I saw your face

- 1 Discuss the questions below in small groups.

- What kind of music do you like best? What are your favorite songs and singers?
- What was the last CD/cassette that you bought?

- 2 **MD** a) Look at the title of the love song on page 19, but not the words. Guess which of the words below you will hear.

the sun the moon burn gifts
dark endless flirt joy
the Earth trembling adore
flowers cry captive command

- b) **[2.5]** Listen and check.

c) Listen again. If the lines on page 19 are the same as the recording, write **S**. If a word or phrase is different, write **D**. Write in the correct words.

- 3 a) Which of these words describe the song? Why?

sad loud romantic cheerful
dramatic funny slow

- b) Did you like the song? Why/Why not?

THE FIRST TIME EVER I SAW YOUR FACE

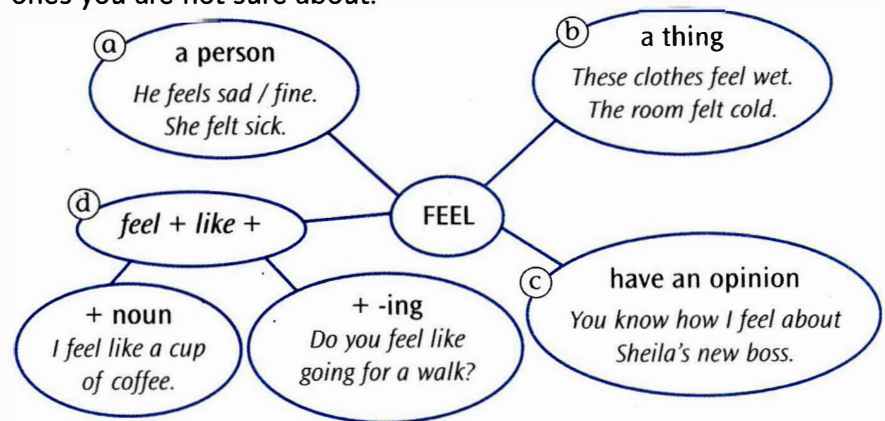


*The first time ever I saw
your face
I thought the sun rose in
your ~~smile~~ eyes
And the moon and the stars
Were the gifts you gave
To the dark and the endless
sea, my love
To the dark and the
endless sea
And the first time ever I
kissed your lips
I saw the Earth move
in my hand
Like the trembling heart
Of a captive bird
That was here at my
command, my love
That was here at my command
The first time ever I saw
your face
I thought the sun rose
in your eyes
And I thought our joy
Would fill the Earth
And last till the end of life,
my love
And it would last till the
end of life*

Wordspot

feel

1 The diagram below shows some common uses of *feel*. Check (✓) the phrases that you already know. Write (?) next to the ones you are not sure about.



2 a) Match a sentence from list A with a sentence from list B.

A

- 1 How's your mom today?
- 2 What do you feel like doing tonight?
- 3 What time did you go to bed last night?
- 4 How do you feel about our new boss?
- 5 Ooh, your hands feel cold!
- 6 Do you feel like a rest after your trip?
- 7 How was work?
- 8 I feel terrible about what I said to Tina.

B

- a Oh, before nine. I felt really tired.
- b Don't worry – I'm sure she wasn't upset.
- c No, it's OK, I slept a lot on the plane.
- d Oh, she's feeling much better, thanks.
- e Oh, terrible. Sometimes I feel like walking out.
- f I think he's OK. He has some good ideas.
- g I don't know ... what's on at the movies?
- h I know – I left my gloves at home.

b) [2.6] Listen and check your answers.

3 Work in pairs. Student B closes his/her book and Student A reads out a sentence from list A above. Student B tries to remember the answer from list B above. Then change roles.

Tell a first-time story

Personal vocabulary



Preparation for task

1 Which of these do you remember? Check (✓) the appropriate boxes.

- your first day at school, college, or work ☐
- the first time you traveled alone or went abroad ☐
- your first date ☐
- the first time you met someone important in your life ☐
- the first time you drove a car ☐
- your first English lesson ☐
- your first pet ☐
- the first cassette or CD you bought ☐
- the first time you bought clothes for yourself ☐
- another important first ☐

2 a) You will hear two people (David and Jayne) talking about the first time they did something. Look at the pictures on the opposite page. Which of the things in Exercise 1 are they talking about? Discuss in pairs.

b) Can you guess what happened? Use the words in the boxes on the opposite page to help you.

c)  [2.7] Listen and check your answers.

3 Listen to one or both of the stories again and answer these questions. Compare answers with a partner.

- a When/Where did it happen?
- b Who else was in the story?
- c What happened?
- d How did he/she feel?

Useful language

a Telling the story

"This is the story of the first time I ..."

"I remember my first (CD) very well ..."

"I was (nine) at the time ..."

"I was in ..."

"I was with ..."

"I felt very/really ... because ..."

"I remember ... (go) -ing"

"At first ..."

"then ..."

b Listening

"Oh no!"

"So what did you do?"

"What happened next?"

"Really?"

Task

1 You are going to tell the story of an important "first" in your life, either one of the things in *Preparation for task* or an idea of your own. Work individually. Spend a few minutes deciding which story to tell (it should be a true story), and think about the answers to the questions in Exercise 3 above.

2 Ask your teacher for any words or phrases you need.

► **Personal vocabulary**

3 Work in pairs. Practice telling your story to your partner.

► **Useful language**

4 Work in small groups, with new partners. Listen/Tell your stories to each other.

Who told:

- the funniest story?
- the saddest story?
- the nicest story?

a service station a bus
a trip a French pastry

David



Jayne



gorgeous-looking
to cut yourself blood

Writing

Linking ideas in narrative

1 a) Read what Marcos wrote about his first trip abroad and complete the text with the phrases 1–9.

- 1 and I went with three friends
- 2 because for all four of us it was our first time away from home
- 3 and I bought a silver ring for my sister
- 4 because I couldn't find it when I got on the bus that evening!
- 5 but I got up early and went to
- 6 so we decided to travel by bus.
- 7 but we didn't mind
- 8 so we went to Hyde Park for a game of soccer
- 9 then we went shopping on Oxford Street

b) Underline the linking words in Exercise 1.

For example: a and

2 Write the story that you told in the Task on page 21. Use at least three linking words.

The first time I went abroad was when I went to London. It was in the summer about five or six years ago (a) _____. The plane and train were quite expensive, (b) _____. We left at five o'clock in the morning and the journey to London took about sixteen hours (c) _____. We were all very excited (d) _____.

We stayed in London for three days, in a youth hostel not far from the center. While we were there we walked a lot. First we went to see all the famous sites—Big Ben, Piccadilly Circus, Buckingham Palace, (e) _____. On the last morning my friends stayed in bed late, (f) _____ Camden Market. You can buy all kinds of jewelry and clothes there, (g) _____. It was really hot and sunny in the afternoon, (h) _____. Unfortunately, I think the ring fell out of my pocket during the game, (i) _____.

I've been back to London several times since then, but I don't think I'll ever feel as excited as I did that first time.

Do you remember?

www.irLanguage.com

1 Think of two reasons for these situations.

- a) Ben was late for work.
*Maybe he missed the bus.
Maybe he didn't ...*
- b) Sonja didn't go to her cousin's wedding.
- c) Lucy didn't eat her lunch.
- d) Mike didn't answer the telephone.
- e) Martha sold her car.

2 Put in the missing word in each sentence below.

- a) When did you ^{last} see the doctor?

- b) I think the course started about two weeks.
- c) He was here at eight o'clock morning.
- d) Where did you go for your vacation year?
- e) Clothes were very different in 1970s.

3 Rewrite the following sentences with *feel*.

- a) I'm very cold and tired.
- b) Do you want a drink?
- c) This bread is hard: are you sure it's fresh?
- d) Do you want a snack?

4 Join the sentences using *then, but, so, or because*.

- a) We couldn't go. Sue was sick.
- b) The bus didn't come. I got a taxi to the station.
- c) They loved the movie. I didn't.
- d) No – you put the sugar in first. You add the cream.

module 3

The best way to learn

- *Can, can't, have to, don't have to*
 - Vocabulary: studying new vocabulary
 - *Should/Shouldn't*
- Task: make a list of guidelines for a language class

Language focus 1

Can, can't, have to, don't have to

1 [3.1] Listen to the people in the photos talking about learning foreign languages.

- Which language are they learning?
- Why are they learning?
- Whose reasons are closest to your own?

2 Which verb below did the speakers use? Listen again and check.

Ildiko

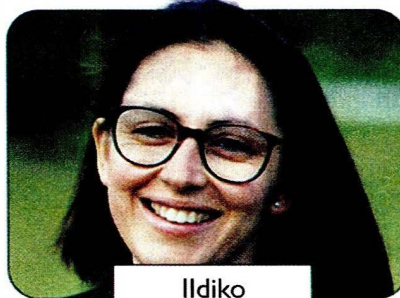
a most foreigners *can/can't* speak Hungarian.

Karina

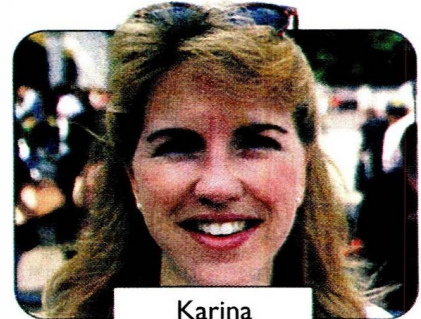
b My husband *can/can't* speak Danish.

c I *have to/don't have to* speak Greek at home.

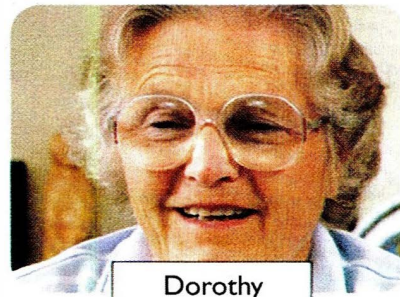
d When we go to Greece, I *can/can't* talk to my husband's parents.



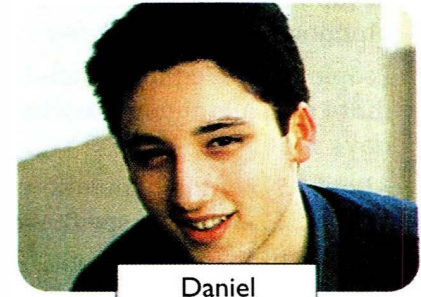
Ildiko



Karina



Dorothy



Daniel

Dorothy

e I *have to/don't have to* study Italian for a special reason.

Daniel

f I *have to/don't have to* learn English for my college exams.

g If we don't pass, we *can/can't* continue into the second year.

h If we pass, we *can/can't* take another course instead of English.

Grammar analysis

1 Look at the verbs you chose in sentences a–h above.

Which verb means:

- it is possible? • it is not possible?
- it is necessary? • it is not necessary?

2 Notice that *can/can't* show two different types of possibility:

a ability

My husband can speak Danish.

I can't talk to my husband's parents.

b permission/prohibition

If we pass, we can take another course.

If we don't pass, we can't continue into the second year.

► Language summary A, page 150.

Practice

1 [3.2] Complete the sentences below with the most appropriate verb: *can*, *can't*, *have to*, or *don't have to*. Listen and check your answers.

- In Hungary, before they *can* enter college, students take an exam in a foreign language.
- In Nigeria, 90% of the population speak more than one language.
- Almost 2 million people living in the US speak English!
- In Japan, children know four alphabets by the age of ten.
- People in Sweden understand English so well that English language movies have subtitles.
- About 75% of the population of Wales actually speak Welsh.
- In most British high schools, children choose between learning French, Spanish or German.
- Children in Switzerland study another language until they are eleven, and then they study three!

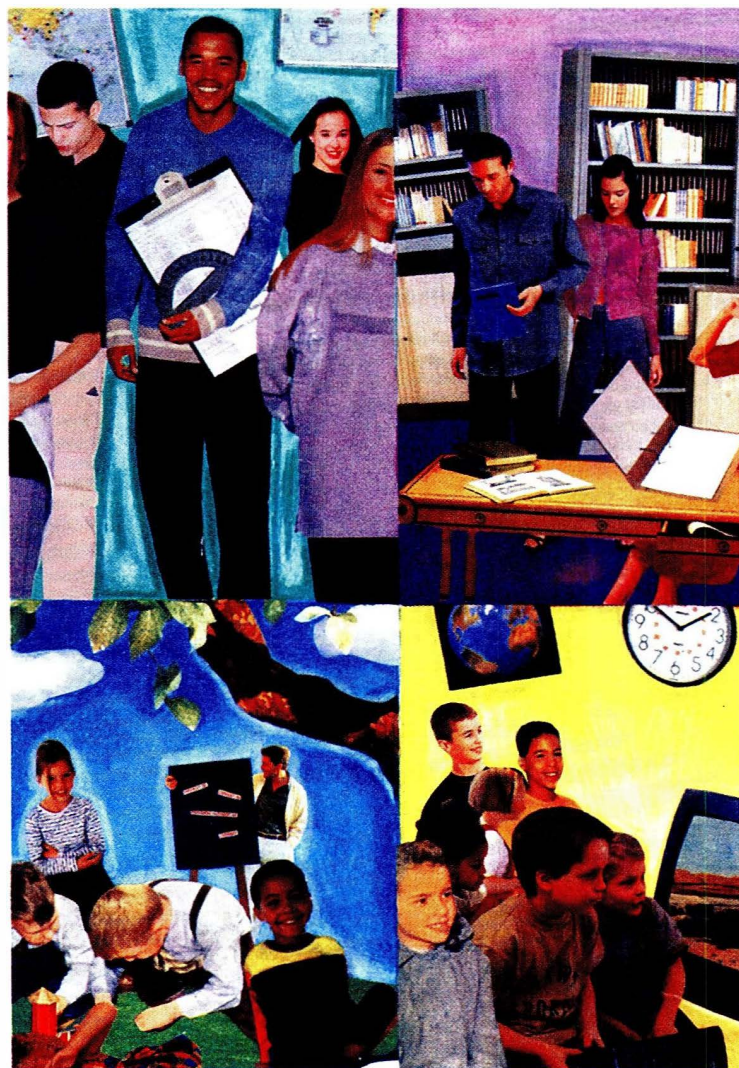
Pronunciation

- 1 [3.3] Notice the stress and pronunciation of *can/can't* in the middle of a sentence. Listen and copy the pronunciation.

*They can /kən/ choose which language they learn.
Most people in Wales can't /kænt/ speak Welsh.*

- 2 Tell other students which of the things below you *can/can't* do. Practice the sentences so that the other students understand the **first** time.

- speak another foreign language
- remember new people's names
- use a washing machine
- write very quickly
- sing in tune
- cook for yourself
- use a computer
- ski
- drive



2 a) [3.4] Listen to Ellen talking about the British education system. What does she say about the things below? Use *can/can't/have to/don't have to* in your answers.

- RE (Religious Education)
- PE (Physical Education)
- Math and English
- Geography and History
- Math GCSE* and college
- the age of fourteen
- the age of sixteen

* The exams that British students take at the age of 16 (General Certificate of Secondary Education).

b) Write five similar sentences about the education system in your country.

Reading and vocabulary

1 ^{MD} Which four things below are most important for learning a language?

- hard work ☐
- enjoying learning ☐
- really believing that you will be successful ☐
- having a good teacher ☐
- really wanting to learn (motivation) ☐
- studying lots of grammar ☐
- getting praise from your teacher ☐
- being realistic about the progress you can make ☐
- "developing an ear" for the language ☐
- reading and listening to lots of English ☐

What's the secret of successful language learning? مرجع زبان ایرانیان

We asked two experienced teachers of English for their opinion.

Alan Banton is a teacher at a private language school in the UK. He has also taught English in Japan.

1 I think the most important thing is that you really have to want to learn the language – without that, you won't get very far. You also have to believe that you will do it ... imagine yourself using the language confidently, and think, "Yes, I can do that."

2 Then there are other things: Of course you need to work hard, but at the same time you need to enjoy it and not get frustrated when you feel you're not making much progress. And you have to be realistic – learning a language takes time, and you can't expect to know and understand everything in a few weeks!

3 Also, you should try to "develop an ear" for the language – not only to recognize the sounds of the language and to understand what people are saying, but also notice the exact words and phrases that people use ... and then try to use them yourself. Some people can do this naturally, but others have to learn how to do it – that's where having a good teacher is important!

2 ^{MD} You are going to read the opinions of two English teachers, Alan and Teresa. As you read, mark each idea in Exercise 1:

A = Alan talks about this

T = Teresa talks about this

A/T = Alan and Teresa talk about this

3 Read the text again. Which words or phrases mean:

- a you won't make much progress (para. 1)?
- b become angry because you can't do what you want to do (para. 2)?
- c see and pay attention to (para. 3)?
- d often and carefully, and in an organized way (para. 4)?
- e alone, without help (para. 5)?
- f do something that makes you seem stupid (para. 6)?

4 Which pieces of advice are most useful? Discuss with other students.

Teresa Pelc is a teacher of English in Poland. She has taught English in a high school for a number of years.


4 For me, motivation is the most important thing. You have to be ready to study grammar, read a lot, listen to English songs, radio, and TV, and what's more you have to do these things systematically.

5 It is so easy to forget what you have just learned ... that's why I needed a teacher to force me to study. Even the most motivated students need that extra push sometimes. I believe that only a very few people can learn a language on their own.

6 Learning a language can be quite stressful, especially for adults ... suddenly, we speak like children and make fools of ourselves! But if you're motivated, you learn to overcome this. It all sounds like very hard work – and it is. It is also very enjoyable – I praise my students for every thing they do well, however small it is. Many of them are very successful and speak English better than me, and some of them have even become English teachers themselves!

Vocabulary and speaking

Studying new vocabulary

1  Here are some things that students do when they read or hear a new word in a foreign language. Which order do **you** normally do them in? Discuss in pairs.

- You **practice saying it**.
- You **look it up** in a dictionary or someone **explains** it to you.
- You **write it down** in your notebook.
- You try to **guess** what it means.
- You **think of** a way to remember it.
- You **try hard** to use it in conversation.
- You **check** the pronunciation.

2 Discuss these questions with other students. Be honest!

- Which of the things in Exercise 1 do you **always** do when you read or hear a new word?
- Which do you **sometimes** do?
- Which do you **never** do?
- Should you do any of these things more often?
- What is the best order to do these things in?

3 We can use the words from Exercise 1 in other situations too. Add one more situation for each of the words below. Use your minidictionary to help you.

- You can **look up**:
a phone number ☐ the time of a train ☐
- You can **check**:
your emails ☐
your answers to an exercise ☐
- You can **find out**:
the date ☐ where something is ☐
- You can **guess**:
the answer to a question ☐
someone's age ☐
- You can **practice**:
a musical instrument ☐ a song ☐
- You can **write down**:
someone's address ☐
the answers to an exercise ☐

Language focus 2

Should/Shouldn't

Read about Stephanie. What advice does she want? Which do you think is the best advice? Do you have any other ideas?

Stephanie has won a competition at her college. The prize is a two-month language course in Edinburgh. She will have English lessons every morning, but she wants to improve her English outside class. Her friends, family and teachers have lots of advice.



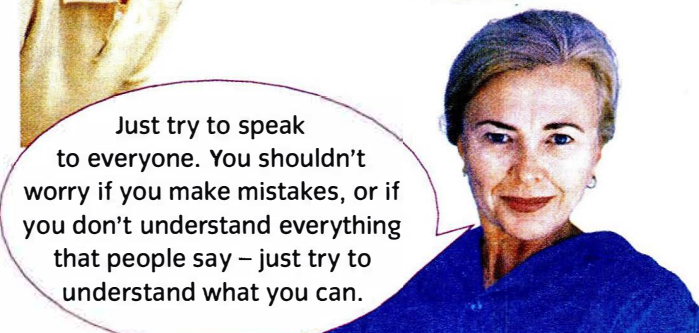
Perhaps you should join a sports club or something – then you can make friends and practice your English!



I think you should try to spend two or three hours every afternoon in the school library reading the newspaper and doing grammar exercises.



Why don't you try to get a part-time job in a coffee shop, or something? You'll have to speak English, and you can earn some money too.



Just try to speak to everyone. You shouldn't worry if you make mistakes, or if you don't understand everything that people say – just try to understand what you can.

Grammar analysis

- 1 Look at the word *should* below. Which is the best explanation of the meaning:

Perhaps you should join a sports club.

- this is necessary? • this is a good idea/the right thing to do?

- 2 What are the negative and question forms of *should*?

► *Language summary B, pages 150–151.*

Practice

- 1 **a)** Bruce is studying for some important exams. Look at the room and find the things in the box.

an ashtray a cigarette butt the waste basket some garbage
his notes his files a computer game a bathrobe

- b)** Do you agree with the following sentences? Why/Why not?

His coffee cup shouldn't be on the computer.

He shouldn't smoke so much when he's studying.

- c)** Find ten more things that **you** think he should do differently.



- 2 Read the following difficult situations. Discuss what each person *should*/*shouldn't* do.

Carla's grandmother shouldn't give her money.

1 **Carla, a student, is very bad with money. Every month she spends all her money on clothes and going out, and then doesn't have enough for books, etc. Her parents are annoyed with her, and say that she has to learn to be more careful, so they won't give her any extra money. But Carla's grandmother secretly gives her the extra money every time Carla sees her. Carla's parents know what is happening!**

2 **Nick, who is nineteen, has been going out with his girlfriend, Lucy, since he was sixteen. His parents do not seem to like Lucy. They have never actually said that they dislike her, but they are silent when he talks about her. So now Nick has stopped bringing her to his house, and doesn't talk about her to them.**

3 **A few years ago, Marina was a bit overweight. She's quite slim now, but she worries about putting on weight again. Instead of eating healthy meals she misses breakfast and lunch. Then in the evening, after a very small meal, she eats chocolate and potato chips. Her mother is very worried about her, and tries to force her to eat three meals a day.**

Make a list of guidelines for a language class

Personal vocabulary

Useful language

a Useful vocabulary

"arrive/finish on time"

"interrupt each other/the teacher"

"listen to each other/the teacher"

"use our own language/English"

"make/correct mistakes"

"do/give out/grade homework"

"work in pairs and groups"

"give/take tests"

"chat"

b Talking about what's important

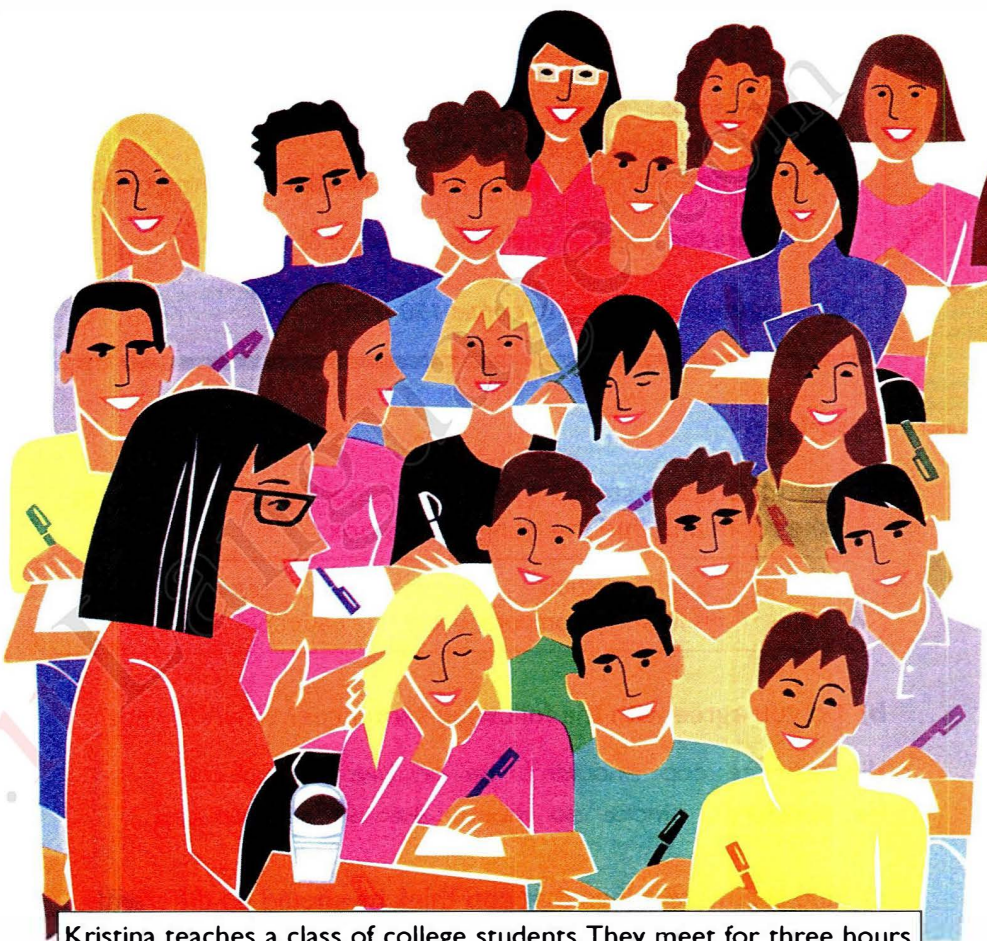
"We think it's very important to ..."

"Everyone should try to ..."

"People shouldn't be afraid to ..."

"We should always/never ..."

"Everyone has to ..."




Kristina teaches a class of college students. They meet for three hours a week, and there are about twenty-five students in the class.

Preparation for task

1 a) Kristina and her class worked together to make a set of classroom guidelines: six for the teacher and six for the students. You will hear Kristina talking about the six guidelines **for the teacher**. What do you think they agreed about the following:

- 1 the teacher speaking their own language/speaking English?
- 2 giving homework?
- 3 making the lessons interesting?
- 4 the teacher answering questions?
- 5 the coursebook?
- 6 correcting the students' mistakes?

b)  [3.5] Listen to what Kristina and her students agreed about each of the topics above.

2 What do you agree with? What do you disagree with?



Task

1 Work in pairs or groups.

Either: make a list of similar guidelines for **your** English class, but be realistic. If the guidelines are too difficult, no one will follow them!

Or: imagine you are teaching a group of foreigners how to speak **your** language. They live in your country and can speak a little of the language. Make a list of ten guidelines to follow.

2 Ask your teacher for any other words and phrases you need.

- **Personal vocabulary**
- **Useful language**

3 Compare your list to those of other groups. How many of your points were the same and how many were different? Try to agree as a class on the ten most important guidelines.

Optional writing

Write out your list of guidelines for teachers and students, and put it on the classroom wall. See if you can keep to the guidelines for the rest of this course!

Real life

Making requests and asking for permission

1 a) Look at the conversations below. Where are the people? What does each person want? What are the missing words?

- 1 A: ... and one of the things that you can also do is ...
B: I'm sorry. slowly, please?
A: Sorry. And one of the things that you can also do ... is that OK?
B: Yes, I can understand much better now, you.
- 2 A: I'm sorry, the class early today?
B: Yeah, I suppose so. Is there a problem?
A: It's my younger sister. I have to take her to the dentist.
B: Oh, I see. Sure, Thanks for
- 3 A: João, do you have an English-Portuguese dictionary?
B: Um ... yes ...
A:, please?
B: OK,
- 4 A: change seats?
B: Yes, all right.?
A: I can't see because of the sun.
B: OK, then. Why don't you sit over there, next to Andrea?

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

b) [3.6] Listen to the conversations and check your answers. Which speakers are:

- making requests? • asking for permission?

Pronunciation

1 Notice that intonation is very important if you want to be polite in these situations.

Is it OK if I ...

Can I borrow ...

Could you ...

Do you mind if ...

Is it OK if I leave early?

Can I borrow your dictionary, please?

Could you speak more slowly, please?

Do you mind if I change seats?

2 [3.7] Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the voices on the recording.

2 With a partner write four-line conversations for **four** of these situations. Act out some of them for class.



- You're very hot and would like to open the window.
- You can't see the board because the teacher is standing in front of it.
- You need to make an urgent phone call.
- Someone's cellphone is always ringing during the lesson.
- You don't know how to write a new word that your teacher has just taught you.
- Another student is always talking when you are trying to listen to the teacher.
- The teacher is playing a cassette but it isn't loud enough.
- You would like to borrow another student's eraser.

Do you remember?

1 Complete the blanks with a suitable verb from the box.

pass find out interrupt
write down make

- a guess
.....
someone's age
- b correct
.....
a mistake
- c take
.....
an exam
- d answer
.....
the teacher
- e look up
.....
a word

2 Think of two things:

- you can do on a beach.
- you can't do on a plane.
- you don't have to do when you are three years old.
- you have to do when you are at school.
- you should do if you want to lose weight.
- you shouldn't do if you want to save money.

3 Who usually does these things, the teacher or the students?

- looks up words in the dictionary
- does homework
- checks homework
- corrects mistakes
- gives tests
- writes things down in their notebooks

4 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- you/please/Could/the/open/window/?
- smoke/I/mind/Do/if/you/?
- borrow/I/your/Can/please/newspaper/?
- later/again/Could/phone/you/?
- your/OK/if/Is/use/printer/it/I/?

5 Match the questions in Exercise 4 with answers from the box below. Ask and answer with a partner.

Sure, here you are.
Oh, I'm sorry, it's not working at the moment.
Yes, it's very hot in here, isn't it?
No problem, go ahead.
OK. About eight?

module 4

Special occasions

- **Vocabulary:** dates and special occasions
 - **Present Continuous (and Present Simple)**
 - **Wordspot:** *day*
 - **Present Continuous for future arrangements**
- Task: prepare and talk about a personal calendar



Vocabulary and speaking

Dates and special occasions

1 Which are your favorite months of the year? Why? When's your birthday? Is this a good month to have a birthday?

2 a) Do you celebrate these days in your country? Say when they happen. Put them in order.

American Independence Day
New Year's Eve Halloween
Easter Chinese New Year
May Day Christmas
St. Valentine's Day Father's Day
Mother's Day

b) [4.1] Listen and make notes about when they happen in Britain/the US. Which are different in your country?

Pronunciation

1 Notice the difference between the way you write and say dates.

You write: 6/5/2001 or June 5th, 2001.

You say: the fifth of June or June fifth.

2 [4.2] Practice saying these dates. Pay attention to the pronunciation of *th* /θ/ or /ð/.

/ð/ /θ/ /θ/
the first of May the fourth of July

/ð/ /θ/ /ð/ /θ/
February the fourteenth the thirty-first of October

3 Which other special days do you celebrate in your country? When are they?

4 a) [4.1] Which of these things do you/your family/your friends do on the special days in Exercises 2 and 3 above?

send cards to people visit relatives spend a lot of money
give presents make a special cake have a special meal at home
stay out late have a party buy flowers go out for a meal
have the day off from work dress up

b) Think of one other reason why people do these things.

For example: You send a card when someone gets married.

Language focus 1

Present Continuous (and Present Simple)



1 The people in the picture work for a fashion magazine called *Glitz*. How do you think they spend a normal working day? Who:

- a chooses articles for the magazine?
- b makes the coffee?
- c earns the most money?
- d takes a lot of photographs?
- e does the photocopying?
- f has a lot of business lunches?
- g answers the phone?
- h has the most interesting job?

What else do they do in their jobs?

2 Today is May 1st, a national holiday, so everybody at *Glitz* has the day off. Read about how Imogen is spending the day.

Imogen is spending her day off with her husband, Alex. Imogen and Alex usually go away on weekends, either to the country or to the beach, or they meet friends. But today they aren't doing anything special – they're just sitting at home, relaxing. Imogen likes her job at *Glitz*, but she doesn't want to be a secretary all her life: that's why she's also doing a course in fashion design at night school. One day, she wants to have her own design company. She's finding the course really useful.



Grammar analysis

- 1** Find another example of rules a, b, and c in Language Focus 1, Exercise 2.
 - a We use the Present Simple for things that are generally or always true. *They usually go away on the weekend.*
 - b We use the Present Continuous for actions in progress at this moment. *They're sitting at home.*
 - c We use the Present Continuous for actions in progress "in the present period." *She's doing a course in fashion design.* (= this year, but not right now)
- 2** How do we form questions and negatives in the Present Continuous?
- 3** We don't usually use the Present Continuous for verbs that describe states. *She likes her job.* *She doesn't want to be a secretary all her life.*

Other verbs like this are:
be have love hate
know think

► **Language summary A, page 151.**

Practice

- 1 Complete the paragraph about Carlos with the Present Simple or Present Continuous.



Carlos (1)..... (spend) his day off with his family. His family (2)..... (live) quite far away, so he (3)..... (not see) them very often. But today is a special day: his parents (4)..... (celebrate) their wedding anniversary. Carlos (5)..... (spend) most of his free time working on his motorcycle. He (6)..... (not like) his job at *Glitz* magazine very much, so he (7)..... (look) for another job. He (8)..... (want) to take photos of motorcycles instead of fashion models!

- 2 Write some sentences about Juliet using the picture and ideas below to help you. Use your imagination!

- She's spending her day off with her mother,
- On weekends she usually ...
- Today she's ...
- Her husband is/isn't ...
- (S)he doesn't ...
- One day she wants to ...



- 3 a) Choose the correct form in the prompts below to make true sentences about yourself.

- 1 At the moment, I learn/I'm learning *English/another language/to drive*.
- 2 I speak/I'm speaking *one language/two languages/more than two languages*.
- 3 I (don't) like/I'm (not) liking *my job/my school/my English classes*.
- 4 I never read/I'm never reading *comic books/novels/fashion magazines*.
- 5 At the moment, I read/I'm reading *a book/a good book called ... /a boring book called ...*.
- 6 Today I (don't) wear/I'm (not) wearing *jeans/a sweater/a suit*.
- 7 This year, I study/I'm studying *for a school exam/for a college exam/just English*.
- 8 I usually spend/I'm usually spending *Sundays at home/with my friends/with my family*.
- 9 At the moment, I try/I'm trying hard to *learn English/stop smoking/find a job*.
- 10 Right now, I'm (not)/I'm (not) being *very busy/very tired/very well*.

- b) Compare answers with a partner. Find at least three things you have in common.

Both of us like ...

Neither of us is ...

Wordspot

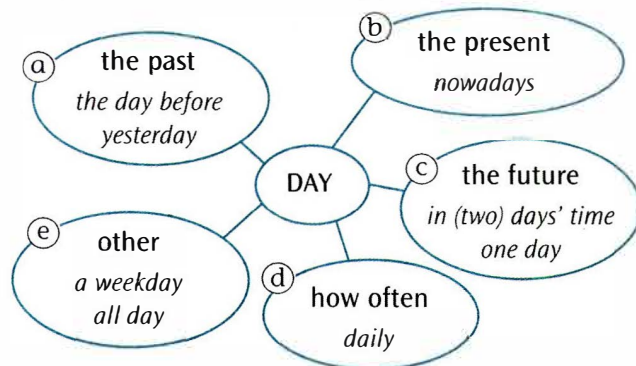
day

1 [4.3] Complete the conversations with a word from the box to make a phrase with **day**. Listen and check.

one these the other every
out off after tomorrow

- a A: Do you still go to the gym?
B: I'm not going much at the moment, I don't have time. I'm too busy days.
- b A: Do you ever see Joanna Merchant?
B: Yes, I met her in the city day.
- c A: I'm so tired I need a day
B: You say that day. Just ask your boss!
- d A: When's Joe's birthday? He's so excited about it!
B: It's the day – we're having a party.
- e A: That's 6-4 to me.
B: Not again! day I'll beat you!
- f A: Did you have a good weekend?
B: Yes, really nice. We went for a day in the country.

2 Put the phrases from Exercise 1 into the correct section of the diagram below.



3 a) [4.4] Listen and write your answers to the questions on a piece of paper. You can write just one word or a short phrase. For example: I went shopping.

b) Work in pairs. Look at your partner's answers. Try to remember the questions.

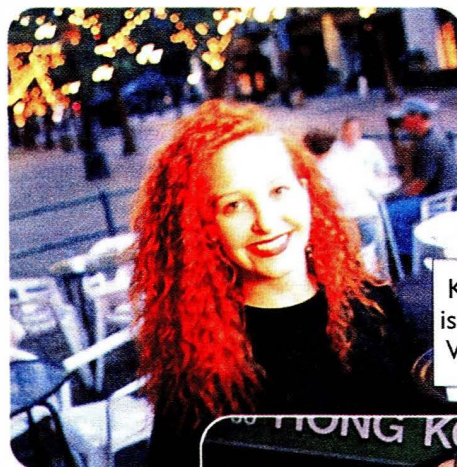
Listening

New Year in two different cultures

1 Is New Year an important celebration in your country? What do people usually do?

2 [MD] You will hear Karen and Johnny describing Scottish and Chinese New Year. Who do you think mentions these things?

mushrooms and oysters ☐ fruitcakes ☐
new clothes ☐ cleaning the house ☐
little red envelopes of money ☐
the front and back door ☐



Karen McLeod is from Perth, in West Scotland.



Johnny Wong's family live in Hong Kong.

3 a) [4.5] Listen and mark the things K if Karen says them, and J if Johnny says them.

b) Listen again. Find **one** similarity and three differences between the two New Years.

c) Are there any similarities with your country?

Language focus 2

Present Continuous for future arrangements

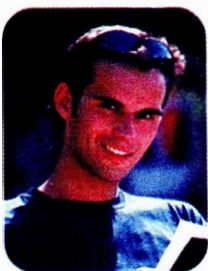
- 1 It's just before New Year.
Read three people's plans.
Which verbs below complete each gap?

cook rent go
meet come have

Giacomo
from Italy

"This New Year
my family

(a) a
house in the
mountains.
Some friends of
mine (b) to stay. It'll
be great!"



Nick from England

"I (c)
a party on
New Year's Eve.
I've invited
hundreds of
people. I hope
they all come!"



Nestor from Brazil

"My mother
(d) a
special dinner
for all the
family. Then,
at noon, my
friends and
I (e)
to the beach. We
(f) lots of other people
for a big beach party!"



- 2 [4.6] Listen and
complete the blanks.
Whose plans sound most
interesting?

Grammar analysis

Check (✓) the best explanation. The people on the left use the Present Continuous to talk about:

- a things they **want to do** at New Year.
- b things they **think they will probably do** at New Year.
- c things they **have definitely arranged to do** at New Year.

► *Language summary B, page 151.*

Practice

- 1 Find out about your classmates' plans and arrangements.
Decide which questions to ask. Use the words in parentheses.

Find someone in your class who ...

- a ... is going out for a meal this evening. (Where?/Who with?)
Name: Notes:
- b ... is doing something unusual this weekend. (What?)
Name: Notes:
- c ... is meeting someone after this lesson. (Who?)
Name: Notes:
- d ... is going shopping today or tomorrow. (Where?/Who with?)
Name: Notes:
- e ... is having a birthday party soon. (When ... party?)
Name: Notes:
- f ... is cooking a meal this evening. (What?/Who for?)
Name: Notes:
- g ... is taking an important exam in the future. (When?)
Name: Notes:
- h ... is going abroad soon. (Where?/Why?)
Name: Notes:

- 2 Go around the class, asking and answering the questions.

For example:

- A: Are you going out for a meal this evening?
B: Yes.
A: Where are you going?
B: I'm going to a new restaurant called Da Corradi.
A: Who are you going with?

You have **ten minutes** to speak to as many people as possible.
Write in the names and other information about these people.

- 3 Compare answers briefly with other students. Is there
anything that **nobody** is doing?

Prepare and talk about a personal calendar

Personal vocabulary

Useful language

a Explaining your calendar

"(the 2nd of March) is my mother's birthday"

"For (July) I put (the nineteenth) because that's the day when ..."

"In (Spain) the most important date is ... because ..."

"In May we always go to .../ I'm going to .../I went to ..."

b Questions

"What happens/happened/is happening on ...?"

"What do you usually do on ...?"

"Why did you put ...?"

"Why is ... important for you?"



MONTH	1 DATE	2 WHY IT'S IMPORTANT/OTHER INFORMATION
JANUARY		Passed - very before!
FEBRUARY		Never a card but always lots!
MARCH		
APRIL		
MAY		Younger sister's birthday. Always her and sings
JUNE		Festa in Rabat - her town - a big on the street.
JULY		
AUGUST		
SEPTEMBER		Independence Day. Country became independent in
OCTOBER	 Glen coming from New Zealand.
NOVEMBER		
DECEMBER		Parents' wedding anniversary - having a big

Preparation for task

1 You will hear two people talking about dates that are important for them. What do you think they will talk about?

2 a) [4.7] Listen and complete **only** column 1 in the table.

b) Listen again and complete the notes in column 2 of the table.

Task

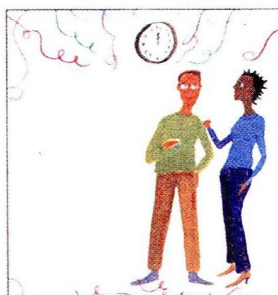
1 Work individually. Draw a personal calendar, like the one above. Spend five to ten minutes completing it with important dates in **your** life. Include:

- important dates from the past.
- important things that happen every year, either in your personal life, or in your country.
- arrangements for this year.

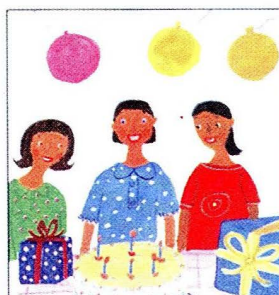


Real life

Phrases for special occasions



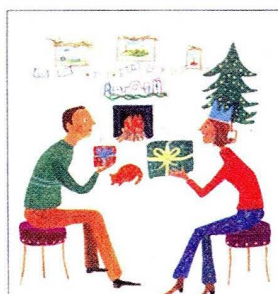
New Year



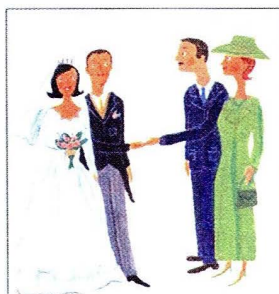
Birthday



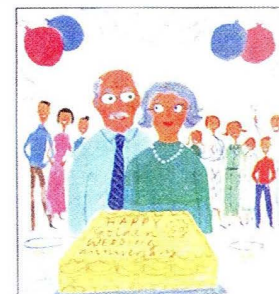
Sickness



Christmas



Wedding



Wedding anniversary

- 1** Match the phrases below with the occasions in the pictures.
(Some of them can be used with more than one picture.)

Happy New Year! Happy anniversary! Thanks for coming.
It's lovely, thank you very much. Happy birthday!
Merry Christmas! Congratulations! Good health!
I hope you'll be very happy! I hope you feel better soon!
Good luck! Many happy returns!
The best of luck for the future/your operation/the New Year ...

- 2** Spend a few minutes planning what you will say.

► **Useful language a)**

► **Personal vocabulary**

- 3** Work in pairs or small groups. Tell the other students about your personal calendar. Your partners can ask questions.

► **Useful language b)**

What was the most interesting thing you found out?

Pronunciation

[4.8] It is important to use friendly, positive intonation with these phrases. Listen and repeat.

- 2** [4.9] Listen to the beginnings of some conversations. When you hear a beep, choose the best phrase from the box above.

- 3** Work in pairs. Practice the conversations using the tapescript on page 161 to help you. Think of similar conversations of your own. Practice them with your partner.

Writing

A letter of invitation

- 1 Read the letter below quickly. What is the invitation for?

43 Amock Terrace
Edinburgh

April 14th

Dear Sofia,

- 1 How are you? I'm fine. I have a new job in the marketing department, so I get more money, but it's hard work. It's been a long time since I last saw you. I remember you were very busy helping your friend get ready for her wedding - I hope it all went well and that the weather stayed nice!
- 2 Actually, I'm writing to tell you about another wedding. My brother Andy and Anushka finally set a date for their wedding - August 20th - we'll send you an invitation in a few weeks. Anyway, my parents want to celebrate the engagement, so we're having a special lunch on Sunday, May 3rd. We're inviting relatives and close friends, so there'll be about twenty people at the party, and we'd love to see you.
- 3 I know it's quite a long way for you to come, but Rob is driving up, so maybe you could come with him. If not, I can meet you at the station - just let me know when your train gets in.
- 4 I'm going away for two weeks tomorrow, but you can phone my parents to tell them if you're coming. Their number is 0131 445892. I really hope you can come!

Love

Marina

- 2 Which paragraph tells Sofia:

- how she can get to the party?
- personal news about Marina since the last time they met?
- the reason for the invitation and details about the event?
- how she can reply to the invitation?

- 3 Write a letter to a friend, inviting him or her to a special occasion, real or imaginary.

Do you remember?

- 1 Put the twelve months of the year under the correct stress pattern.

● ● ●	● ●	● ●	● ● ●	●
January	April		September	March

- 2 Think of two reasons why you:

- send a card.
- spend a lot of money.
- say congratulations.
- give a present.

- 3 Match the words in A with those in B to make phrases from Module 4.

A	B
a) visit	the phone
b) dress	some money
c) earn	your relatives
d) answer	some photographs
e) take	the photocopying
f) do	up

- 4 What is the -ing form of these verbs?

- a) sit b) drive c) study d) make
e) write f) travel

- 5 Circle the correct verb in these sentences.

- a) Mom makes/s making a cake - it smells great!
b) Anthea visits/'s visiting her aunt every month.
c) Trude doesn't spend/isn't spending her vacation with us this year.
d) Carl earns/'s earning extra money this week.
e) Do you know/Are you knowing the answer?
f) I celebrate/am celebrating my birthday on Saturday.

- 6 Do the phrases mean the same? If not, explain the difference.

- a) one day/the other day
b) every day/daily
c) the day after tomorrow/in two days' time
d) have a day off/have a day out
e) nowadays/these days

module 5

Appearances

- ▶ Comparatives and superlatives
 - ▶ Describing what people look like
 - ▶ Wordspot: *look*
- Task: describe a suspect to the police

Language focus 1

Comparatives and superlatives

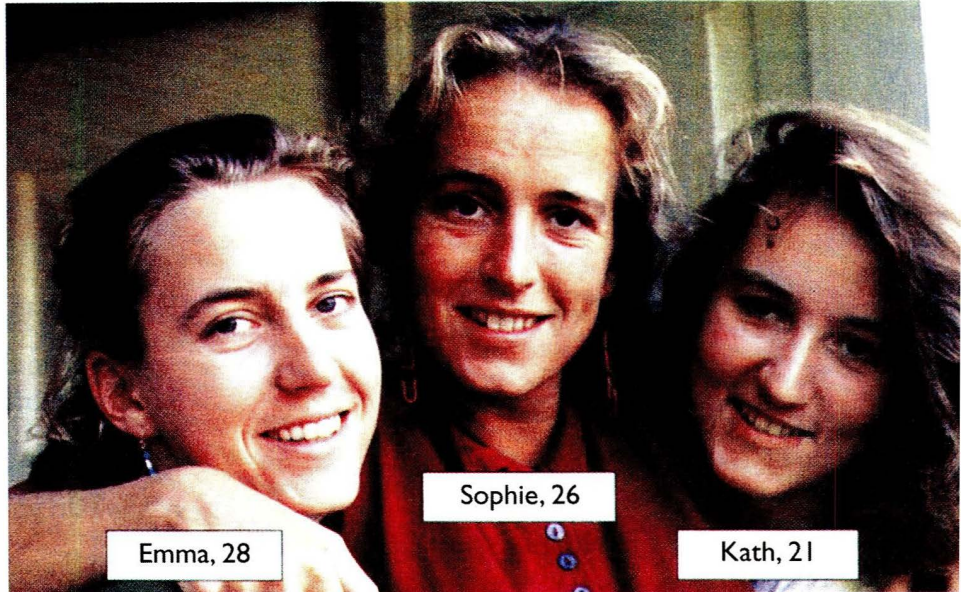
1 Look at the photograph of three sisters. Do they look alike? In what way?

2 [5.1] Listen to Emma talk about her family.

- Which sisters do people think are very similar?
- Do they have similar personalities?

3 Listen again. This is a summary of what Emma says. Complete the blanks.

- a Emma is the But her sisters are her.
- b Emma looks very to Sophie.
- c They both their father.
- d They all have the same color as their father.
- e In personality, Emma is very her sisters.
- f They are organized Emma.
- g Kath is better Emma at remembering



Grammar analysis

1 What are the comparatives and superlatives of these adjectives?

1 syllable	tall slim pale
2 syllables ending in -y	pretty friendly
2/3 or more syllables	organized modern
irregular forms	good bad

2 Match the beginning of the sentences in A with the ends of the sentences in B. Notice the prepositions used.

A	B
a He's older	from ours.
b He's the tallest	like you.
c It's the same	than me.
d It's similar	as mine.
e It's different	in the class.
f He looks	to yours.

3 Notice that we can compare nouns using *more*.

She's got more energy than me.

He spends more money on clothes than me.

▶ Language summary A, page 151.

Practice

1 Make **eight** sentences about the people in your class using comparatives and superlatives. Use some of the ideas below.

long/short hair tall/short young/old dark/light hair
big/small hands heavy/light bag number of rings
warm/cool clothes bright/dark top number of books
number of brothers and sisters



Patrick has shorter hair than Stefan.

2 Complete the sentences about you and your family. (There are several ways to do this.)

- Harriet is the youngest person in my family.
- People often say I look like ...
- I look very different from ...
- My hair is ... my mother's/sister's.
- My eyes are ... my brother's/my grandmother's.
- I'm ... than my brother/sister/cousin.
- My mother's ... than my father.
- My father's the ... person in my family.
- In my family, ... is more organized than ...

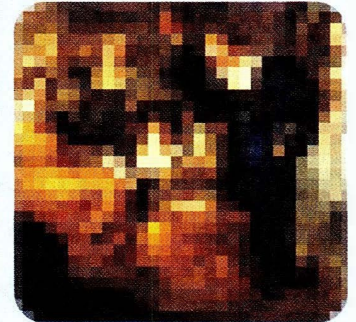
3 Work in small groups. Tell your partners about the people in your family, without looking at the sentences in Exercise 2.

Pronunciation

-  [5.2] Put the words of the sentences into the correct order. Listen and check.
 - My mother's/my father/than/older
 - I'm/from/very/my sister/different
 - Her hair's/mine/very/similar/to
 - She's/I know/nicest/the/person
 - His nose is/mine/as/same/the
-  [5.3] Notice the short sound /ə/ in these phrases, when you say them in the middle of a sentence. Practice saying them in sentences.

/ə/ /ə/	/ə/ /ə/	/ə/ /ə/
older than	different from	similar to
/ə/	/ə/	/ə/ /ə/
the nicest	the biggest	the same as

You're gorgeous!



Reading and vocabulary

1 a) Who do **you** think is the most attractive man/woman in the world? Why?

b) Which is the best explanation of the saying below? Do you think it is true?

Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.

- It is important to have beautiful eyes.
- Everyone has their own idea about beauty.
- Everyone wants to look at a beautiful person.

2 a) Which pictures above show modern ideas of beauty? Why do you think the people in the pictures were/are considered attractive?

b)  Read the text and check your answers.

3 Which of these statements do we **know** are true? Explain your answers.

- Pale skin was more popular than tanned skin until the twentieth century. ✓
- Elizabethan makeup was not very safe.
- In the eighteenth century most fashionable ladies liked mice.
- Ladies in Rubens's time probably never went on diets.
- If Paduang women didn't have a long neck, they couldn't get married.
- People in the eighteenth century thought that it was OK for men to cry.
- Dinka women from Sudan think that thin men are very ugly.

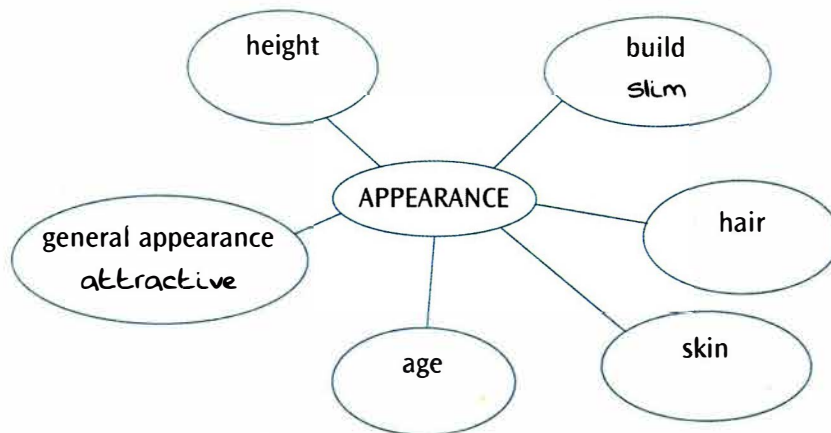


- 1 For many in the 1990s, supermodel Cindy Crawford was the perfect American dream girl: slim, tanned, and natural-looking, with long, shiny hair. People have described her as "The Face of the Decade."
- 2 But people have not always had the same ideas about beauty. Until the 1920s, suntans were for poor people; "ladies" stayed out of the sun to keep their faces as pale as possible. In the time of Queen Elizabeth I of England, fashionable ladies even painted their faces with lead to make them whiter – a very dangerous habit, since lead is poisonous!
- 3 And people in the eighteenth century would not have thought much of Cindy Crawford's hair! Ladies in those days never went out without their wigs, which were so enormous (and dirty) that it was quite common to find mice living in them. As for the "perfect beauties" painted by Rubens in the seventeenth century, if they wanted to be supermodels today, they would need to spend months on a diet!

- 4 Ideas of beauty can be very different according to where you live in the world. For the Paduang tribe in Southeast Asia, the most important sign of female beauty was, traditionally, a long neck. So at the age of five or six, girls received their first neck ring, and each year they added new rings. By the time they were old enough to marry, their necks were about twenty-five centimeters long!
- 5 And what about the ideal man? If you asked people today to name an attractive man, most of them would mention someone like Pierce Brosnan, Keanu Reeves, or Denzel Washington: someone tall and athletic, brave and "manly."
- 6 In the eighteenth century, however, the idea of "manliness" was very different from what it is today. As well as wearing wigs, perfume, and lots of makeup, a true gentleman showed that he had feelings by crying frequently in public. According to one story, when the British prime minister, Lord Spencer Percival, came to give King George IV some bad news, both men sat down and cried!
- 7 Even someone as good-looking as Pierce Brosnan might not find it so easy to attract women if he visited the Dinka tribe of Sudan. They have always believed in the saying that "big is beautiful." Traditionally, each year, men compete to win the title of "the fattest man." The winner is sure to find a wife quickly. For a Dinka woman, if a man is fat, it is also a sign that he is rich and powerful!



- 4 a)** Complete the diagram below with words from the text. (You may not find words for every section.)



- b)** Can you add any other words? Look back to Language focus 1 on page 39 to help you.

Pronunciation

- 1 How many syllables do these adjectives have?
Underline the stressed syllables.

For example:

1 2 3

beau – ti – ful

1 2 3

in – teres – ting

gorgeous well dressed

tanned ordinary

fashionable old-fashioned

ancient traditional

- 2 [5.4] Listen and check your answers. Practice saying the words.

Language focus 2

Describing what people look like

1 Match the questions in A with the answers in B.

A

- a How old is he?
- b How tall is he?
- c Is he black or white?
- d What does he look like, generally?
- e What's his hair like?
- f What color are his eyes?
- g Does he have a beard or a mustache?

B

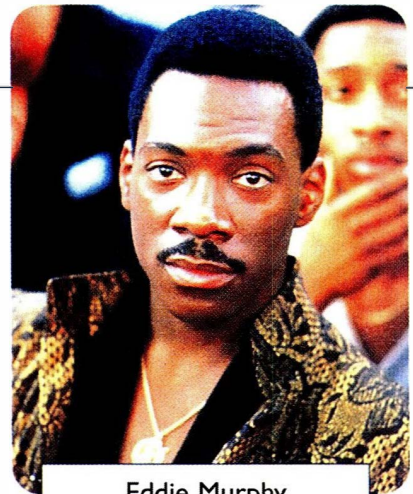
- No, he doesn't.
- It's dark and wavy, and he's going gray.
- He's quite slim, and attractive, but he looks a bit untidy sometimes.
- I don't know exactly, but I think he's in his forties.
- I think they're brown.
- White.
- He's about average height, I think.

2 Which of these movie stars is described in the answers? Do you agree with the description?

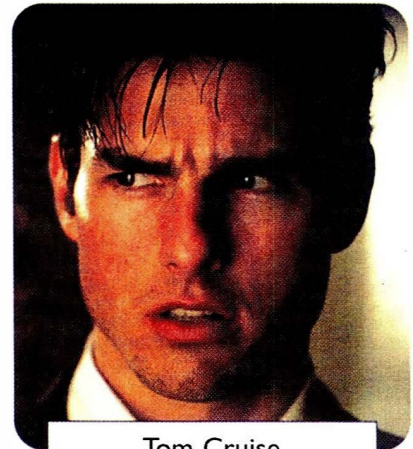
3 a) Here are some more possible answers to the questions in A above. Match the answers to the correct questions.

He's quite good-looking, but a bit overweight. They're gray.
 It's short and dark. He looks a bit strange. He's black.
 He has a mustache, but not a beard. It's completely white.
 About 1.80 m, I suppose. He's very tidy and well dressed.
 He looks very ordinary – average height, average build.
 He's middle-aged, about 55. He's in his twenties. He's not very tall.

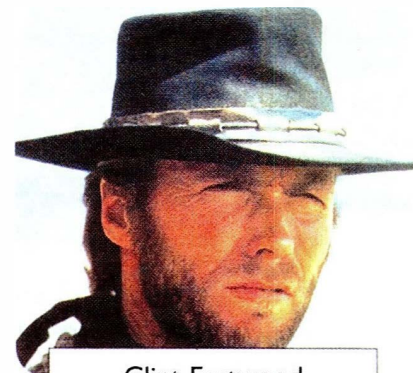
b) Can you use any of these phrases to describe these movie stars? Think of some other phrases to describe them.



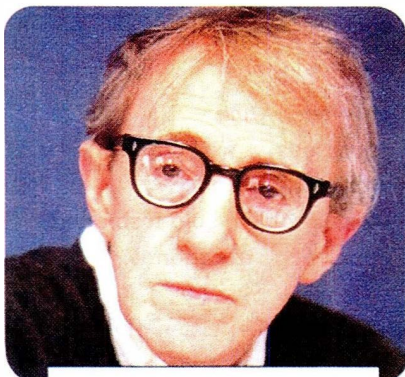
Eddie Murphy



Tom Cruise



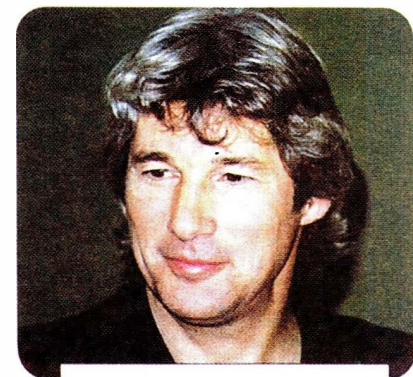
Clint Eastwood



Woody Allen



Brad Pitt



Richard Gere

Grammar analysis

1 Complete the blanks in the questions and answers. Which use *be* and which use *have* got?

- a A: color his hair?
B: black.
- b A: tall she?
B: About 1.72 m.
- c A: he a beard?
B: No, but he a mustache.
- d A: old she?
B: She's twenties.
- e A: What her eyes?
B: lovely: dark brown and very big.
- f A: What he ,
generally?
B: He a bit strange, I think.

2 Look at questions e and f. Which asks:

- about a person's appearance?
- for a description/opinion of something?

► **Language summary B, pages 151–152.**

Practice

1 Use these words to make correct sentences/questions.

- a What/your new dress?
(Answer: It's really long and black, it's gorgeous!)
- b What/color/her/eyes?
- c He/long hair?
- d They/teens.
- e What/her husband/look?
- f What/her children/look?
- g He/glasses and a beard.

2 Work in pairs or teams, A and B. A thinks of a famous person (male or female). B asks up to ten questions to find out who it is. When B guesses, change roles.

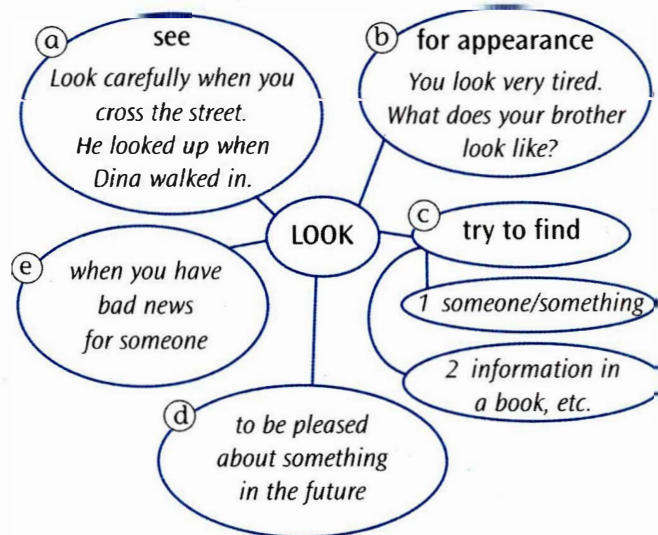
irLanguage.com

Wordspot

look

1 Read the sentences. Add the phrases with *look* to the correct section of the diagram.

- a Stop **looking out of** the window and listen.
- b That bartender **looks like** Brad Pitt, doesn't he!
- c **Look** how many people there are on the beach!
- d I'm **looking for** a book about cats.
- e Are those your photos? Can I **have a look**?
- f What a **strange-looking** dog!
- g I'm **looking forward** to seeing you.
- h **Look**, I don't really know how to tell you this, but I'm going away soon ... for two years.
- i I know he was bored. He **looked at** his watch every five minutes.
- j Could you **look up** Mr. White's address, please?



2 Finish the sentences below about yourself. Use a phrase with *look* in your answer.

- a Why do you:
- go to the library? • use a dictionary?
- b Finish the sentences below about yourself.
- I think I look good in blue .
 - I'm really looking forward to
 - When I look out of my bedroom window, I can see
 - I would like to look like
 - I look up about new words every English lesson.
 - When I'm on a bus, I look at

Describe a suspect to the police

Personal vocabulary

Useful language

a To describe the suspect

"He/She was (*thin/well-dressed/in his thirties*)."

"He/She had (*blond hair/a big nose*)."

"His hair was a bit like ...'s (*for example, a student in your class*), but it was shorter."

"He/She was wearing (*a long black coat*)."

b To ask about the suspect

"How old was he/she?"

"What was his/her (*hair/mouth*) like?"

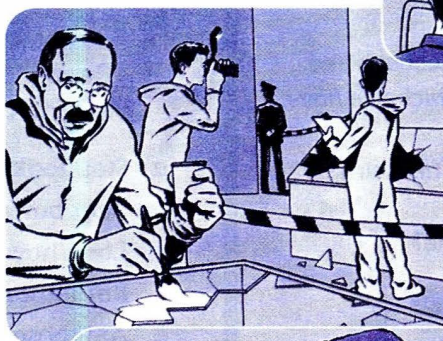
"What color was/were his/her (*hair/eyes*)?"

"Was his hair longer or shorter than (*mine/his*)?"


"Did he/she have (*glasses/a mustache*)?"

"What was he/she wearing?"

Preparation for task



1 What crime do you think the man in the picture committed? Why is the policeman talking to the woman? What is she telling him?

2  You are going to describe or ask for a description of a crime suspect. Divide into two groups, A and B. Read the cards below and follow the instructions.

A Witnesses

Last weekend you visited your local art gallery. During your visit, art thieves stole a world-famous painting. The police believe that you were in the elevator at the same time as one of the thieves, and want you to give a description of this person. Turn to page 146 to see the man you were in the elevator with. You were in the elevator for two minutes, so you have two minutes to look at the picture. When you have finished, discuss in your group how to describe him. Think about these things:

- age • face • skin • hair • clothes • build • general appearance

Look at the phrases in the *Useful language a* to help you.

B Police officers

Last weekend thieves stole a world-famous painting from a local art gallery. You know that one of the thieves used the elevator just before the painting was stolen. You are going to interview a witness who was in the elevator at the same time to get a description of the man. In your group, discuss what questions you will ask the witness. Think about these things:

- age • face • skin • hair • clothes • build • general appearance

Look at the phrases in the *Useful language b* to help you.

Task

1 Work in pairs, one person from Group A (a witness) and one from Group B (a police officer). The police officer should ask the witness questions, and:

Either: Make detailed notes about the suspect.

Or: Draw a picture of the suspect using the face outline below. Make any extra notes necessary, and ask the witness questions to check that your drawing is accurate.

► **Useful language**

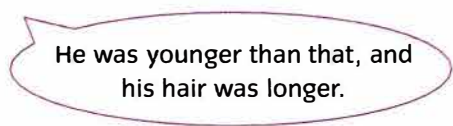
► **Personal vocabulary**



2 a) At the end of the interview, B looks at the ten possible suspects on page 140. Decide which was the man in the elevator and ask A to say "yes" or "no."

b) If B chooses the wrong man, A must not point out the correct suspect, but he/she can explain **why** B was wrong.

For example:



c) B makes a second, final choice. A says which is the real suspect.

3 How many police officers chose the correct suspect:

- the first time? • the second time?

Did your witness give you a good description? Why/Why not?

Optional writing

Either: Choose one of the **other** photos on page 140 and write a description.

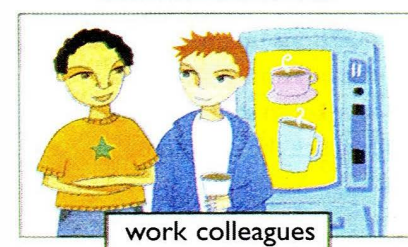
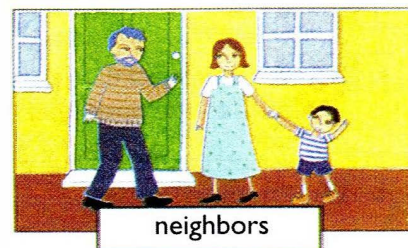
Or: Write a description of a person your partner knows **without** giving the name. (It can be a famous person, or someone from your class.)

Show your description to your partner. Can he/she guess the first time who it is?

Real life

Social chitchat

chitchat *n.* informal conversation about everyday things



1 Which of these topics do people normally talk about in the situations above?

sports plans for the day
health the weather family
personal problems religion
what you did on the weekend
where you're from
reasons for your visit

2 [5.5] Listen to the four conversations, and check (✓) the topics you hear discussed.

3 [5.6] What were the questions for these answers? Listen again and check.

- a A:?
B: Yes, it's lovely.
- b A:?
B: No, nothing special. We might go to the park later.
- c A:?
B: Yes, I'm much better.
- d A:?
B: Oh, they're all right. Yes, they're all fine.
- e A:?
B: Yes, it's our first time here.
- f A:?
B: Yeah, it was OK. I didn't do much, really.
- g A:?
B: Oh, yeah, fantastic, wasn't it? That goal was great!

Pronunciation

[5.7] Listen to the questions again. Notice how the intonation helps the speaker to sound interested. Practice the questions.

4 a) Have a conversation similar to those on the recording. First, decide:

- what your relationship is (friends/colleagues/strangers).
- where you are (in a store/on the street/in a coffee shop).
- which topics you will talk about (health/family/sports).

b) Act out your conversation. The other students should answer the questions in Exercise 4a above.

Do you remember?

1 a) Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjective in parentheses.

- 1 Which is ... (nice) room in your house?
- 2 Which is ... (near) to your house: a school or a supermarket?
- 3 Which is ... (big): your bedroom or the kitchen?
- 4 What is ... (unusual) object in your house?
- 5 Which is ... (useful) thing to own: a car or a computer?

b) Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

2 What is the opposite of:

- a) ugly?
- b) slim?
- c) pale?
- d) light (hair)?
- e) long (hair)?

3 Which words are missing from the following sentences?

- a) What does she ~~like~~ like?
- b) ~~he~~ he got a mustache?
- c) Is her hair ~~similar~~ similar mine?
- d) My brother looks very different ~~me~~ me.
- e) What are her eyes ~~eyes~~ eyes?

4 Write the missing words.

- a) **noun:** **adjective:** beautiful
- b) **verb:** to attract **adjective:**
- c) **noun:** fashion **adjective:**
- d) **verb:** **noun:** description

5 Match the beginnings in A with an ending in B. In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- | A | B |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Did you have | in (New York)? |
| 2 Do you have any plans | the family? |
| 3 Did you see | on business? |
| 4 So are you here | a good vacation? |
| 5 Are you feeling | for tomorrow? |
| 6 How's | any movies on the weekend? |
| 7 Is this your first time | OK today? |

module 6

Time off

► Intentions and wishes: *going to, planning to, would like to, would prefer to*

► Vocabulary: vacations

► Predictions: *will and won't*


Task: plan your dream vacation

Language focus 1

Intentions and wishes: *going to, planning to, would like to, would prefer to*



1 Discuss with other students.


- Are you usually free on weekends, or do you have to do a lot of work or studying?
- How many weeks of vacation from work or school do you have every year? Is it enough?
- Do you think people in your country have enough free time, generally? (Think about people in different types of job.)

2  Do you like to keep busy or do you prefer to take life easy? Take the quiz with a partner to find out.

3 What do your partner's answers show about him/her? Do you ever make resolutions about your free time? Give examples.

Live wire or couch potato?



Bath


- 1 Unexpectedly, you have two or three hours off from work/school this afternoon; are you going to:
 - a tidy your desk, sort out your papers, and answer some letters?
 - b phone a couple of friends or send a few emails?
 - c lie on the sofa and watch an old movie on TV?
- 2 Next weekend, are you planning to:
 - a meet a few friends, and do some shopping?
 - b decorate your bedroom, make a new dress, or mend your motorcycle?
 - c sleep?
- 3 You enter a competition. Which of the following would you prefer to win?
 - a a Jacuzzi for your bathroom
 - b a really good mountain bike
 - c a year's membership of a health club
- 4 What kind of vacation would you least like to take?
 - a a sightseeing vacation in a busy city
 - b a biking, climbing, and camping vacation
 - c a beach vacation with nothing else to do

Grammar analysis

- 1 Which sentence below shows that the person has thought more about the plan and how to do it?
 - a *I'm going to phone some friends this evening.*
 - b *I'm planning to repair my motorcycle this weekend.*
- 2 Read sentences c) and d). Which means:
 - I want to do this?
 - I want to do this more than something else?
 - c *I'd prefer to win a mountain bike.*
 - d *I'd like to go on a sightseeing vacation.*
- 3 What form do we use after *be going*, *be planning*, *would like*, and *would prefer*?

► Language summary A, page 152.

Practice

- 1 a)  Use the words below to make six good resolutions for the future.

For example:

I'm not going to argue with my mother any more.

I'm going to spend less on clothes.


- argue (with my sister)
- spend (more/less) time (reading)
- save money for (a new computer)
- spend more/less money on (cigarettes)
- eat more/less (chocolate)
- study (English every weekend)
- keep in touch with (old friends)
- learn to (drive)
- stop (smoking)
- join (a gym)
- do (more sport)
- remember (birthdays)

b) Work in groups. Read out your resolutions.

2 When you have some free time, do you go away for the day/weekend? Use the prompts below to make questions, then ask two partners.

	Partner A	Partner B
a (plan/have) any days or weekends away in the next few weeks? Who (plan/go) with?		
b Which places near your home (like/visit) for the day?		
c Which other parts of your country (like/visit) for a weekend or a few days?		
d For a really nice weekend away, (prefer/go) the country, the seaside, or a city?		
e Which of these cities (prefer/visit) for a long weekend: New York, London, or Dublin?		
f Are there any other cities (really/like/go to)?		

Pronunciation

- 1  [6.1] Write the number of words you hear. Contractions (for example, *I'm*) = 2 words.

- 2 Notice that the vowel sound in *to* is pronounced /ə/. Practice saying the following phrases.

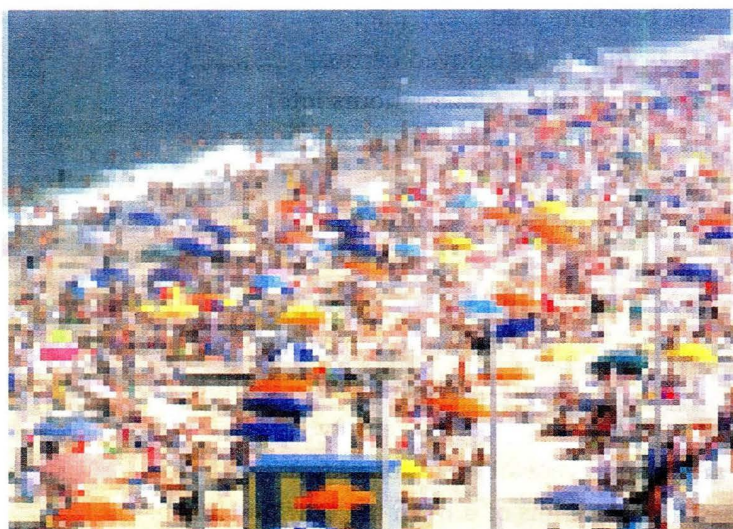
I'm planning > I'm planning to have

I'm going > I'm going to see

I'd like > I'd like to go

I'd prefer > I'd prefer to travel

- 3 Practice saying the complete sentences from Exercise 1.



Vocabulary and speaking

Vacations

1 a) Which of these are most important to you on vacation? Discuss.

- the weather
- the food
- accommodation
- stores
- sightseeing/culture
- the scenery
- the nightlife
- who you go with

b) What can you see in the photos above? Do they show positive or negative things about vacations?

2 a) If necessary, check the meaning and pronunciation of the words in **bold** below. Divide the ideas into the following groups.

ideal vacation awful vacation not sure/neither

your plane is **delayed**
 the place you visit is **lively** and full of people
 the water is too **polluted** to swim in
 the hotel staff are **rude** and **unhelpful**
 the food in the hotel is **disgusting**
 there are **views** of the city from your hotel room
 there's no **entertainment** or **nightlife**
 the **atmosphere** is **peaceful** and **relaxing**
 the weather's **wet** and **windy**
 the weather's **really hot**
 the hotel has views of a **building site**
 there are lots of stores

b) Compare answers in pairs or small groups. Explain your answers if necessary. Can you add any other ideas to each group?

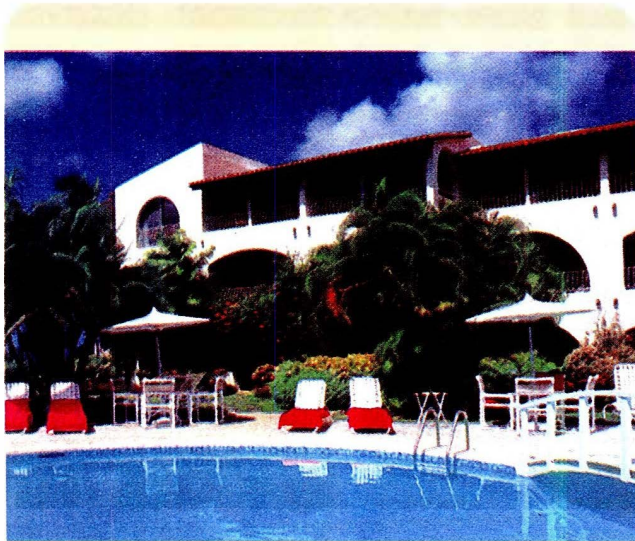
3 a) Tell your partners about a vacation you have taken that was either really good, or awful. Use some of the phrases above.

b) Listen to your partner's story: Has anything similar ever happened to you?

Listening and speaking

The vacation in hell

1 Last year Mark and Rosa saved up and booked their dream vacation, in the Caribbean. Read what the travel brochure said.



- ★ luxurious hotel close to beautiful sandy beach
- ★ three swimming pools, tennis, golf, and watersports
- ★ three beach bars and first class restaurant
- ★ average temperatures 28 to 30°C; average hours of sunshine per day 8 to 9 hours
- ★ flying time eight and a half hours
- ★ airport fifteen minutes by bus from the hotel

2 Work in pairs (A and B) and act out the following conversation.

A is Mark/Rosa. Tell a friend about the vacation you are planning. (Invent any details that you do not know from the brochure above.)

B is Mark/Rosa's friend. Ask about the vacation.
Where are you going?
What's the hotel like?
How long is the trip?

3 [6.2] Unfortunately, the vacation was awful. In fact, Mark and Rosa appeared on a program called *Vacations in Hell* to describe it. You will hear the story in two parts.

a) Listen to Part 1 and look back at the list of problems in Exercise 2, page 49. Underline the problems they mention.

b) What do you think happened next? Listen to Part 2 and check.

4 Listen and answer the questions below.

Part 1: complete the sentences.

- a The vacation cost each.
- b They went in the month of because the brochure said
- c Their flight was delayed because
- d The flight was hours late.
- e They couldn't fly to San Antonio because
- f They flew to instead.

Part 2: true or false?

- a The Hotel Paradiso was a typical five-star hotel.
- b There was a sandy beach next to the hotel.
- c The swimming pool was empty.
- d They had vegetables for breakfast.
- e There were lots of ants in the bowl of lettuce.
- f The most frightening part of the holiday was the flight to San Antonio.
- g They arrived in San Antonio five days late.
- h Hurricane Georgia never got to San Antonio.

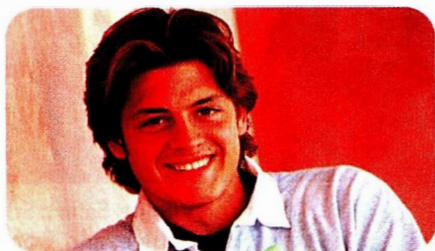
5 a) Work in pairs, A and B. Mark and Rosa are talking to their friend again after the vacation. Start the conversation like this:

- A: So, did you have a nice vacation?
 B: No, it was awful. It was a nightmare!
 A: Why? What happened?

b) What do you think was the worst part of the vacation?

Language focus 2

Predictions: *will* and *won't*



Matt, from London, is visiting the capital city of your country in August. What do you say to him?

- a It'll be very hot.
- b You'll have a wonderful time.
- c There'll be lots of tourists.
- d You won't see the city at its best.
- e It won't be very crowded.
- f You'll have to take warm clothes with you.
- g There'll be lots of insects.
- h You won't be able to find a hotel.

Grammar analysis

1 Check (✓) the correct answer. Sentences a)–h) above describe:

- a things you **plan to do**. ☐
- b things you **expect to happen**. ☐
- c things you **want to happen**. ☐

- 2 a Which verb form do we use in a)–c) above?
 b Change sentence a into a question.
 c Change sentence h into the present.

► **Language summary B, page 152.**

Practice

1 Work in pairs, A and B. Act out the conversation between you and Matt:

- A: I'm planning to visit (name of city) in August next year.
 B: You'll have a great time – it won't be very crowded. Most people will be away on vacation.
 A: Oh good. What about the weather?

2 Matt may stay in your country for a while. Here are some other things he may do.

open a bank account go to the barber
 go to the doctor go on a bus tour of the city
 travel by train from the capital to the second city

a) Match the beginnings in A with the endings in B to make questions for Matt.

- | A | B |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Will I have to make | will it take? |
| 2 Will I have to leave | will I need? |
| 3 Will I have to | crowded? |
| 4 Will I need to reserve | an appointment? |
| 5 Will it be | pay? |
| 6 Will it be | to speak English? |
| 7 Will the people be able | a tip? |
| 8 How long | to sleep? |
| 9 What documents | expensive? |
| 10 Will there be anywhere | a seat? |

b) Work in pairs. Choose two things for Matt to do. Which of the questions will he need? Act out the conversation between you and Matt.

I'm going to open a bank account tomorrow – but I don't know very much about it.

OK. How can I help?

Well, what documents ...?

Pronunciation

1 Complete the sentences with *It'll*, *You'll*, or *There'll*.

- a ... have a great time!
- b ... need to bring an umbrella.
- c ... be lots of things for children to do.
- d ... be quite cold at that time of year.
- e ... be very crowded.

2 [6.3] Listen and check your answers. Practice saying the sentences.

Plan your dream vacation

Personal vocabulary

Useful language

a Discussing the different possibilities

"Personally, I'd like to ... because it will be ..."

"I'd prefer to ... because ..."

"Well, how about ... or we could ...?"

b Asking about vacations

"Where/When are you going?"

"How long are you going for?"

"Why did you choose that vacation?"

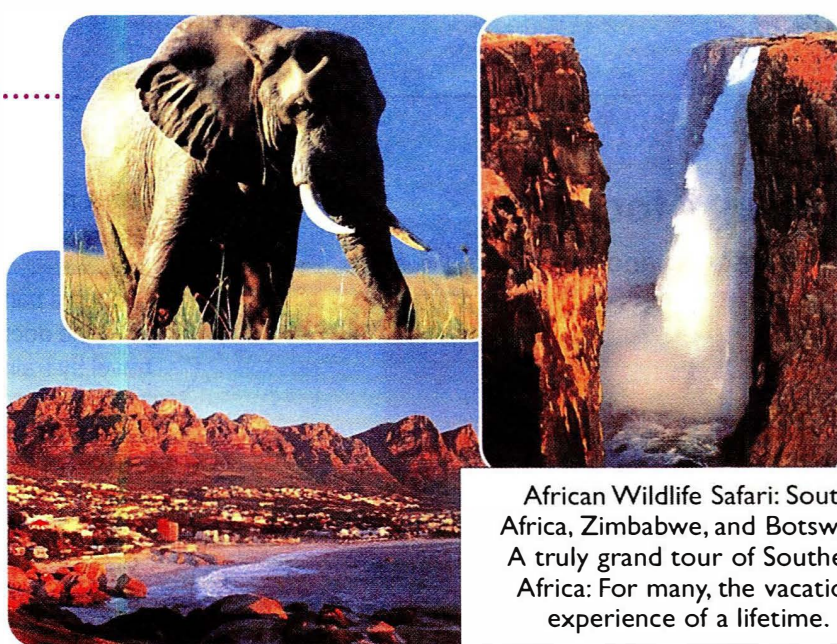
"Which excursions are you going on?"

c Telling people about your vacation

"We're going to ... for ... days/weeks."

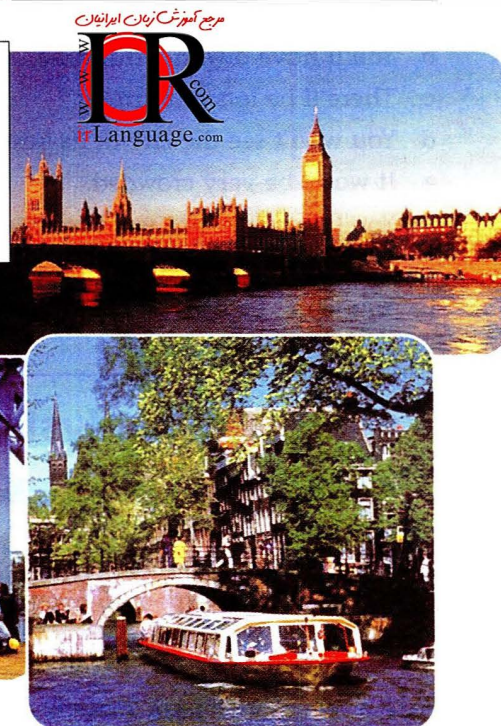
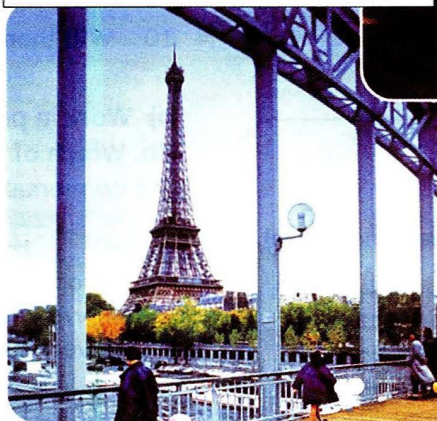
"I chose this vacation because ..."

"We're going to stay in a hotel."



African Wildlife Safari: South Africa, Zimbabwe, and Botswana
A truly grand tour of Southern Africa: For many, the vacation experience of a lifetime.

European City Tour:
London–Paris–Amsterdam
What could be better than to combine three of Europe's greatest cities into one fabulous vacation?



Preparation for task

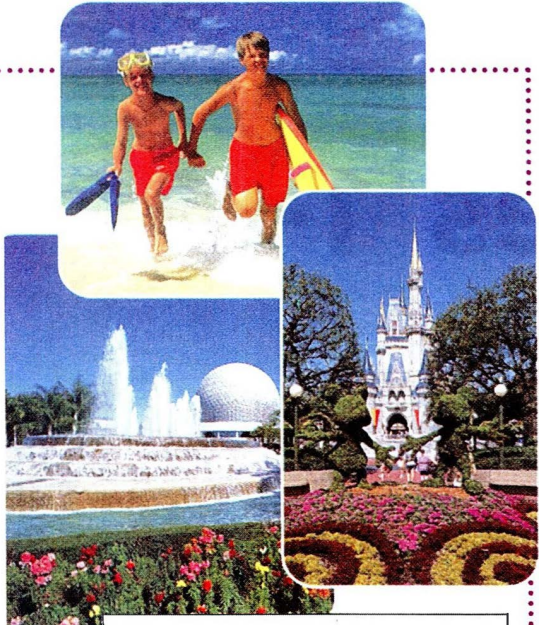
1 a) Look at the advertisements for three dream tours above. Which places do you visit on each tour?

b) Which tour do the words and phrases below relate to? Check the meaning and pronunciation of any unknown words.

a safari lodge the dry season an ostrich a cruise
a canal a theme park a motel rental accommodations
dolphins and killer whales sailing an excursion

2 Discuss the questions below with the class.

- How will people spend their time on each of these vacations?
- What will they see?
- What will be the best things about each vacation?



The Florida Experience
Discover fantastic Florida, fun
capital of the US!

Writing

Write a postcard

1 a) Neil and Claudia are on vacation in Spain. In the following pairs of phrases, underline the one that is suitable for a postcard to a friend. Why are the other phrases **not** suitable?

- a Hi, Tim!/Dear Mr. Buchanan
- b I am pleased to tell you that we have arrived .../Here we are ...
- c The weather is warm, with a maximum temperature of 26.5 degrees./It's lovely and sunny.
- d The food is really tasty/Meals usually cost between \$15 and \$20 and are of excellent quality.
- e We're staying in .../Our address is ...
- f ... on July 25th./... when we get home
- g Bye for now!/Yours sincerely
- h There are plenty of clubs and things to do/There are 126 nightclubs and over a thousand restaurants.

Task

1 Work in pairs or small groups. You are going to plan a dream vacation (money is no problem). Decide together which vacation you would like to go on, and why.

2 a) Read the fact file about your vacation (Safari page 140, European cities page 146, Florida page 144) and complete the tables.

b) Discuss the different possibilities.

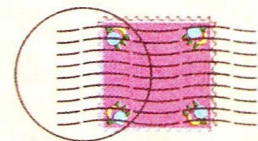
- **Useful language a)**
- **Personal vocabulary**

3 Work with a new partner who has planned a different vacation from you. Ask/Tell each other about the vacation you have planned.

- **Useful language b) and c)**

b) Complete the postcard with phrases from Exercise 1.

(1) _____,
(2) _____ in sunny Spain! We
arrived in Barcelona a week ago
and after a few days sightseeing
there, (3) _____ a place called
Llafranc. (4) _____ and there's
a marina and a very nice little
beach. (5) _____ (especially the
seafood!) We'll both definitely
have to go on a diet (6) _____!
(7) _____ in the evening.
Give our love to everyone at
college.
(8) _____.
Neil and Claudia



Tim Buchanan
Flat A
156 Rutherford Rd
Leeds
LS4 9FT

2 You are on vacation. Write a postcard to someone you know, using some of the phrases above. Include:

- the name and address of the person you're writing to.
- a greeting.
- where you are now and information about it.
- other places you've visited.
- information about the weather, food, evening entertainment.
- signing off.

Consolidation

modules 1–6

A Present tenses, *should*, *can*

1 Check the meaning of these words/phrases.

a murderer to escape from jail

2 Complete the gaps in the text below. Use the Present Simple, Present Continuous, or put *should/shouldn't* or *can/can't* in front of the verb.

Police officers in Burton (1)..... (look for) 38-year-old Brian Poole, a murderer, who escaped from jail this morning.

"This man is extremely dangerous," said Superintendent Michael Walsh earlier today. "Anyone who (2)..... (see) him (3)..... try to talk to him or go near him, but (4)..... phone the police immediately."

There is also another man that officers (5) (want) to interview – a witness saw him sitting in a car near the jail, just before the escape. "We (6)..... (think) the car was dark blue, but I (7)..... give you any more details about it at the moment," said the Superintendent. "We would like to hear from anyone who (8)..... remember seeing a dark blue or black car in that area." People who (9)..... (live) near the jail (10)..... (ask) how Poole was able to escape from the "high security" jail. "It's disgusting," said mother-of-four Mrs. Jane Thompson, "the government (11)..... do something about it – we (12)..... (not/feel) safe, and we certainly (13)..... go out after dark." A government representative (14)..... (visit) the jail tomorrow.

B Vocabulary: review

Work in pairs. Read the definitions and find words from Modules 1–6 (the Module number is in parentheses). The first letter of each word is the same as the last letter of the word before.

- 1 Another word for pretty or handsome. (5) attractive
- 2 If you don't understand, ask the teacher to ... again. (3) e
- 3 How you feel before an important exam. (2).....
- 4 Something from a place you visited. (6).....
- 5 Members of your family. (4).....
- 6 Don't ... too much money! (4).....
- 7 His hair's not black, but it's ... than yours. (5).....
- 8 Feeling calm and not worried. (2).....
- 9 If the flight is late, it is ... (6).....
- 10 A word to describe horrible food. (6).....
- 11 Very beautiful or attractive. (5).....
- 12 You can do this lying on the beach. (1).....
- 13 Similar in meaning to number 1 above. (5).....
- 14 If you don't know the answer, you (3).....

C Comparative and superlative adjectives

Complete the blanks in the article below with an adjective from the box, in the comparative or superlative form.

heavy large important ancient long
accurate big (x 2) tall

Found: (1)..... animal that ever walked the planet

It was (2)..... than a giraffe and (3)..... than five elephants. The baluchitherium lived in Asia between 25 and 40 million years ago, and was (4)..... than any other animal that lived on the Earth. Scientists who found the graves of twenty of the animals say that this is (5)..... discovery of its kind, and that they can now make an (6)..... picture of the (7)..... creature. Adult baluchitheriums were about nine meters long and six meters (8)..... . They were vegetarians and used their (9)..... necks to eat leaves from the tops of the trees!

D Vocabulary: pairs

1 How quickly can you find nine pairs of opposites from Modules 1–6 in the box below?

pleased	stay up late	clean
disappointed	go to work	tanned
fashionable	correct yourself	polluted
make a mistake	visit relatives	pale
go to bed early	old-fashioned	bored
have the day off	entertain friends	excited

2 Compare your answers with a partner and explain why you put the words/phrases together.


3 Test your partner. Read out one word or phrase from a pair. Can your partner tell you the other one?

E Plans, wishes, and predictions

1 **Circle** the best verb form in the article below.

Here is your horoscope for Friday 23rd.

Not feeling very healthy at the moment? Well, if (1) *you'd like to lose/you're losing* a few kilos, today is a good day to start. Join a gym today and start eating sensibly, and (2) *you're planning to see/you'll see* results in a few weeks. Your horoscope for the weekend looks excellent. Those of you who (3) *will go/are planning to go* away, don't bring an umbrella – (4) *you'll need/you won't need* it: the weather (5) *will be/won't be* warm and sunny. If (6) *you'd prefer to stay/you won't stay* at home, now is a good time to plant some flowers – it's good exercise and (7) *you're going to get/you'll get* lots of fresh air! Finally, do you have some extra money this week? Invest now and make your fortune. Like King Midas, everything you touch (8) *will turn/won't turn* to gold!

2  [1] Listen and check your answers.

3 Invent a horoscope for your partner. Include some of these topics:

home	work	school	money
love	weather	relationships	


4 Take turns to tell your partner what you predict.

F Listening and grammar: Present and Past Simple

1 You will hear a song called *You are everything*. What kind of song do you think it is?

2 Match words from A and B to make six phrases from the song. Do not look at the song yet!

A	B
see	the corner
feel	memories
look	your name
turn	face
call out	ashamed
bring back	like you

3  [2] Listen to the song without looking at the words. Number the phrases as you hear them.

4 Here are the words of the song. Listen again and circle the correct verb form.

Today I (1) *see/saw* somebody who
(2) *looks/looked* just like you
She (3) *walks/walked* like you do – I
(4) *think/thought* it (5) *is/was* you
As she (6) *turns/turned* the corner, I
(7) *call out/called out* your name
I (8) *feel/felt* so ashamed when it
(9) *isn't/wasn't* you

You are everything and everything is you

How (10) *can/could* I forget you when each
face that I (11) *see/saw*
(12) *Brings/Brought* back memories of being
with you?

I just (13) *can't/couldn't* go on living life as I
do, comparing each girl with you
When it just won't do – (14) *they're not/*
they weren't you

You are everything and everything is you

5 Discuss these questions.

What was the relationship between the singers?
What is it now? How do they feel?

module 7

Fame and fortune

- Vocabulary: ambitions and dreams
 - Present Perfect and Past Simple with *for*
 - Present Perfect and Past Simple with other time words
 - Wordspot: *know*
- Task: prepare an interview

Vocabulary and speaking


Ambitions and dreams

- 1 a) What were your ambitions when you were younger?

I wanted to be a farmer and have lots of children!

I wanted to be really good at singing!

- b) Would you still like to do these things now? Were your ambitions realistic or not?

- 2  Look at the list of ambitions opposite. Divide them into three categories. Compare and explain your answers.

- 1 realistic ambitions
- 2 dreams
- 3 it depends/not sure



learn how to drive	become famous	travel around the world
go abroad	buy your own home	have a large family
become a millionaire	get married	write a novel or a poem
play in an orchestra	start your own business	
appear on TV or in a movie	go to college and get a degree	
become really good at a sport or a musical instrument		
get an interesting job with a good salary		

- 3 Which of these things would you like to do? Do you have any other ambitions? Compare your answers.

- 4 It is important to remember the verbs that we use in these phrases (word combinations). Underline some more examples of word combinations in Exercise 2.

For example:

have children get married go abroad become famous



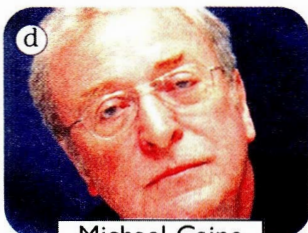
Dustin Hoffman



Tom Hanks



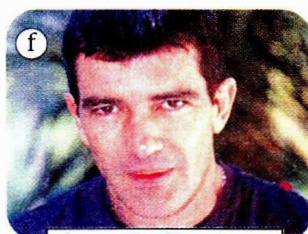
Harrison Ford



Michael Caine



Roseanne Barr



Antonio Banderas



Ewan McGregor

Reading

1 How many people in the pictures do you recognize? What do you know about them?

2 **MD** Here are some jobs these people did before they were famous. Can you guess who did each job? Read and check your answers.

assistant chef bellhop street musician
carpenter soldier waiter model

3 Answer the questions in pairs. Which of the people above:

- a wasn't very good at his previous job?
- b needed a job because he had a wife and children?
- c had a bad relationship with his/her boss?
- d found his/her job useful when he/she became an actor?
- e seemed to like his/her previous job?
- f thought he received good money in his job?
- g hated his/her job?

4 Discuss in pairs. Have you ever had a vacation job, or a temporary job? What was it like?

Before they were famous

1 One day in the early 1960s, Hollywood producer Sam Spiegel was having lunch in a New York restaurant when a nervous-looking waiter spilled coffee over him.

"I'm sorry," said the waiter, "I'm not really a waiter. Actually, I'm an actor."

"No," replied Spiegel angrily, "from now on, you're a waiter."

But Spiegel was wrong. The young man was in fact Dustin Hoffman, who went on to win two Oscars and to appear in huge Hollywood films like *The Graduate*, *Kramer vs Kramer*, and *Rain Man*.

2 Dustin Hoffman isn't the only Hollywood star who made a living from ordinary jobs before becoming famous. Imagine Harrison Ford supporting his young family by working as a carpenter; actor Antonio Banderas working as a model for mail-order catalogs; or comedienne Roseanne Barr as an assistant chef in an expensive French restaurant (she left after arguing with her boss, and went away to become an actress). And if you used the London Underground in the early 90s, perhaps you saw the future star of *Trainspotting* and *Star Wars Part 1*, Ewan McGregor, performing as a street musician. "I made about £20 a day," says McGregor.

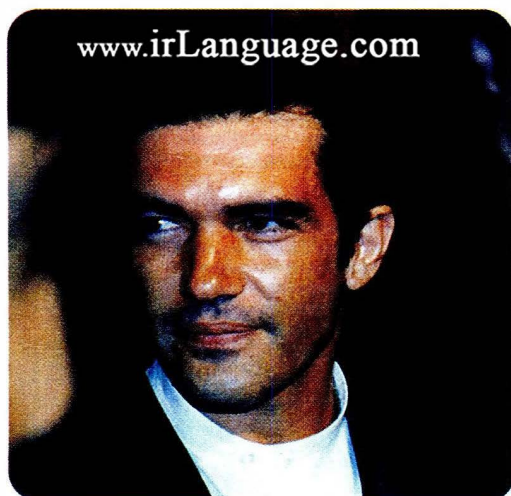
3 For many actors and actresses, this early experience came in useful in their acting career. Academy Award winning actor Tom Hanks worked as a bellhop in the Hilton hotel in Los Angeles in the 1970s, an experience that he says helped prepare him for acting. "You put on your bellhop suit and then play the role of bellhop," he told a magazine. "You make good tips and a nice wage, working three, four days a week."

4 And British actor Michael Caine – who has appeared in over ninety films in a movie career lasting over forty years – found his experience of military service helped him in a different way. Caine spent two years in the army, serving in Germany and Korea. Although he hated life as a soldier, he says, "In Korea I noticed that heroes weren't all tall, with perfect teeth ... but ordinary guys. So that's the way I always try to play them."

5 So next time you see a waiter spill someone's drink, or you stop to watch a street musician, take a good look – he or she might be the next Hollywood sensation!

Language focus 1

Present Perfect and Past Simple with *for*



1 Compare the two sentences below.

Antonio Banderas has been a famous actor for many years now.

Before he became famous, he was a model for a while.

a Which action:

- is finished? • continues up to the present?

b Which sentence uses:

- the Present Perfect? • the Past Simple?

2 Look at the text on page 57 and make similar sentences about the following.

- a Tom Hanks c Michael Caine
- b Roseanne Barr

Grammar analysis

1 Match the sentences with the correct timeline.

- a *I was in New York for two weeks.*
- b *I've been in New York for two weeks.*
- c *I'm in New York for two weeks.*



2 What are the Past Simple and Present Perfect forms of these verbs?

a **regular** work

b **irregular** know

How do we form the questions and negatives?

3 Notice these questions with *How long*?

How long has he been famous?

How long was he a model?

► **Language summary A/B, page 152.**

Practice


1 Use **eight** of these prompts to make true sentences about yourself/people you know.

For example:

I've had my CD player for three months.

- a *I have had/had my for*
- b *I've been/was a for*
- c *I have been/was at school for years.*
- d *Before that, I have gone/ went to school.*
- e *I have lived/lived in for*
- f *I have known/knew for years.*
- g *My grandparents have been/were married for years.*
- h *My father has worked/worked as a for years.*
- i *..... (my teacher) has been/was a teacher for years.*

Pronunciation

- 1  [7.1] Listen and count the number of words you hear (*I've* = 2 words).
- 2 Listen again. Write down the complete sentences. Notice how the words change when we speak quickly.
/ə/
I've known Anna for about eight years.
- 3 Listen again and practice.

2 Which of these verbs are regular and which are irregular? What are the Past Simple and past participles forms?

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| a see | f make |
| b have | g notice |
| c leave | h reply |
| d appear | i find |
| e win | j put |

3 It is important to learn irregular verbs. Which of these ideas would help?

- Gradually learning the verbs from the list on page 148 using the "look-cover-write-check" method.
- Remembering irregular verbs as you meet them.
- Learning a few irregular verbs each day by making up sentences with them.
- Repeating the irregular verbs to yourself, again and again.
- Asking another student (or your teacher) to test you.

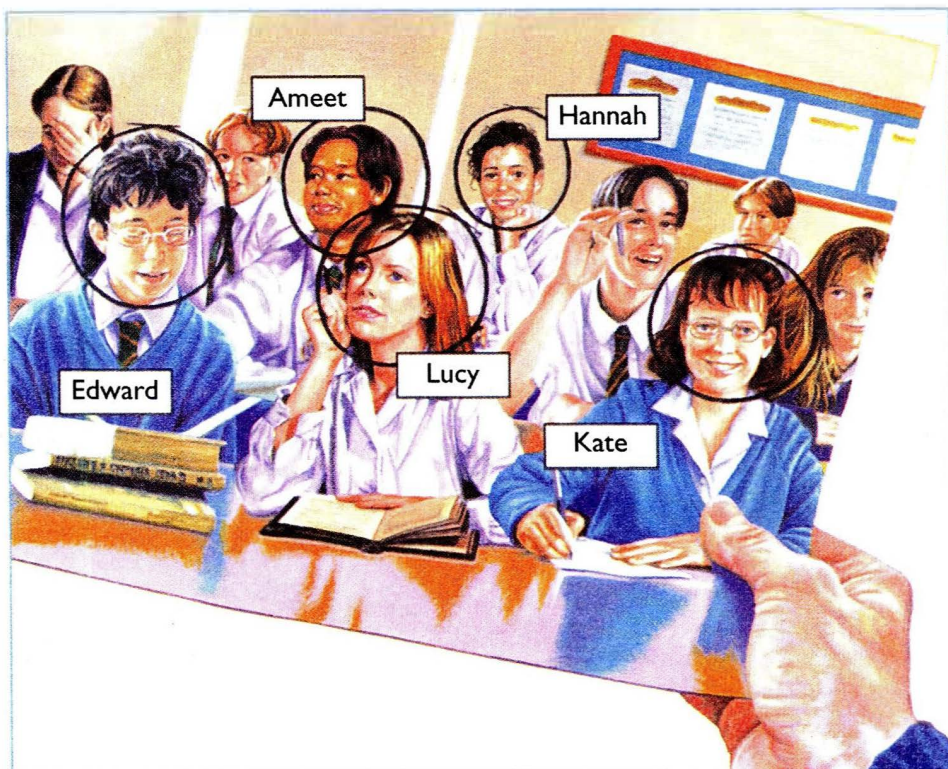
Try one or more of these ideas for a week. Tell the class how well the method is working.

Language focus 2

Present Perfect and Past Simple with other time words

1 Robbie left school in 1990. He is remembering his old school friends. Complete the sentences using the verbs below.

wanted didn't go spent was went
studied didn't enjoy I liked had decided



Ameete was always interested in business – he always (1)..... lots of brilliant ideas for making money and his ambition (2)..... to be a millionaire by the age of twenty-five!
Lucy was a movie addict – she sometimes (3)..... to the movies four or five times a week. She (4)..... to become a famous movie actress like her heroine, Michelle Pfeiffer.
Edward was always very quiet, and he (5)..... out very much – he (6)..... most of his time at home in his room, playing games on his computer.
Kate (7)..... for at least three hours every evening – when she was eighteen years old, she (8)..... to become an ecologist and help save the planet.
Hannah (9)..... school at all – for some reason, the only subject she (10)..... was geography.

2 Robbie contacted his friends by email. What do you think they are doing now? Look at the next page and find out.



During the last ten years, **Ameet** has had ten different jobs: he has worked in the import-export business, he has been a realtor, and now he has just started his own company that sells cellphones – but he hasn't made a million dollars yet!

Edward has moved to the United States, where he now works designing computer games. His most popular game, *Death Rider*, has already sold over ten million copies, and has made him very rich! He isn't married; in fact, he's never had a girlfriend, and he still spends most of his time playing computer games in his room.

Lucy is an actor and a part-time waitress. In the last few years, she's appeared in several plays and a couple of TV commercials – but there has been no call from Hollywood yet!

Since finishing college with a degree in botany, **Kate** has worked for Greenpeace and other similar organizations, first as a volunteer and now as a manager. She's just had her first baby.

In the last ten years, **Hannah** has been married three times, and has lived in Italy, Egypt, France, and Australia. At present, she is running a small restaurant and bar on the Greek island of Kos with her third husband, Nikos.

3 Answer the following questions in pairs.

- Say two things that each person has/hasn't done.
- Whose experiences in the last few years are:
 - the most surprising?
 - the most interesting?

Grammar analysis

- Look at Exercises 1 and 2 on pages 58–59.
 - Which information is about:
 - a past time that is finished?
 - a period of time that continues from the past to the present?
 - Which uses: the Past Simple/the Present Perfect?

Underline all the verbs in these tenses.

Time phrases

- Past Simple

in 1990 five years ago
when she was eighteen years old
yesterday last year

If we give a definite past time like this, we cannot use the Present Perfect.
 - Present Perfect

Often, there is no time phrase here. We do not know exactly when the action happened.
She's lived in Italy, Egypt, and France.

We often use these time words with the Present Perfect. They do not give a definite past time. Notice the word order.
*She's **just** had her first baby.*
*It's **already** sold over ten million copies.*
*He **hasn't** made a million dollars **yet**.*
*He's **never** had a girlfriend.*

► **Language summary C, page 153.**

Practice

- Use the prompts to make sentences in the Present Perfect.

For example:

just/I go/the barber/to

I've just been to the barber.

- not/I/yet/finish/school
- just/lunch/I/have
- I/on vacation/already/go/this year
- an arm or a leg/never/I/break
- I/go/yet this year/not/to/the dentist
- I/do/anything exciting/not/this week

- 7 I/anyone famous/never/meet
- 8 I/on a plane/this year/travel/not
- 9 not/I/play/any sports/this week
- 10 I/never/anything/steal

b) Which of these sentences is true for you? Compare answers.

"I haven't played any sports this week." False ... I've played soccer every day. How about you?

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions. In the last five/ten years:

- a which cities/foreign countries have you visited?
- b how many times have you changed your school/job?
- c how many times have you moved house?
- d which important skills have you learned?
- e which new sports or other interests have you taken up?
- f what other important things have happened to you?

I've visited five different countries.

I haven't moved house!

3 Think of a group of people that you knew five/ten years ago (for example, colleagues/neighbors). Write a paragraph about what has happened to them, like Robbie's on page 60.

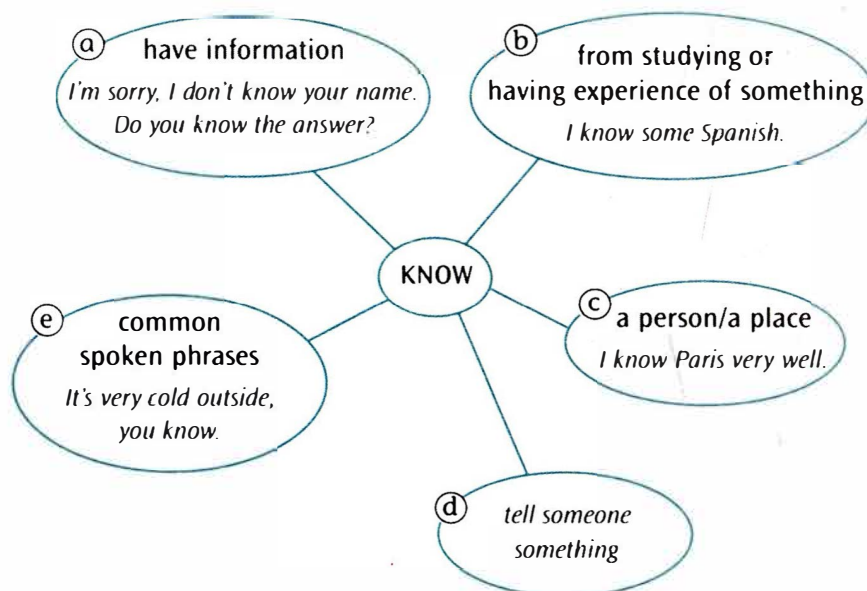
Wordspot

know

1 Match a phrase/question in A with an ending/response in B.

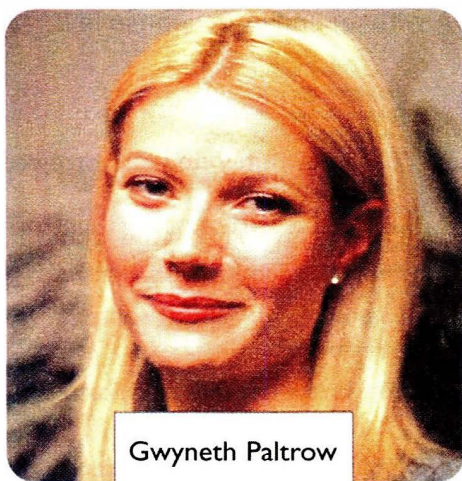
- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a Yes, I know Ally. b Are you coming next weekend? c Did you get that book for me? d Jon, why weren't you at the meeting? e Do you know how to set up this VCR? f What can we get Mom for her birthday? g I think you should ask Daniel. h You don't need a map. i Do you know Sylvia's new phone number? | <p>B</p> <p>You know, the one you borrowed last week.</p> <p>I'm sorry, I didn't know about it. I went to school with her.</p> <p>I know. What about some perfume?</p> <p>You know the way to Marta's house, don't you?</p> <p>he knows a lot about cars.</p> <p>Yes ... I wrote it down somewhere ...</p> <p>I'm not sure. I'll let you know tomorrow.</p> <p>Yes, first press VCR on the remote control, then ...</p> |
|---|--|

2 The diagram below shows some important uses of *know*. Add the phrases with *know* from Exercise 1 to the correct section of the diagram.

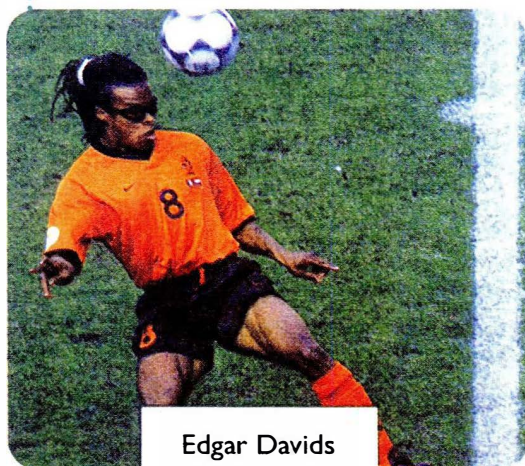


3 Work in pairs, A and B. A looks at the questions on page 140 and B looks at the questions on page 144. Take turns to ask and answer the questions.

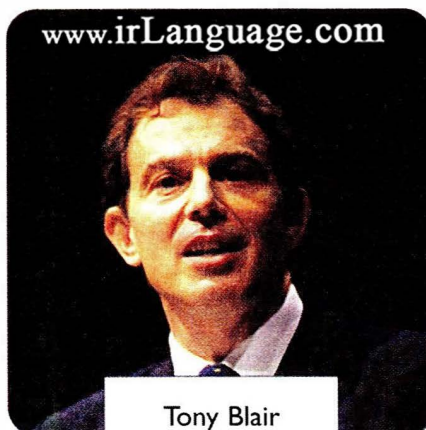
Prepare an interview



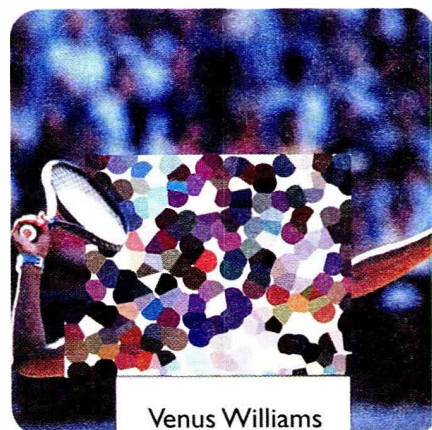
Gwyneth Paltrow



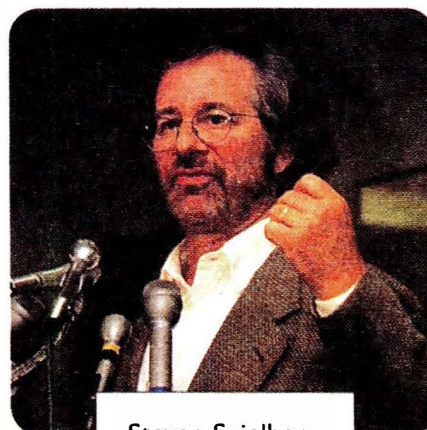
Edgar Davids



Tony Blair



Venus Williams



Steven Spielberg



Madonna

Useful language

"Why are you in (Spain)?"

"Is it true that ...?"

"Can you tell us something about ...?"

"What about ...?"

"How long have you ...?"

"How many (movies) have you ...?"

"When did you ...?"

"Why did you ...?"

Preparation for task

1 Do you know who these people are, and why they are famous?

2 Work in pairs. A journalist is going to interview each of these people. Choose the best questions to ask each one.

- Have you always wanted to be a politician/tennis player, etc.?
- Have you achieved all your ambitions?
- What are you working on at the moment?
- What have been the best/worst moments in your career so far?
- How many movies have you starred in?
- How many records have you sold, altogether?
- Describe a typical working day.
- How do you relax?
- What's the best/worst thing about your job?
- Is it difficult to find enough time for your family and friends when you're so busy?
- Is there any special relationship in your life at the moment?
- How would you like people to remember you?

Task

1 Work in pairs. You are going to prepare a list of questions to interview a famous person. Decide who you want to interview. It could be:

- somebody who is in the news at the moment.
- a famous person from your country.
- a famous person who is visiting from abroad.
- someone you really admire.

2 Prepare a list of ten questions. Use questions from Exercise 2 on page 62, but you must prepare at least four of your own.

► *Useful language*

3 With your partner, practice the interview. (If you don't know some of the answers, invent them!)

4 *Either:* act out your interview for the class. Do not say who the famous person is. The other students have to guess.

Or: record your interview onto an audio or video cassette.

Optional writing

Write up your interview as a magazine article like this:

you: So, what's been the best moment in your career so far?

VENUS: Oh, definitely when I won the US Open in 1999.

Real life

Checking that you understand

1 [7.2] Complete the conversations below with the phrases in the box. Listen and check your answers.

Could you say that again, please?	Sorry, what was that?
What exactly is a "warranty agreement"?	I'm sorry, I don't understand.
What do you mean exactly?	How do you spell it?
Can you explain what "beyin tavası" is?	What does "ordövr" mean?

a

SALESMAN: ... so if you take out a warranty agreement ...

CUSTOMER:

SALESMAN: Yes, if you take out a warranty agreement ...

CUSTOMER:

SALESMAN: It's ... um ... an agreement, where you pay some money and if the machine breaks down, the repairs are free.

CUSTOMER: I see. Thank you.



b

GUEST: *İngilizce biliyor musunuz?*

WAITER:

GUEST: Um ... İngiliz ... oh, so you speak English!

WAITER: Yes, of course.

GUEST: Oh, good. I have a question.?

WAITER: Ordövr. It means "appetizer," sir.

GUEST: OK, I see.?

WAITER: Beyin tavası. They're brains, sir. Lamb's brains. Would you prefer a menu in English?



c

GEORGE: So, where is this place?

JULIA: It's on Cowan Street.

GEORGE:

JULIA: Cowan Street.

GEORGE:

JULIA: C-O-W-A-N.

GEORGE: Cowan Street. Oh right, I see it.

JULIA: And you'd better, er, dress up a little, you know ...

GEORGE:

JULIA: You know, put on a nice shirt and a tie. It's a very smart place! Don't come wearing a T-shirt, like last time!




Pronunciation

- 1 Listen to the conversations in Exercise 1 again. Pay attention to the phrases for checking that you understand. Which words are stressed?

What exactly is a warranty agreement?

- 2 In pairs, practice the conversations. Copy the voices on the recording.

- 2  Work in pairs. Make similar conversations to those in Exercise 1 on page 63. Replace some of the words underlined in each conversation with the ideas in the boxes below. Use your minidictionary to help you with the explanations for these words.

a) pay in installments
have six months' interest free credit

b) beverages bagels arugula parsley

c) Beresford Square Coombe Grove Highbury Road

Do you remember?

- 1 Complete the blanks with the correct form of one of the verbs in the box below.

get become have

- When did you your degree?
- Why did you decide to an actress?
- Do you a lot of tips in this job?
- I'm not speaking to Tom. We a fight last night.
- Antonio Banderas famous after he appeared in *The Mambo Kings*.
- I'd like to children one day, but not yet.
- I really good at skiing when I lived in Italy.
- Did you know that Liz that job in New York?

- 2 a) Find seven pairs of rhyming past participles.

spoken rung driven flown
chosen bought broken
thought frozen caught
given sung known taught

- b) Circle the past participle which does not have the same vowel sound.

- won got come
- made taken said
- rung run put
- gone become done
- stolen found known

- 3 Put the word in parentheses into an appropriate place in each of the sentences.

- Have you been to the movies? (this week)
- We've moved to this area. (just)
- I think we've seen this movie. (already)
- I'm sorry, I haven't phoned the bank. (yet)
- That book's wonderful: I've read it. (three times)
- He's been abroad. (never)
- Have you finished in the bathroom? (yet)

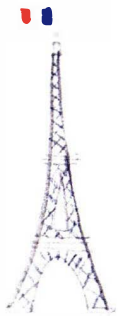
- 4 Circle the correct verb form in the following sentences.

- I lived/I've lived* here until I was eighteen.
- Happy Anniversary! How long *were you/have you been* married?
- She lived/She's lived* in that house all her life and she doesn't want to move.
- I had/I've had* my bike for ten years before *I sold/I've sold* it.
- They moved/They've moved* house three times last year.

module 8

Countries and cultures

- Using articles
 - Vocabulary: geographical features
 - Phrases with and without *the*
- Task: complete a map of New Zealand



Just a myth?

- 1 English businessmen carry umbrellas and wear bowler hats.
- 2 Italian families eat pasta every day.
- 3 Japanese tourists take photos all the time.
- 4 French women are very well dressed.
- 5 It's often foggy in London.
- 6 People in Brazil love dancing.
- 7 Scottish men normally wear kilts.
- 8 New York is a dangerous city.
- 9 People in Japan eat rice for breakfast.
- 10 English people drink tea every day at five o'clock.
- 11 It never rains in Egypt.
- 12 People in Australia have a lot of barbecues.



Language focus 1

Using articles

- 1 Discuss with other students. Which of the ideas in the text are true? Which are just myths?
- 2 [8.1] Listen to some people from these countries giving their opinion. Do they agree or not?
- 3 What do people say about people from your country? Are these things true or not?

Grammar analysis

- 1 Complete the rules.
 - a We normally use/do not normally use *the* when we talk in general about a group of things or people.
 - b We normally use/do not normally use *the* with names of people and places.

Underline all the examples in the text that show this.
- 2 Exceptions!

We use *the* with these place names.

Seas and oceans: the Pacific the Mediterranean the Atlantic

Rivers: the Nile the Danube the Amazon

Ranges of mountains: the Himalayas the Andes the Alps

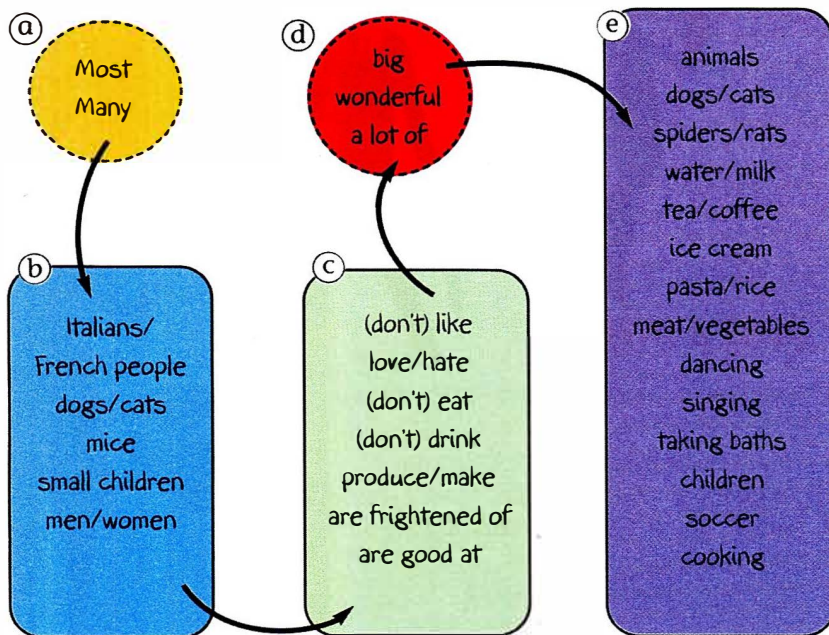
Some countries, etc.: the United Kingdom the United States the European Union the Netherlands

► Language summary A, page 153.

Practice

1 a) Work in pairs. Use the words below to make as many general statements as possible. Use a word from b, c, and e. Add phrases from a and d if you want.

For example: *Most Spanish people don't drink tea.*



b) Read out some of your sentences to other students. Do they agree with you or not?

2 a) Complete the blanks in the statements below with *the* or \emptyset . Decide which of the statements are true and which are false.

- France, Italy, and United Kingdom are all members of European Union.
- River Nile is the longest river in Asia.
- San José and San Diego are cities in California.
- The longest mountain range in the world is Andes in South America, which stretches over 7,000 km.
- Hawaii, Tahiti, and Madagascar are all islands in Pacific Ocean.
- Lake Superior, on the border between Canada and United States, is the largest lake in the world.
- River Rhine, which flows through Switzerland and Germany, is the longest river in Europe.

b) [8.2] Listen to the correct answers. Change the sentences so they are true.

Vocabulary

Geographical features

1 a) Check the meaning of the words in **bold**.

- one of the largest **rivers** in the world
- countries with **lakes** and **forests**
- a country with no **coast**
- a country with a lot of **islands**
- a city famous for its **canals**
- a country with large areas of **desert**
- a country which has a **border** with France
- a capital city which is a **port**
- a city with a famous **cathedral**
- a city with a lot of **historical monuments**
- a country with a hot **climate**
- a country which has **volcanos**
- a country famous for its beautiful **scenery**

b) Work in teams. Find places on the map with these features. Which team can find them first? Check your answers on page 143.

Pronunciation

[8.3] How do you pronounce the sounds underlined?

Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

forest climate volcano
island mountain scenery
beach coast canal
desert



2 Read the following descriptions. Which place on the map is being described in each one?

- This lake is in Europe in the Alps. It's not in Switzerland, but it's very near to the Swiss border, just northeast of Milan in Italy.
- This is an island in the East Mediterranean. It's north of Egypt and south of Athens. It's the largest of the Greek islands.

3 With a partner, write three similar descriptions of places on the map or in your country. Do not say the name. Read out the descriptions. Can your classmates guess where it is?

(b) ... was amazed to meet Joe Stafford, who I haven't seen since we were at school! What a coincidence! He said he was on vacation here too, staying at his villa on the coast, only about 25 kilometers from here. So anyway, we had a good long talk about the old days, and we've arranged to ...

(c) There are several important industries in the south of the country, especially coal mining and shipbuilding. The main coal mining area is around Yelin, an industrial city on the border with Zenda. The main shipbuilding area is ...

Language focus 2

Phrases with and without *the*

1 Read passages a)–c) quickly. Which of them comes from:

- a letter to a friend?
- a guidebook for tourists?

(a) ... makes the city a popular destination for tourists. Edinburgh Castle is in the center of the city. On the left, as you walk down Princes Street, from the station, it stands on the top of a hill called Castle Rock, and dominates the city skyline. Perhaps the best time to see it is at night, when the castle is illuminated by ...

2 a) Look at the phrases underlined in passage a).

with <i>the</i>	in the city center on the left on the top
without <i>the</i>	at night

b) Underline similar phrases in the other passages (b and c) with these words.

Passage b: school vacation coast

Passage c: south border

Grammar analysis

- 1 It is important to learn and remember whether phrases take *the*. However, there are some patterns. Use the phrases in Exercise 2 on page 67 to add *the* or \emptyset to the following phrases.

in ... east on ... right at ... college
in ... northwest on ... wall in ... suburbs
at ... bottom on ... ceiling

- 2 Notice this exception.
at night BUT ***in the morning/afternoon/evening***

► Language summary B, page 153.

Practice

- 1 Write seven sentences about yourself on a piece of paper, using the ideas below.
- My home is *downtown/near the center of the city/in the suburbs*.
 - At 2 p.m. I'm usually *at home/at school/at college/at work/other*.
 - I prefer to study *in the morning/in the afternoon/in the evening/at night*.
 - My favorite place to go on vacation is *on the coast/in the north (south/east/west) of (my country)*.
 - My school/college/office is *in the center/in the east (west/north/south) of (my town)*.
 - I usually sit *on the right/on the left/in the middle of the class*.
 - My name is *at the top/at the bottom* of this piece of paper. (write your name)

- 2 Your teacher will give you another student's piece of paper. Read out the sentences to the class, but do not say who wrote them. The other students guess who wrote them.



Complete a map of New Zealand

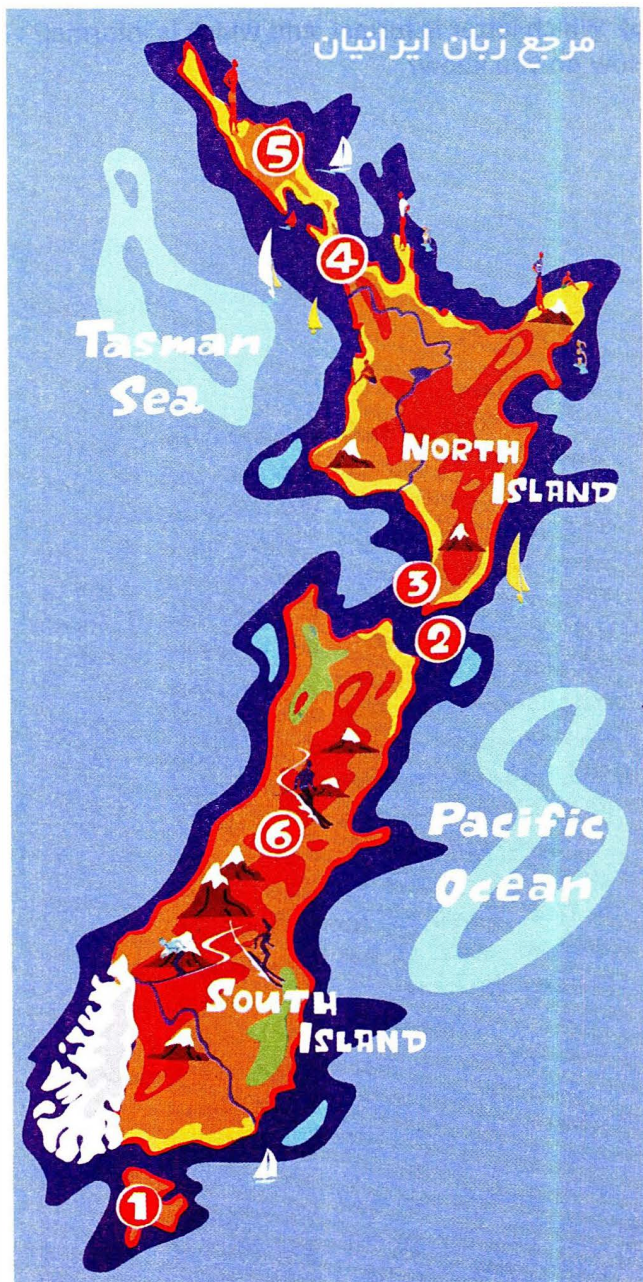
Preparation for task

- 1 Look at the map. Which country does it show? Can you answer the questions?

How much do you know about New Zealand?

- New Zealand is:
 a in the southwest of Australia.
 b in the South Pacific.
 c in the Indian Ocean.
- It is about the same size as:
 a Great Britain. b Spain. c Jamaica.
- The climate in the north of New Zealand is:
 a cold. b warm. c hot.
- The population of New Zealand is:
 a 1 million. b 5 million. c 3.5 million.
- The official language is:
 a Maori. b English.
 c both Maori and English.
- Which of these can you find in New Zealand?
 a mountains b farmland c volcanos
 d fjords e glaciers f beaches
- New Zealand is most famous for:
 a its lamb. b its scenery. c its wool.

- 2 [8.4] Jenny, a tour guide from New Zealand, is telling a group of tourists about the country. Listen and check your answers.



3 a) [8.5] Look at the map and listen to Jenny describing some of the main geographical features. Write the correct numbers next to these features.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Auckland <input type="checkbox"/> | Stewart Island <input type="checkbox"/> |
| The Cook Straits <input type="checkbox"/> | Wellington <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Northland <input type="checkbox"/> | The Southern Alps <input type="checkbox"/> |

b) Listen again. What else do you learn about these places? Make notes, then compare them with a partner.

Task

Choose one of the instruction cards below.

1 Work in pairs, A and B. You are going to find out more about New Zealand. A looks at the map of North Island on page 141. B looks at South Island on page 144.

2 Look at the features marked in red. You are going to explain to your partner exactly where they are. (Look at the phrases in the *Useful language* box.)

3 Take turns to describe the features. Find out what they are/why they are important.

A marks the following places on South Island on this page.

- Lake Wanaka
- Christchurch
- Mount Cook
- Queenstown
- Fox Glacier

B marks the following places on North Island on this page.

- the two most important airports
- the active volcanos
- the Bay of Islands
- Lake Taupo

4 You are the tourists in Jenny's group. Plan a short tour of New Zealand.

1 Work individually. Draw two rough maps of your own country. On the first mark only the capital city. On the second, mark ten important geographical features. For example:

- the second, third, etc., cities
- important rivers, forests, volcanos
- popular places to go on vacation

2 Work with a partner from a different country. Give your partner the blank map. Explain where the ten important features are so that your partner can complete the map.

3 Check your answers on each other's maps.

4 Which of the places that your partner described would you most like to see?

Useful language

"It's in the north of ..., near ..."

"It's on the east coast"

"It's the highest mountain/longest river"

"It's an important (*industrial*) area."

Writing

Formal and informal letters

- 1 a) Look at these two letters. Who is writing to who, in each case? Why?

(a)

BAY PLAZA HOTEL
Bay Plaza Hotel
40-44 Oriental Parade
Wellington
New Zealand

March 22, 2001

Mr. J. Williams
31 Harbor Heights
Sydney
Australia

Dear Mr. Williams,

I am pleased to confirm your reservation for August 15th for two nights, in a single room with private bathroom, at the rate of \$95 per night.

I will reserve a parking space for you as requested. The hotel is approximately 20 minutes' drive from the airport and I enclose a map of the area to help you to find us.

Please do not hesitate to contact me if you have any further questions. I look forward to welcoming you to the Bay Plaza Hotel and hope that you will have a pleasant stay with us.

Yours sincerely,

B. Chapman

Reservations Dept.

- b) Which letter is formal, and which is informal?
How do you know?

(b)

July 10th

Auckland

Dear Sam,

It was great to hear from you and I'm so pleased that you're finally coming to see New Zealand. It's fine for you to stay here for the first week of September - but please stay as long as you like! Yes, I think it's a very good idea to rent a car at the airport, then you can see much more of the country. It's about 20 minutes' drive to the house and I'll make sure there's somewhere for you to park - don't worry.

I'm sending you some photos of Lake Taupo, and some of the beaches on the coast of Northland, to give you an idea of how fantastic the scenery is here... what do you think? The weather should be quite warm in September, so you'll be able to do lots of swimming and sunbathing. I'm sure you'll have a great time here!

Anyway, do get in touch if you have any questions, but if not I'll see you on the 2nd. I can't wait to see you again.

Love
Andi



www.irLanguage.com

2 a) Look at the addresses and dates on the two letters. How are they different?

b) Which letter has contractions (*I'm*)?

c) Match the beginnings in A with the endings in B.

A

- 1 Dear Sir
- 2 Dear Mrs. Kemble
- 3 Dear Kate
- 4 My darling Joanna

B

Love
Yours faithfully
With all my love
Yours sincerely

3 Look at the phrases underlined in the informal letter. Find phrases in the formal letter which have a similar meaning.

4 Write a letter to a friend to say he/she can stay with you. First, think about these questions.

- When is he/she coming?
- How long is he/she staying?
- How is he/she getting to your house (or do you need to go and meet him/her)?
- What is he/she planning to do in your city/country?
- Are you sending anything (photos/map) in the letter?

Do you remember?


1 Make general statements using the endings below.

- a) Children are/Rome is noisy.
- b) ... dangerous.
- c) ... expensive.
- d) ... horrible.
- e) ... good for you.
- f) ... bad for you.

2 Find the ones that don't belong in each group below. Can you explain why?

- a) the Alps, the Andes, the Atlantic, the Himalayas
- b) the Pacific, the Mediterranean, the Nile, the North Sea
- c) the Danube, the Rhine, the Suez, the Amazon
- d) the Sun, the Moon, the sky, the Earth

3 Find the answers to the following questions in the box below.

- a) When is the best time to see the Moon?
- b) In Great Britain, which side of the road do people drive on?
- c) Where do you study for a degree?
- d) Where is the number 71 on this page?
- e) Where in the US is New Orleans?
- f) Where in a room do you find the light switch?
- g) Where in Spain is Barcelona?
- h) Where is the dot in this circle? 

on the left on the bottom on the northeast coast
in the middle at college in the south at night on the wall

4 Explain the difference between these pairs of words.

- a) a lake/a sea
- b) a forest/a tree
- c) a river/a canal
- d) a beach/a desert
- e) the weather/the climate
- f) a volcano/a mountain


module 9

Old and new

- **Vocabulary:** modern and traditional
 - *May, might, will, definitely, etc.*
 - **Wordspot:** *change*
 - **Present tense after *if, when, before*, and other time words**
- Task:** decide on five improvements to your school or office

Vocabulary and speaking

Modern and traditional

1  Match the modern items in A below with the more traditional items in B.

- | | | | |
|-----|-------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| (A) | a fast-food restaurant | email | a personal computer |
| | a rock concert | a shopping mall | a CD player |
| | an electronic organizer | a CD-ROM | a computer game |
| | a microwave | a hypermarket | a theme park |

- | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| (B) | a market | a corner store | a datebook and an address book |
| | a stove | a board game | letters and telegrams |
| | a fair | a typewriter | a traditional restaurant |
| | an encyclopedia | a circus | a cassette player |

2 Which box do these belong to, A or B?

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| a cellphone | the Internet | a library |
| air conditioning | a photocopier | a fax machine |
| a superhighway | a bicycle | a skyscraper |

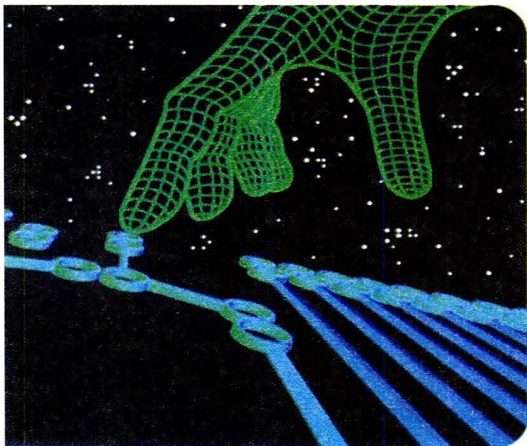
3 Discuss these questions.

- a Choose three pairs of items above and decide what the advantages and disadvantages of the old and new items are.

Fast-food restaurants are cheaper, but they can be very noisy.

Traditional restaurants are comfortable and you usually have a lot of choice, but sometimes you have to wait!

- b Do you ever have any problems with any of these things (new or old)? Explain why.



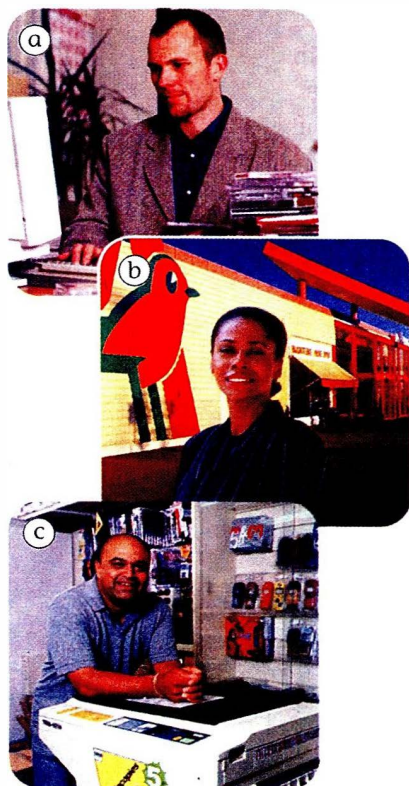
Reading and vocabulary

1 **MD** Discuss in groups.
Where do you/your family usually buy the things in the box below?

- a hypermarket
- an outdoor market
- a shopping mall
- small local stores

paper and pens	furniture
food	clothes
CDs	
electrical goods	books

2 **MD** a) Read about three people who sell these goods. Match the pictures with the paragraphs.



b) Answer these questions.

- What are the differences between their "stores"?
- What are the advantages of each type of shopping?

THE CHANGING FACE OF SHOPPING

1 For the past eighteen years, Dilip Sardesai and his wife Andrija have run a small stationery store in the university city of Newcastle, in the northeast of England. As well as selling paper, pens, and computer and office equipment, they also offer photocopying and faxing. They work long hours to keep the store going, and both of their children help them after school. Dilip sees the personal contact he has with his customers as the most important part of his job. "Many of our customers are from the university," says Dilip. "We've seen generations of students come and go – we like to offer them the kind of personal service they can't get in a larger store. We're never too busy to stop and chat about exams ... or whatever they want to talk about ..."

2 Nicole Parnot is the manager of a Forum hypermarket, situated 20 kilometers from Arras, a town in the northeast of France. Forum has 600 stores in five different countries and plans to expand into Eastern Europe. The huge hypermarket employs over 300 people, and has parking spaces for over 3,000 cars. "People nowadays have busy lives," says Nicole, "so we try to attract families by offering them a complete shopping experience, including a full restaurant service and free entertainment for the children. We try to make it possible for shoppers to do all their weekly shopping in one place. People come here not only for food and household goods, but also clothes, electrical goods, books, CDs ... in fact, we sell everything from peanuts to personal computers!"

3 Five years ago, Dave Stirling had the idea of selling CDs over the Internet. The business he started from his home in Ohio, in the US, now sells 500,000 CDs a year and has made him into a millionaire at the age of twenty-four. "I could see right away that this was the future of shopping," says Stirling. "Why should you pay \$15 for a CD – and spend the time and money getting to the store and parking your car – when, by clicking on your computer, you can have the same CD brought to your door for half the cost? And of course, there's the choice – we promise to find any CD and deliver it within seventy-two hours!" According to Stirling, this is only the beginning. "I believe that one day we will do all our shopping over the Net: It's easier, quicker, and cheaper. Stores and supermarkets will soon be a thing of the past."

3 Discuss with other students.

- How do you prefer to shop?
- Which method of shopping don't you like?

Language focus 1

May, might, will, definitely, etc.

1 What changes do you expect to see in the future? Discuss these three questions in groups.

- a Will supermarkets replace small local stores?
- b Will people do all their shopping over the Internet?
- c Will the Internet replace libraries and newspapers?

2 a) [9.1] You will hear Lucy, Mary, and Stefan talking about the questions above. Which question is each person answering?

b) Listen to the three people again and complete the blanks.

Grammar analysis

1 Put the sentences below in order from 1 (= most probable) to 5 (= least probable).

People'll **probably** use the Internet to do all their shopping. ☐

People **probably won't** use the Internet to do all their shopping. ☐

People **definitely won't** use the Internet to do all their shopping. ☐

People **may/might** use the Internet to do all their shopping. ☐

People **will definitely** use the Internet to do all their shopping. ☐

2 a What do you notice about the position of **probably** and **definitely**:

- in positive sentences?
- in negative sentences?

b What are the negative forms of *may* and *might*?

► Language summary A, page 153.

Lucy

“No, people (1) definitely won't do all their shopping over the Net. A lot of things you want to see and touch before you buy them, like fresh food, you know, or clothes. They'll (2)..... more things like electrical goods, and books, because they'll be cheaper – but some people are worried about security, about giving a credit card number on the Net – I mean, I think that (3)..... some people.”



Mary

“I don't know, I think it'll (4)..... more and more difficult for small stores to survive, because of the prices, really. And you can get everything in one place in a supermarket, of course. But then people will always need local stores, I mean, if you just want some milk or something, you don't want to drive a long way. So they (5)..... completely.”



Stefan

“Well, you can already read newspapers on the Net, but it's a bit difficult if you want to read one on the train! So it (6)..... them completely, and of course it's not very relaxing to sit and read something at your computer, is it? I mean, if you want to read a novel for example, or something like that, that you find in libraries – but not a reference book. I think people (7)..... the Net for that kind of information. You know, children doing a project for school or something.”



Practice

1 a) Use the prompts below to make sentences. Give a reason for your answer.

- 1 cellphones/replace/ordinary phones
cellphones probably won't replace ordinary phones because most people will have both.
- 2 faxes and emails/replace/letters
- 3 microwaves/replace/stoves
- 4 credit cards/replace/cash
- 5 computer games/replace/board games
- 6 planes/replace/trains
- 7 CD-ROMs/replace/encyclopedias
- 8 computers/replace/teachers

b) Compare answers with a partner.

2 Complete these sentences about yourself. Compare your answers with other students.

- a I ~~might~~ live to be a hundred years old.
- b I have more than two children.
- c I have gray hair when I'm older.
- d I live here all my life.
- e I learn to speak English as well as my teacher.
- f I visit the United States.
- g I go to live in another country.
- h I become a millionaire.

Pronunciation

- 1** [9.2] Listen to these three phrases. Does *won't* rhyme with *want* or *don't*?
You won't believe me.
You want to believe me.
You don't believe me.

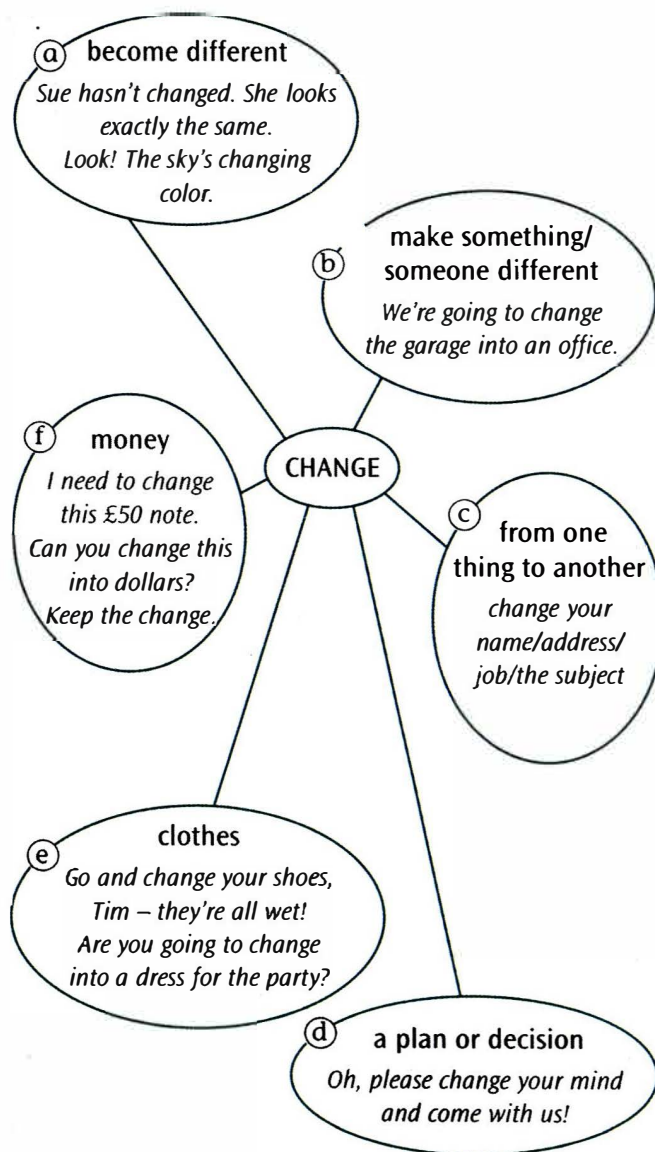
- 2** [9.3] Listen to some predictions and repeat.
- a I probably won't live to be a hundred.
 - b I definitely won't become a millionaire.
 - c I probably won't live here all my life.
 - d I'll definitely have gray hair when I'm older.
 - e I'll probably have more than two children.

Wordspot

Change

1 The diagram shows the most common uses of *change*. Read the examples. Then put the sentences below into the correct section.

- a Have you changed your hairstyle?
- b Change places/trains.
- c You know Harry – he'll never change.
- d Do you have any change for the coffee machine?
- e I'll just go upstairs and change.
- f I've changed my mind about Dean – he's quite nice really.



2 a) Think of three:

- things that can change color.
- ways you can change your appearance.
- reasons why you might need some change.

b) What happens when:

- you move house?
- you are in a foreign country and only have money from your own country?
- you buy a \$12 train ticket with a \$50 bill?
- a princess kisses a frog?

(Use *change* in your answers.)

3 Talk to other students and find someone who:

- has changed his/her phone number recently.
- has a lot of change in his/her pocket.
- would like to change his/her name.
- has changed his/her school/job more than twice.
- changes into more comfortable clothes when he/she gets home in the evening.
- changes his/her mind a lot before making a decision.
- changes trains/buses on his/her way to school/work.
- thinks he/she has changed in the last few years.

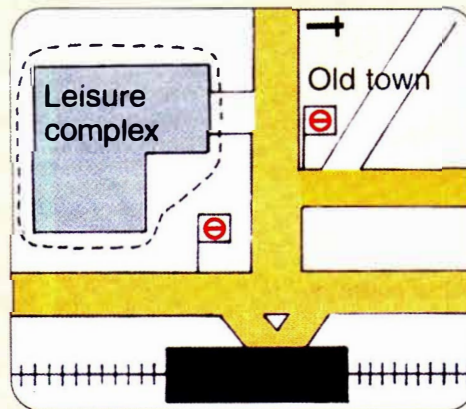
Language focus 2

Present tense after *if*, *when*, *before*, and other time words

1 Read about the new leisure complex and look at the two possible sites. Briefly, what are the good and bad points of each site?



The town council is going to build a new leisure complex. It will have a multiplex movie theater, fast-food restaurants and a video arcade. There are two possible sites, one downtown on the site of an old movie theater, and one out of town, in a large park near a residential area.

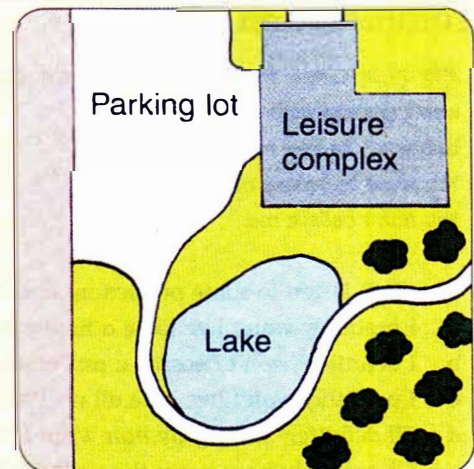


Site A

The site is close to stores and public transportation, but there is no space for a parking lot and there is a lot of traffic already. There are a lot of coffee shops and restaurants in the old town nearby.

Site B

The site is in a park, an area of natural beauty. There is no public transportation, but there is room for a large parking lot. The roads in the residential area around the park are quite small. There are no coffee shops, restaurants, or other kinds of entertainment in the area.



2 Discuss in pairs. Are the statements below:

- true of Site A/Site B?
 - equally true of both/true of neither?
- a When the complex opens, a lot of people will come from out of town to use it.
 - b If they build the complex on this site, they'll probably need to cut down a lot of trees.
 - c If they build the complex on this site, there may be serious traffic problems.
 - d As soon as the complex opens, local people will start complaining about it.
 - e If they build the complex on this site, people without cars won't be able to get there.
 - f More people will use the complex if it is built on this site.
 - g Before they start building, they should ask local people what they think.

Grammar analysis

- 1 Are the sentences above about:
 - a the present? b the future?
- 2 a Which verb form comes after *if*, *when*, *before*, and *as soon as*?
 - b Which verb forms can you find in the other part (the main clause) of the sentences?

► Language summary B, page 154.

Practice

1 a) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Many coffee shops and restaurants downtown will lose (lose) business if the complex opens (open) near them.
- 2 If the complex (be) in the park, the local residents (complain) about the noise and garbage.
- 3 When the complex (open), it (create) a lot of jobs for local people.

- 4 If people (not have) a car, they (need) a special bus service to get to the park site.
- 5 There may (be) serious traffic problems if they (not build) bigger roads near the site.
- 6 The area by the lake (lose) its character if they (put) the complex there.
- 7 The developers should (find out) more about traffic and transportation problems before they (make) a decision.
- 8 If they (build) the complex downtown, many people (not able/park).

b) Write three more sentences of your own about the leisure complex. Which site do you think is best? Why?

2 Work in pairs. Complete the conversations below with your own ideas. Practice reading your conversations aloud.

- a A: Oliver, could you do your homework now?
B: Oh, Mom, I'll do it when ...
- b A: Are you going anywhere nice this weekend?
B: We might go for a picnic in the country if ...
- c A: We don't have any milk!
B: Oh no! I'll go and buy some when/as soon as ...
- d A: Are you enjoying your new job more now?
B: No, I hate it! I want to leave as soon as ...
- e A: So, when are we going to see each other again?
B: I don't know, I'm very busy at work at the moment, and I'm going away soon, but I'll phone you if/when ...
- f A: Are you going to have a vacation this year?
B: I hope so, if ...



3 [9.4] Listen and compare your answers with those on the recording.

Decide on five improvements to your school or office

Personal vocabulary

Useful language

a To make suggestions and discuss possibilities

"How about ...?"

"I think we should ..."

"I'd like to ..."

"If we ..., it will (probably/definitely) be much better for ..."

"I'd prefer to ..."

b Useful verbs

"put a ... near the/in the ..."

"build a new ..."

"make the ... into a ..."

"make ... bigger"

"have a ... instead of ..."

"redecorate the ..."


"change the ... into a ..."

"improve the ..."

Preparation for task

1 Discuss the following questions in pairs or small groups.

- What competitions do you find in magazines or newspapers? What prizes can you win?
- Do you know anyone who has won a competition like this?

2  Look at the competition entry form and pictures on the opposite page. What kind of competition is it? Read the form and answer the questions.

- What is the prize? What do you have to spend it on?
- What examples do they give of how you could spend the money?
- Which things do you have to explain?
- Do you have to give the cost of the improvements yourself?

Task

1 You are going to enter the competition. Spend five minutes thinking how you will spend the money. Ask your teacher about any words or phrases you need.


► **Personal vocabulary**

2 Work in pairs or small groups. Explain and compare ideas with your partner.

► **Useful language**

3 a) As a class, write a list of your ideas on the board. Each group explains their ideas.

b) Vote for the five best ideas from the class list. Each student can vote a maximum of three times.

4  [9.5] Listen to four people talking about how they would improve their school or office. Complete the table below.

	School or office?	Improvements?	Why?
a			
b			
c			
d			

Optional writing

Write your entry for the competition, explaining what changes you plan to make to your school/workplace, and why.



EXCITING NEW COMPETITION!

Give your workplace a spring facelift!

Living magazine is offering three prizes of between £10,000 and £50,000 to be spent on improving the school, college, or office where you spend so many hours each day! If you win, the money will be yours to spend as you wish, whether you need basic equipment, or one or two little luxuries to make life more pleasant.

Just think! You could spend it on any of the following:

- improving the appearance of the place (re-decoration, new furniture, pictures, or rugs).
- better study facilities (a computer room, language laboratory, or a small library).
- improving the outside area (making a garden or parking lot for example).
- better sports facilities (a small gym or tennis court).
- making the environment more comfortable for people who work there (sofas, plants, elevators).

To enter, all you have to do is to write below:

- five ways you intend to spend the money if you win.
- what you want to include (for example, what exactly will you have in your new computer room?).
- where you want to put the new features and why.
- why these changes will make your workplace a better place to be!

(Remember, if you win, **Living** magazine will decide the cost of the improvements, and exactly what your money will buy, so you do not need to include this in your entry.)

I would like to enter school/college/company for the **Living** magazine Spring Facelift competition. If I win, I plan to make the following improvements:

Real life

Shopping in a department store

1 You are in a department store. Where can you hear the sentences below?

- cashier
- clothes department
- anywhere in the store

a Can I help you?

.....

b Excuse me, do you sell plants?

.....

c Can I pay by credit card?

.....

d Excuse me, do you have this T-shirt in white?

.....

e Where are the changing rooms, please?

.....

f Can I bring it back if it's the wrong color?

.....

g Do you have these pants in a size 40?

.....

h Here's your receipt and your change.

.....

i Is there a bathroom in here?

.....

2 [9.6] Listen and write in the replies. Practice the conversations, in pairs.

3 [9.7] Listen to some more situations. When there is a pause, decide what to say. Compare your answer with the one on the recording.

Do you remember?

1 Look at these children's predictions. Find and correct two grammatical mistakes.

- a) We'll probably be able to talk to the television.
- b) We'll have cars with wings, which fly.
- c) I'll be a princess and I'll be live in a castle.
- d) *We might won't have telephones.*
- e) *There'll definitely be cities on the moon.*

2 Put the sentences below in order. Make them true for you.

- a) TV/get/I/watch/home/when/might/I
- b) some/shopping/I/tomorrow/go/if/I'll/CDs/buy
- c) this/I'll/if/time/English/I/study/have/weekend
- d) can/when/I'm/work/I/well/speak/English/going to/in the US
- e) my/I/hair/I'll/as soon as/wash/get up

3 Match a word from A with a word/phrase from B to make phrases from Module 9.

A	B
a) pay	some letters
b) expand	about the weather
c) keep	by check
d) deliver	your receipt
e) chat	your business

4 Which words are missing from the sentences below?

- a) Do you have this jacket ~~purple~~ brown?
- b) Do you have any change ~~purple~~ the parking meter?
- c) Can I bring it ~~purple~~ if she doesn't like it?
- d) I need to change ~~purple~~ some dry clothes.
- e) The coffee shop? - It's ~~purple~~ the fourth floor.
- f) Can we have a sofa here instead ~~purple~~ these chairs?

module 10

Take care!

► **Used to**

► **Vocabulary:** health problems, accidents

► **Past Continuous**


Task: describe a rescue and decide who is Hero of the Year


Reading, listening, and vocabulary

1 a) Make a list of common health problems.

For example: a bad cold

b) Read the quiz quickly. Which problems from your list are mentioned? Which others are mentioned?

2  Take the quiz in pairs. Which answers do you think are correct? (More than one answer is possible.)

3  [10.1] Listen to Dr. Sandra Cabot and check your answers. Did any of her answers surprise you?

4 How many more word combinations can you find using these verbs from the quiz?

I have a headache

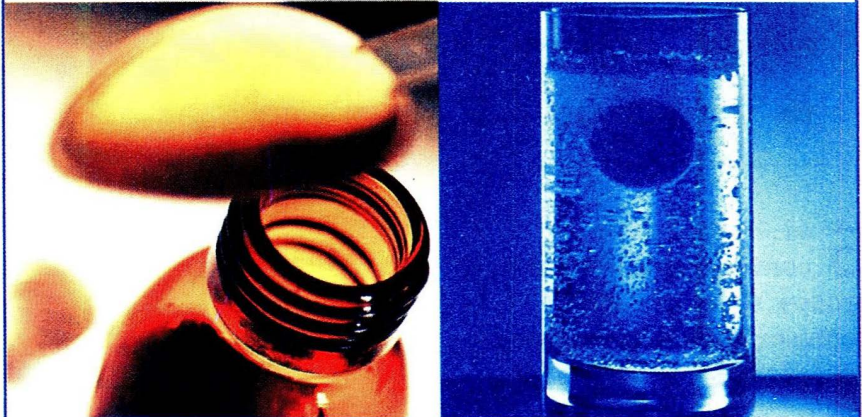
to take a bad cold

to put medicine

to put some cream on it

Health problems

How much do you know?



1 If you burn yourself on a hot pan:

- a You should put butter or oil on the burn.
- b You should put a Band-Aid on it.
- c You should put lots of cold water on it.

2 If you have a temperature:

- a You should stay in bed and keep warm.
- b You should take aspirin or paracetamol.
- c You should rest and keep cool.

3 If you have a bad cold:

- a You should go to the doctor and get some medicine.
- b You should take aspirin.
- c You should go to bed and have a hot beverage.

4 If you want to lose weight in a healthy way:

- a You should stop eating potatoes, bread, and pasta.
- b You should have regular exercise.
- c You should eat less fat and sugar, and more fruit and vegetables.

5 If you are taking antibiotics:

- a You should take them at exactly the same time every day.
- b You should finish the prescription.
- c You should never drink alcohol.

6 If you have a bad backache:

- a You should go to bed and rest until it gets better.
- b You should go for short walks and keep moving.
- c You shouldn't lift anything heavy.

Pronunciation

- 1 Mark the stress on the following words:

● ● ●
 medicine Band-Aid aspirin
 antibiotics exercise
 headache healthy
 prescription temperature

- 2  [10.2] Listen and check.

5 a) Prepare short conversations in small groups. A has a health problem, B and C give advice. Some is good, some is bad!

For example:

- A: I have a terrible backache!
 B: Well, you should go to bed and rest.
 A: Really?
 C: Mmm... I'm not so sure. I think you should keep moving – go for short walks and things like that.
 A: Oh, right.

b) Act out some of your conversations for other students.

Language focus 1

Used to

1 Two or three hundred years ago, most people didn't live as long as we do today. Think of three reasons why.

2 Match the pictures a)–d) with the paragraphs 1–4 opposite.

Did you know ... ?



- Two or three centuries ago people had much shorter lives – the average age was forty-five. But this was mainly because a lot of babies used to die. If people survived to be adults, they could often live to be seventy or even eighty, like today.
- Having children was much more dangerous than it is today. Families often used to have ten or twelve children, but many babies died, and unfortunately many women died in childbirth.
- In those days, they didn't know how to cure all the diseases that we can cure now. Many people didn't use to have enough to eat, or did not have enough money to pay for doctors. Even if you had a doctor, some of their methods were very strange. They used to believe that cutting open their patients and "bleeding" cured almost any problem – unfortunately, it often killed them instead!
- And people knew less about hygiene in the past. Even rich people didn't use to wash very often, and most poor people didn't have bathrooms or clean water. It was difficult to keep food fresh too, so they used to cook with a lot of strong spices to cover the taste of the bad meat.

Grammar analysis

- 1 Underline all the examples of *used to* above. Cross out (X) the **wrong** explanation below.

We use *used to* for:

- things that happened more than once in the past.
- feelings, thoughts, ideas, etc., in the past (past states).
- things that happened only once in the past.

- 2 What are the negative and question forms?

► **Language summary A, page 154.**

Practice

1 Write sentences with **used to/didn't use to** using ideas from A and B below.

For example:

A long time ago people used to think the Earth was flat.

A long time/200 years ago ...


A

People/not/have
People/think
People/send
Poor children
People/believe

B

messages by pigeons.
the Earth was flat.
electricity in their houses.
not/wear/shoes.
not/go/to school.
in witches.

Pronunciation

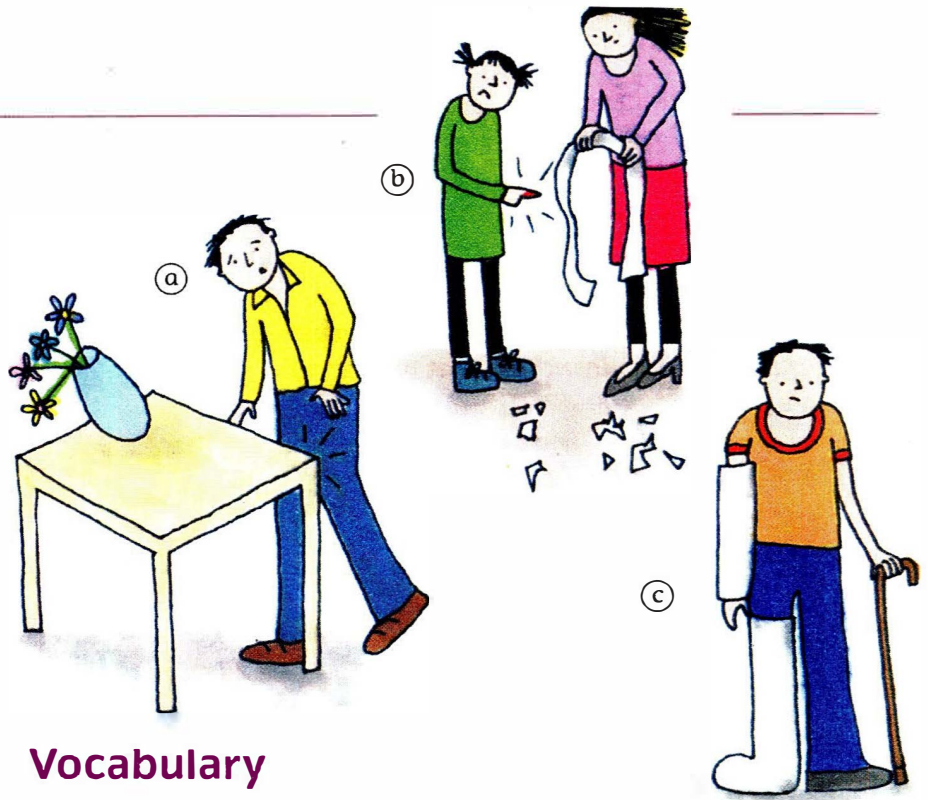
 [10.3] Listen and practice saying the phrases.

think > used to think > people used to think ...
have > didn't use to have > people didn't use to have cars

2 Complete these sentences about yourself.


When I was a small child ...

- I used to think that ...
- I used to be frightened of ...
- I used to/didn't use to love ...
- My favorite toy used to be ...
- I used to spend hours ... (read)-ing.
- I never used to ...



Vocabulary

Accidents

1  Which of the words in **bold** below can you find in the pictures? Check any unknown words if necessary.

A

- If you **bump into** the corner of a table,
- If you **fall over** in the street,
- If you **slip** on some ice,
- If you **cut yourself** with a sharp knife,
- If you **drop** a glass on the floor,
- If you **touch** a hot pan,

B

- you'll probably get a **bruise**.
- you might **cut yourself**.
- you might **hurt yourself badly**.
- you will probably **burn yourself**.
- you might **break an arm or a leg**.
- you will probably **bleed**.
- you will only probably **hurt yourself slightly**.

2 Work in pairs. Look at the accidents in A and match them with the consequences in B. (There are many possibilities.)

If you slip on some ice, you'll probably get a bruise ...

3 Why should you be careful in the following situations?

- if you're using the iron
- if your floor is wet
- if you're carrying sharp scissors
- if a small child is in the kitchen while you're cooking
- if there are clothes or toys all over the floor

Language focus 2

Past Continuous

- 1 Look at the pictures of minor car accidents. Explain in your own words what happened in each accident.



- 2 If you have a car accident, you may need to fill out an insurance claim. Read what the four drivers above wrote on their claim forms. Match the extracts to the appropriate pictures.

① I was driving slowly down Main Street. At the traffic light, I knocked over a man who was crossing the road. He admitted it was his fault, because the same thing has happened to him before.

② As I was coming home from work, I accidentally turned into the wrong house and crashed into a tree that I do not have.

③ While I was waiting in a traffic jam, I unfortunately bumped into a bike rider, who passed my car on the other side from where I was looking ...

④ I was driving carefully down a country lane when a cow walked into the side of my car. I learned afterwards that the cow was half-witted*...

* very stupid



Grammar analysis

Past Simple and Past Continuous

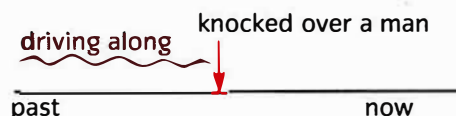
- 1 Look at the Past Simple and Past Continuous verbs in the sentence below.

I was driving slowly down Main Street. At the traffic light, I knocked over a man who was crossing the road.

Which verb describes the main event in this story?

Which describes the situation at the time?

Which action(s) started first?



- 2 Underline the other examples of the Past Simple and Past Continuous in the insurance claims.
- 3 What are the negative and question forms?

Time words

We can join the Past Simple and Past Continuous parts of a sentence with a time word.

While I was waiting in a traffic jam, I bumped into a bike rider.

Find another time word like this in the insurance claims.

► Language summary B, page 154.

Practice

1 You witnessed accident c on page 84. On page 142 you will see a picture of the scene just before the accident. Find the motorist (Mr. Smith) and the bike rider.

a) You have exactly one minute to study the picture. Memorize as many details as possible.

b) Work in pairs, A and B. Test each other's memories using the questions below.

For example: What car/the motorist/drove?
What car was the motorist driving?

Questions for A

- Why/Mr. Smith/look the other way from the bike rider?
- What/the motorist in the red car/try to do?
- Mr. Smith and the other motorist/talk/politely?
- Who/sit in the back seat of Mr. Smith's car?
- they/sit/still? What/they/do?
- Who/cross the road? What/she/carry?

Questions for B

- What/the bike rider/wear?
- the bike rider/concentrate/on the road/when the accident/happen?
- What/his friend/do?
- How many people/stand/at the bus stop?
- What/they/do?
- How many men/repair/road? What/they do?

c) Whose fault do you think the accident was?

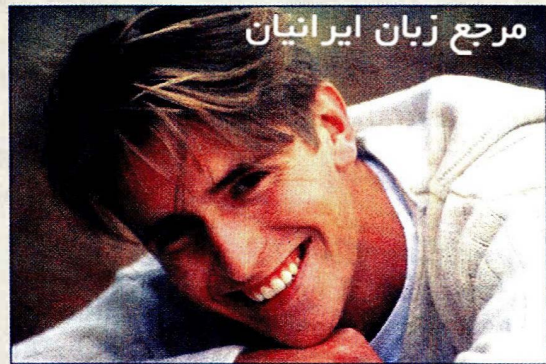
Pronunciation

1 [10.4] Listen to these sentences and notice the pronunciation of *be*. Practice the sentences.

- An old lady *was* /wəz/ crossing the road.
- The bike rider *wasn't* /wəzənt/ concentrating.
- The children *weren't* /wɜ:nt/ sitting still.
- They *were* /wɜ:/ fighting.

2 [10.5] Listen and write down the six sentences you hear. Practice the sentences.

2 Complete the story with the correct verb form, Past Simple or Past Continuous.



One cold December evening, an Austrian electrician called Karl Emminger (1)..... (go) to a party at a friend's house. Soon after midnight, Karl and his wife (2)..... (leave) the party. It (3)..... (snow), so they (4)..... (walk) quickly to the bus stop to catch the last bus home. Ten minutes later, they (5)..... (stand) at the bus stop when a bus, driven by Oskar Schillab, (6)..... (drive) past them without stopping. Furious, Karl (7)..... (stop) a taxi and (8)..... (tell) the driver to "Follow that bus!" A few moments later, they (9)..... (see) the bus, which (10)..... (wait) at a red traffic light. Karl (11)..... (jump) out of the taxi, onto the bus, and (12)..... (hit) Oskar on the nose. Shocked, Oskar (13)..... (take) his foot off the brake. The bus, which (14)..... (stand) on a hill, (15)..... (move) forward and (16)..... (crash) into a store window, causing thousands of pounds of damage!

3 a) Complete the following sentences about yourself using the Past Continuous. Compare answers with a partner.

- I once had an accident when I ...
- When I left the house this morning, the sun ...
- I met ... when I ...
- At eight o'clock last night, I think I ...
- At seven o'clock this morning I ...
- When I arrived at this lesson, ... (name) was ...
- When the teacher arrived at this lesson, I ...

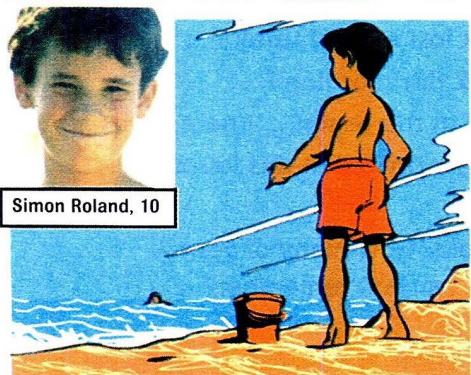
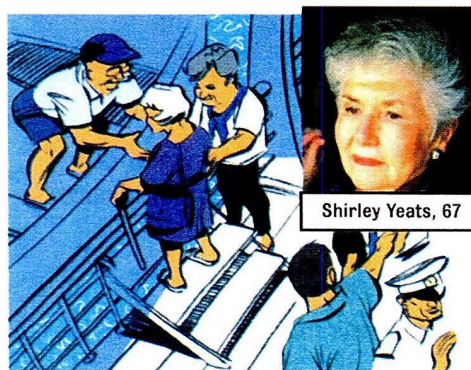
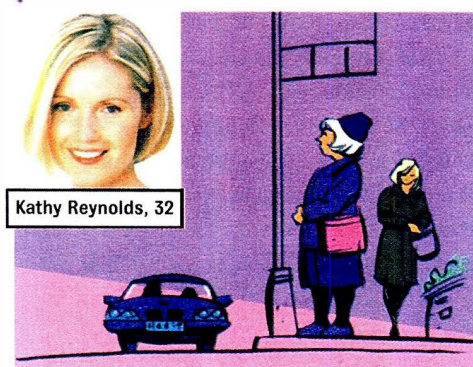
b) Close your books. How many of your partner's answers can you remember?

Describe a rescue and decide who is Hero of the Year

Preparation for task

1 a) A newspaper has decided to give a £10,000 first prize for the "Hero of the Year." Look at the pictures of the three finalists below. They all rescued someone. What do you think happened?

b) Which questions in the table can you complete?



Heroine with a cigarette lighter!

Kathy Reynolds, 32, was walking home one afternoon when she stopped to light a cigarette. A car stopped in front of her and a man jumped out. To Kathy's horror, the man pulled out a knife and demanded money from an old woman, Eileen Murphy, 73, who was waiting at a bus stop. Kathy – who is only 1.55m tall – took her cigarette lighter and set fire

to the back of the mugger's pants! The man was so shocked he dropped his knife, and with the help of Mrs. Murphy, Kathy knocked the man to the ground, sat on him and tied his arms and legs together with a shoelace! She then called the police using her cellphone – and moments later the police came to arrest the man!

2 a) The pictures on the opposite page show what happened to Kathy Reynolds. Put them in the correct order. Read the newspaper story above to check.

b) Complete the first column of the table below.

	Kathy Reynolds	Shirley Yeats	Simon Roland
1 age of finalist	32		
2 Where did the rescue happen?			
3 Who did he/she rescue?			
4 Why did these people need help?			
5 Why was the "hero" there and what was he/she doing?			
6 What did he/she do to help?			
7 Are there any other reasons why he/she was very brave?			

Task

1 a) Work in two groups, A and B. Find out what happened to one of the other finalists.

- Group A looks at page 141 (Shirley Yeats).
- Group B looks at page 145 (Simon Roland).

b) Work with someone from **your own** group. Complete the information about your story in the table above.

2 Now work with a student from the other group. Ask/Answer the questions from the table to complete the final column.



3 In small groups, discuss who should win the prizes in the competition, and why.
► Useful language

1st prize (£10,000)

2nd prize (£5,000)

3rd prize (£2,000)

Useful language

"... should get first prize because he/she ..."

"I think ... was the bravest because ..."

"He/She was very calm/quick-thinking."

"She/He saved ... 's life."

"He/She was in danger ..."

Writing

Using adverbs in narrative

1 To make a story more interesting, we often use adverbs like those in the box below.

suddenly immediately fortunately
unfortunately eventually certainly

MD Look in your minidictionary and find an example of how each adverb is used.

2 Look at the rough draft of the story of Shirley Yeats. It is correct, but it would be more interesting with more adverbs. Add a suitable adverb from the box above where you see **A**.

Shirley Yeats is **A** a very brave woman! At the age of sixty-seven, the retired school teacher decided to take the vacation of a lifetime, **and** went on a cruise sailing round the coast of Malaysia. She was having a wonderful vacation relaxing and sunbathing. But one day, she was going into her cabin when she **A** noticed that smoke was coming out of another cabin; **A**, she phoned the captain from her cabin and told him about the fire. Then she went up on deck to see what she could do to help. **A** the fire spread very quickly, and soon it was out of control, so the captain decided to get all the passengers off the ship. Many of them were very frightened, but Shirley stayed calm. She helped the other passengers to get into lifeboats and even gave first aid to other passengers who were hurt. **A** all 1,100 passengers were in the lifeboats, and **A** not one passenger died in the fire. Shirley was one of the last to leave. Later she told journalists: "I was very frightened, but I knew what I had to do - I think all my time as a teacher helped - all those years of telling people what to do!"

3 Find at least six other words that link the story together and **circle** them, as in the example.

4 a) Write a rough draft of a story.

Either: write the story of Simon Roland using the pictures on page 145 and the words next to them to help you. Add extra details to make the story more interesting if you want to.

Or: write a story of your own (true or imaginary) of a rescue or accident. Ask your teacher for any words or phrases you need.

b) Either alone or with a partner, read through your story. Add adverbs and linking words where necessary. Write the final draft for homework.

Do you remember?

1 Cross out (X) the word which is not possible with each verb below. Then add a word which is possible.

- | | | |
|----|--------|---|
| a) | take | aspirin
a headache medicine
exercise |
| b) | I have | a pain in my chest.
a stomachache.
exercise. |
| c) | put | a Band-Aid
cold water
a prescription |
| d) | keep | warm
to bed
moving |

2 In which of the sentences below can we use *used to* instead of the Past Simple?

- Sorry, I forgot to mail that letter.
- My dad told me funny stories every night when I was a child.
- I loved going to the park in the summer.
- You didn't tell me about Kim's accident!
- She didn't eat meat as a teenager.
- I met him at Teri's party.

3 Write answers to the questions below. Ask and answer in pairs.

What were you doing:

- at 3 p.m. yesterday?
I was reading the newspaper.
- between eight and nine last night?
- before you started this exercise?
- ten minutes before this lesson started?
- the last time you hurt yourself?

4 Put a word from the box into the correct place in the sentences below.

over yourself on (x2) into (x2)
herself myself

- He went off the road and crashed a tree.
- Be careful – you'll cut with that knife!
- I've dropped a contact lens the floor and I can't find it.
- Grandma couldn't see in the dark and she bumped the door.
- She hurt while she was playing in the yard, doctor.
- I think I slipped some oil on the kitchen floor.
- He's too old to drive now – I'm worried that he'll knock someone.
- Can you see where I burned on the iron?

5 Circle the best adverb in these sentences.

- It rained and rained for hours. *Eventually/Immediately*, the rain stopped and we went for a walk.
- Don't worry, I've only hurt my leg *badly/slightly*.
- She slipped on the stairs and dropped the beautiful vase. *Certainly/Fortunately*, it didn't break.
- I *accidentally/unfortunately* took your car keys this morning. I'm so sorry.
- We were all having dinner, when *immediately/suddenly* the lights went out and everyone stopped talking.

module 11

The best things in life ...

► Gerunds (-ing forms) verbs of liking and disliking

► Like doing and would like to do (gerunds and infinitives)

► Wordspot: like

Task: make a list of the most important things in life


Reading and vocabulary

1 Work in groups and discuss these questions.

- What are the most popular hobbies and interests in your country? Do you have any special interests yourself?
- Do you know anyone who is crazy about:
 - a sport?
 - shopping?
 - collecting something?

2 a) Which of these things do people collect? What other things do they collect?

coins shoes light bulbs
stamps dolls
plastic toys from breakfast cereals
pairs of pantyhose

b)  Read the article. Which of the things above are mentioned? What other hobbies and collections are mentioned?



When an interest becomes an obsession ...

Whether it's collecting coins, supporting your favorite soccer team, or just shopping, most people have some kind of hobby. But what happens when that interest becomes the most important thing in your life? When a hobby becomes an obsession?

Take Colin Duffy, for example. When he was six, his father took him to see his local soccer team, Liverpool. Since then, Colin, now thirty-six, has seen a total of 1,729 games, and has traveled over 75,000 miles to watch his team. Colin and his wife spent their honeymoon in Leeds (where Liverpool were playing that weekend!) and named their first son Kenny Dalglish Owen Duffy - after his two favorite players.

Colin may be Britain's number one soccer fan, but 22-year-old Beverley Bloom is Britain's biggest shopper. Every week she writes a newspaper column about her addiction. Fortunately, Beverley's credit card bills go to her father ... a millionaire property tycoon. "I don't think I'd like to tell you what Beverley spends," he says, admitting that it is well over £50,000 a year.

But even Beverley cannot beat champion shopper Imelda Marcos, wife of the ex-president of the Philippines. She was so obsessed with buying shoes that when her husband fell from power, more than 3,000 pairs were found in their palace, together

with over 1,000 unopened packs of pantyhose.

Most children are interested in collecting stamps or dolls at some time, but few go as far as twenty-eight-year-old Tony Mattia, who fills his house with thousands of Barbie dolls. He spends hours every day combing their hair, and changes all their costumes once a month. And, it seems that the more unusual the collection, the bigger the obsession. For example, US collector Hugh Hicks has about 60,000 light bulbs and Nick Vermeulen from the Netherlands has over 2,000 air sickness bags.

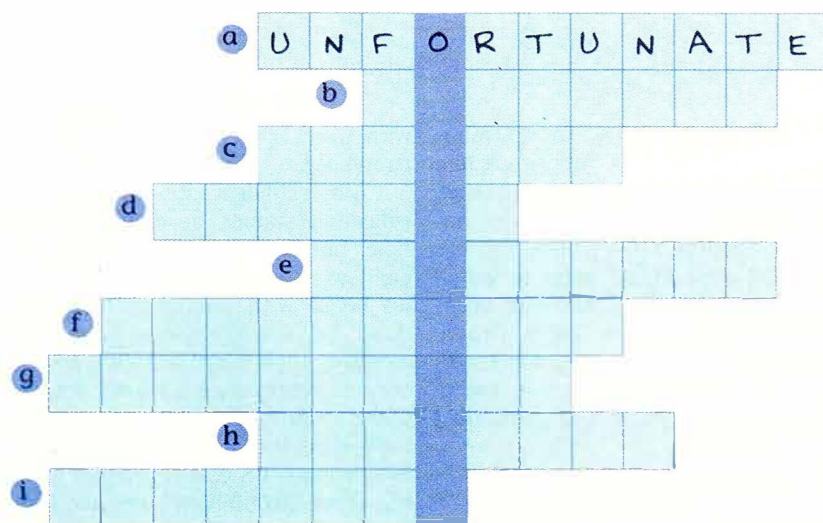
But such obsessions can have unfortunate results. John Weintraub became obsessed with collecting plastic figures of US presidents given as free gifts in packages of breakfast cereal. After two years he had the whole set except for Thomas Jefferson. Weintraub was so desperate to get the last one that he broke into a factory and opened every box of cereal he could find. He was seen by a guard, arrested and sent to jail. "It's OK, though," he said, "because at my first breakfast in jail out came the statue of Jefferson."

مراجعة زبان ایرانیان

3 How much can you remember about each person? Complete the first column in the table. Check your answers on page 89 and complete the second column.

Name	Obsession	How we know they are obsessed
Colin Duffy	Liverpool soccer club	he's seen 1,729 games
Beverley Bloom		
Imelda Marcos		
Tony Mattia		
Hugh Hicks		
Nick Vermeulen		
John Weintraub		

4 Use the clues to complete the puzzle below with words from the text on page 89. What is the hidden word? (See page 139 for the answer.)



CLUES

- a** The opposite of *fortunate*.
- b** If you are crazy about something and can't think of anything else, you are ...
- c** The opposite of *usual*.
- d** Someone who goes shopping is a ...
- e** If you want something very, very much, you are ... to have it.
- f** The opposite of *bored*.
- g** A lot of people have a stamp or coin ...
- h** The one you like best is your ...
- i** If you are better than anyone else at doing something, you are a ...

Language focus 1

Gerunds (-ing forms), verbs of liking and disliking

1 Which of these things do/do don't you like?

- a chocolates
- b ice cream
- c spiders
- d doing the dishes
- e being with your family for special occasions



Helena,
age 21



Oliver,
age 8



David,
age 32



Melissa,
age 24



Julia,
age 35

2 [11.1] Listen to what five people are talking about in Exercise 1. Match the topic to the person. Do you think their feelings are unusual or not?

3 Listen again. Which words from the box below does each person use to describe their feelings?

disgusting sweet cold and horrible
boring cute and furry relaxing

Grammar analysis

1 We use gerunds (-ing forms) in the same way as nouns and pronouns.

a They can be the subject of the sentence.

Spending vacations with my family is not my idea of fun.
A family vacation

b They can be the object of the sentence.

I find doing the dishes really relaxing.

c We use them after prepositions.

She's crazy about shopping.
soccer.

2 A number of verbs and phrases to express likes and dislikes are followed by a gerund (or noun). Put these examples in **bold** in the correct place on the line below.

least like a most like

- a He's crazy about soccer.
- b I really enjoy doing the dishes.
- c She's very enthusiastic about shopping.
- d I don't mind candy or cookies.
- e He's interested in collecting coins.
- f She can't stand spiders.
- g I absolutely loathe chocolate.
- h I love spiders.
- i I hate looking at dirty plates.
- j He doesn't really like swimming.

► Language summary A, page 154.

Practice

1 a) Do you have any unusual likes/dislikes? Are any of the possibilities below true for you? Discuss your answers in pairs.

A	B
I love I really like I really enjoy I quite like I don't mind	mice and rats taking exams cleaning the house long train trips sitting in traffic jams getting up early in winter doing my English homework
I hate I can't stand I don't really like I'm not very keen on	small babies sunbathing chocolate pop music soccer hot weather going to parties the country meeting new people buying presents shopping

Well, I really like long train trips.

Because I can read my book and talk to other people

Really. Why?

b) Tell your partner your opinion about some of the other things in B above.

I really hate the winter.



2 Make these sentences true using the *-ing* form.

- I find cooking very relaxing.
- can be stressful.
- I'm (not) very interested in
- is boring, I think.
- I think is good fun.
- is bad for you.
- is good for you.
- My friend (name)..... is crazy about
- I think is disgusting.
- can be dangerous.

Grammar analysis

1 Look at sentences 1–8 below again. Underline the verbs followed by a gerund (*-ing* form) like this, and those followed by an infinitive (*to + verb*) like this ~~~~~.

2 Circle the correct answer for the rules below.

a *She likes being with children.* *She loves traveling.*

Like | + verb + *-ing*: means enjoys/wants to.
Love

b *She'd like to have at least four children.*

He'd love to own a Ferrari.

Would like/love + to + verb: means enjoys/wants to.

Which form is used to describe a general feeling? Which is used to describe something you want to do in the future?

► Language summary B, page 155.

Language focus 2

Like doing and *would like to do* (gerunds and infinitives)

Match the sentences to the pictures.

- He's crazy about cars.
- She plans to go to India for her next trip.
- She really likes being with children.
- He'd love to own a Ferrari.
- She'd like to have at least four children of her own.
- He loves dancing.
- He hopes to become a professional dancer one day.
- She really loves traveling.



Practice

1 a) Work in pairs, A and B.
A looks at the card on page 141 and B looks at the card on page 144.

b) Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form with *do* or *would*. Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

2 [11.2] How do these conversations finish? (There is more than one possibility.) Compare your answers with the recording.

- a A: Would you like to stay for something to eat?
B: Thanks, I
- b A: Have you been to the Egyptian Exhibition at the British Museum yet?
B: Not yet, but I
- c A: Are you going to Caroline's party on Saturday night?
B: I don't know. To be honest, I don't really
- d A: Are you taking a vacation this summer?
B: Yes, we

Pronunciation

- 1** Notice how *to* is pronounced:
- in the **middle** of a sentence or clause.
Are you going to /tə/ Caroline's party?
 - at the **end**.
I don't really want to /tu:/.

- 2** Listen again and practice the conversations with a partner.

Wordspot

like

1 Choose a word from the box to complete the sentences below. (There is more than one possibility.)

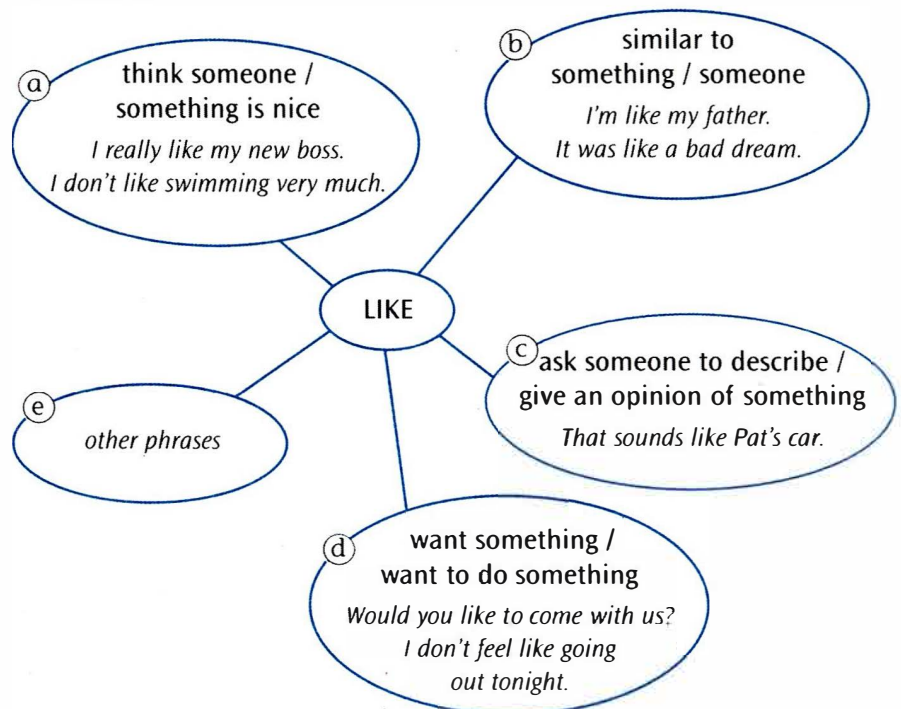
a bird cats fighting an angel silk a model dish water

- a She looks like ... d She eats like ...
b It sounds like ... e It tastes like ...
c It feels like ... f He sings like ...

2 Put the word *like* into the correct place in these sentences.

- a He's so young. He doesn't look ^{like} a doctor.
b Which do you best – chocolate or ice cream?
c Would you something to eat?
d What does that soup taste?
e Open it at the top, this.
f Your eyes are your brother's.
g I'll come and meet you at the airport if you.
h What was the concert?

3 Add the phrases with *like* to the correct section of the diagram below.



4 [11.3] You will hear some questions and instructions. Your teacher will stop the recording after each one. Discuss your answers in pairs.

Make a list of the most important things in life

Personal vocabulary

Useful language

a Comparing ideas on the list

"I think ... is more important than ... (because) ..."

"For me ... is particularly important (because) ..."

"Personally, I don't think ... is at all important ..."

"... doesn't really matter to me (because) ..."

"I find it very hard/impossible to choose between these two (because) ..."

b Comparing opinions with other students

"That's the same for me."

"I agree with you."

"Me, too!/Me, neither!"

"Well, for me ... is more important ..."



Preparation for task

1 People in several countries were asked, "What are the most important things in life?" Look at some of their answers. Decide if the statements below are true (T) or false (F).

	France	Germany	Greece	Italy	UK
family	94%	93%	99%	99%	93%
having good friends	94%	93%	98%	85%	98%
having a partner	94%	83%	98%	94%	72%
politics	28%	35%	61%	42%	34%
religion	26%	22%	87%	62%	33%

from Eurostat 95

- For every nationality in the table, family is the most important thing in life.
- For British people, good friends are more important than having a partner.
- Every nationality believes that religion is more important than politics.
- There aren't many big differences between any of the nationalities.



2 Is your country in the table?

- If so, is there anything that surprises you?
- If not, what order would you expect for your country? (Not for yourself!)

3 MD Read the list of important things in life below. Underline any unknown words, and check the meaning and pronunciation.

having good friends	having a partner
religion	politics
having children	having a successful career
an interesting job	a good salary
being attractive	being fit and healthy
having a nice home	living in a nice neighborhood
having enough money to travel	having enough money for a nice car
having nice clothes	going out a lot
having enough time to relax	having a busy social life

Task

1 a) Work individually. Imagine (for a moment!) you can choose only **one** thing in each pair in *Preparation for task*, Exercise 3. Choose the most important for you.

b) Ask your teacher for any unknown vocabulary.

► *Personal vocabulary*

2 Compare answers in small groups.

► *Useful language*

3 In groups, make a list of the **eight** most important things in life, using either these ideas or your own. Compare answers with other groups.

4 Did you have different ideas about these things five/ten years ago? Do you think your opinions about these things will be different in ten years' time? Why?

Real life

Finding things in common

1 a) Complete the conversations below with the correct phrases. (There is more than one possibility.)

Neither did I	So am I
Me, neither	So do I
It's the same for me	Me, too

- a A: I'm bored!
B: Me, too. Let's go for a walk.
- b A: I think it's really important to keep fit. I go to an aerobics class twice a week.
B: Oh, really?! Where's your class?
- c A: He spoke so fast I didn't understand anything. How about you?
B: Let's ask someone else.
- d A: I don't know anything about computers.
B: I feel I should take a course or something, to learn more about them.
- e A: Excuse me, can you help me? I'm lost!
B: Oh dear!! I thought you could help me!
- f A: It always takes me hours to get here on the bus. It's a nuisance.
B: There's so much traffic!

b) [11.4] Listen and check your answers.

Grammar analysis

Answer the questions.

- a If you agree with positive sentences (*I like coffee*), do you use *so* or *neither*?
b If you agree with negative sentences (*I don't like tea*), do you use *so* or *neither*?

► **Language summary C, page 155.**

2 The auxiliary verb in the phrases in B matches the one in the original sentence in A. Match the answers in B below with the original sentences in A. (There is only one possibility for each.)

- | A | B |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| a I'm feeling really tired tonight. | That's funny – so was I! |
| b I'm not very hungry, actually. | Really? Neither do I, I must say. |
| c I absolutely hate warm milk. | No, neither did we. |
| d My husband doesn't like dancing very much. | So do I. It's disgusting, isn't it? |
| e I was really sick last week! | What a coincidence, so did we! |
| f Actually, I wasn't here for the last lesson. | Yes, so am I! |
| g We went to Istanbul for our vacation last year. | No, neither am I. |
| h We didn't enjoy the movie much. | No, neither was I, unfortunately. |

Pronunciation

1 Notice the stress in these phrases.

● ● ● ●

So am I. Neither am I.

Practice the stress by mumbling like this:

MM mm MM > So am I. MM-mm mm MM > Neither am I.

2 [11.5] Listen to the conversations in Exercise 2 above and practice them with a partner. Pay attention to the stress.

3 [11.6] Agree with the statements on the recording. Use any of the phrases from Exercise 2 above.

Consolidation

modules 7–11

A Past Continuous, articles

Complete the blanks in the story below. Either put the verb in parentheses into the Past Simple or Past Continuous, or put *the* or \emptyset (no article) in front of the noun.

A kind old lady (1) *was walking* (*walk*) down some steps on her way downtown when she (2)..... (*see*) a little boy who (3)..... (*sit*) on (4)..... bottom of the steps. He (5)..... (*cry*). "What is the matter?" she (6)..... (*ask*). He (7)..... (*stop*) crying. "It's my birthday," he (8)..... (*say*), "and my parents (9)..... (*give*) me a new bicycle and some computer games, and this afternoon we're having a party at (10)..... home, with (11)..... ice cream and (12)..... chocolate cookies." "How strange," (13)..... (*say*) the old lady, "(14)..... little boys usually like (15)..... birthday parties and (16)..... ice cream. Why (17)..... (*you/cry*)?" "Because I'm lost!"

B Vocabulary: three things

Work in pairs. The words in the box below are from Modules 7–11. As quickly as possible, find three things:

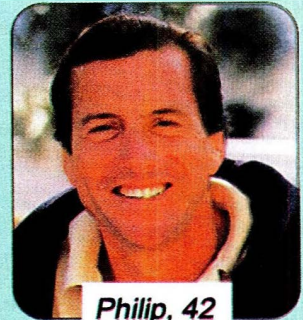
- 1 you can play.
- 2 you can do accidentally.
- 3 people do with a business.
- 4 your doctor might tell you to do.
- 5 people might do with a computer.

take antibiotics deliver it hurt yourself
an instrument drop something start it
replace it a board game spill something
improve it a role chat on it stay in bed
expand it keep warm

C Grammar and listening: Present Perfect, future forms, *used to*, gerunds



Eliza, 71



Philip, 42



Carla, 24

1 Look at the three people above. Which person do you think:

- enjoys going to parties and meeting people?
- used to earn more than he/she does now?
- would love to have a big family one day?
- has been married four times?
- loves cooking?
- has made over £1 million?
- used to be a movie star?
- hasn't had a vacation for three years?
- will probably retire in a few years?
- doesn't like shopping?
- might travel round the world next year?
- spends a lot of time thinking about food?

2 [1] Listen to the three people talking and see how many of your guesses were correct.

3 Listen again and write down two more pieces of information about each person.

D Vocabulary: word search

Work in pairs. Use the clues to help you find words from Modules 7–11 in the grid below. (The module number is in parentheses.)

Across

- 1 A very tall building. (9)
- 2 Computers, fax machines, telephones, etc., are all office ... (9)
- 3 Do you think computers will ... teachers one day? (9)
- 4 If you cut yourself, you will probably ... (10)
- 5 What do you want to be when you ... up? (7)
- 6 My brother is a Manchester United ... (11)
- 7 Did you leave a ... for the waiter? (7)
- 8 Mountains, forests, lakes, etc. (8)

Down

- 1 She had a lot of ... after she fell down the stairs. (10)
- 2 If you ... into something, you might be hurt. (10)
- 3 I'd like to live in a country with a hot ... (8)
- 4 Arguments. (7)
- 5 A qualification from college. (7)
- 6 Some people collect them. (11)
- 7 A ... or an obsession? (11)
- 8 Jamaica is one. (8)

E Speaking: real life

Work in pairs. Choose a situation from page 145 (who you are, where you are, and what you are doing) to act out. Prepare a short conversation, including two of the phrases below. Act out your conversation for other students. They guess what the situation is.

- Do you sell ...?
- Really? So am I!
- Can you explain what ... is?
- Sorry, could you say that again, please?
- No, neither do I.
- Can I pay by ...?
- Where will I find ...?
- What exactly is a ...?
- Can I bring it back if ...?
- Me too.

www.irLanguage.com

s	k	y	s	c	r	a	p	e	r	g	t
f	b	h	w	l	p	z	q	v	n	j	i
l	e	q	u	i	p	m	e	n	t	o	s
b	o	b	c	m	q	l	p	r	o	i	l
r	e	p	l	a	c	e	k	s	y	y	a
u	r	t	h	t	y	x	e	p	s	c	n
i	z	b	l	e	e	d	l	d	k	h	d
s	q	u	k	y	g	o	p	e	m	h	f
e	e	m	z	r	b	c	k	g	r	o	w
s	u	p	p	o	r	t	e	r	k	b	c
k	w	m	k	w	q	z	b	e	u	b	t
t	i	p	j	s	c	e	n	e	r	y	u

module 12

Must have it!

► Passive forms (past, present, future)

► Sentences joined with *that*, *which*, and *who*

► Vocabulary: objects


Task: decide what you need for a trip

Listening and vocabulary


Designer goods

1 What are “designer goods?” Which famous names can you think of for these products?

clothes and sportswear **Levi jeans** accessories (bags, shoes, etc.)
cars and motorcycles perfume and cosmetics

2  Check the meaning of the phrases in **bold**. Which statements do you agree with? Compare answers.

- a “A lot of people in my country want to **own** these **designer goods**.”
- b “Most people in my country **can’t afford** designer labels.”
- c “Sometimes I **save up for** something really special.”
- d “People only want these products because of all the **advertising**.”
- e “Products with a famous name are **better quality** and **last longer**.”
- f “Products like this are a **waste of money** – you just **pay for** the label. Cheaper things are often **just as good**.”
- g “People **look better** in designer clothes than in cheaper ones.”
- h “It worries me that people **spend** so much money on these things, and that they care so much about **possessions**.”

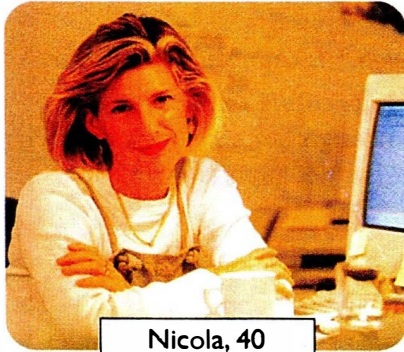
3  [12.1] You will hear the people on the left giving their opinions about these things. What do you think they will say? Are they for or against designer goods, or do they have mixed feelings?

4 Listen again, and mark these statements true (T) or false (F).

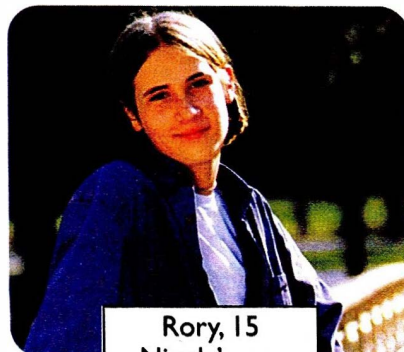
- a Valerie has always spent a lot of money on clothes.
- b She always prefers designer products.
- c Nicola is worried about how much money people spend on these things.
- d She thinks cheaper products are usually just as good.
- e Rory thinks people who are obsessed with designer clothes are stupid.
- f He thinks all running shoes and jeans are cool, and look good.



Valerie, 71
a grandmother



Nicola, 40
her daughter



Rory, 15
Nicola's son

Language focus 1

Passive forms

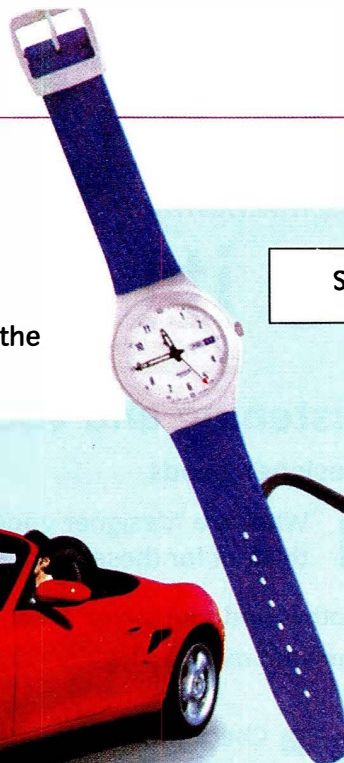
Match one of the sentences below with the products in the pictures.



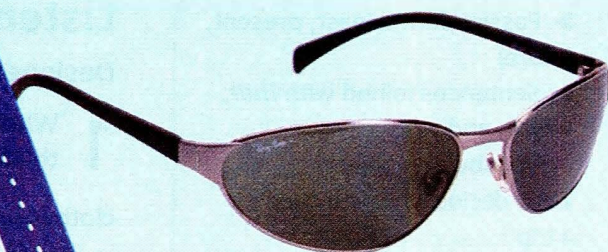
Porsche sports car



Chanel No. 5 perfume



Swatch watch



Ray Ban sunglasses

- More than 10 million bottles are sold every year.
- The design is changed every year.
- They were first built in Germany in the 1940s.
- It was created by clothes designer Coco Chanel in 1925.
- They are often driven in Formula 1 races.
- They were first made in Switzerland in the 1980s.
- They were worn by Will Smith in the movie *Men in Black*.
- They are often seen in Hollywood movies.

Grammar analysis

- Look at the difference between an active and a passive sentence.

	subject	verb	object
ACTIVE	They	change	the design every year.

	subject	verb	
PASSIVE	The design	is changed	every year.

In the passive sentence, we are most interested in the design, so this is the subject of the sentence. It is not important who changes the design.

- We form the passive with *be* + past participle. Look at the sentences a–h opposite.
 - Find four examples of the Present Simple passive, and four examples of the Past Simple passive.
 - Which verbs are singular and which are plural?
 - How do we form the passive with *will*?

- We can show "who did it" (the agent), using *by*.

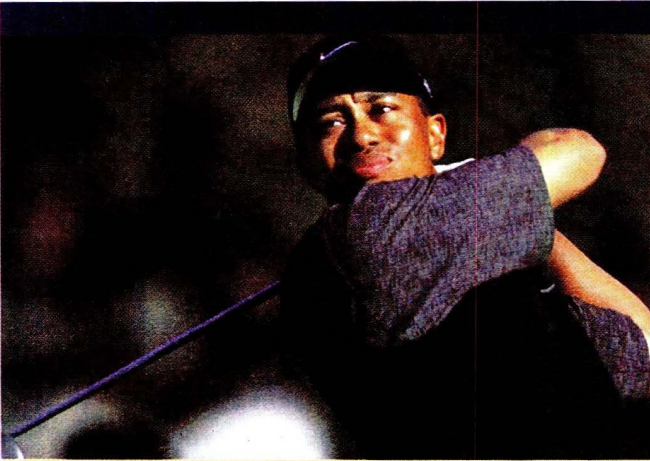
subject	verb	agent
Chanel No. 5	was created	by Coco Chanel in 1925.

► Language summary A, page 155.

Practice

1 a) Look at the pictures. Which famous company is the text about? What do they make?

b) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses (past, present, or future passive).



Take a look around. How many people in this room are wearing Nike? A large percentage of the running shoes sold in the world during the next year (1)..... (make) by the American company, from Oregon in the US, which is now the world's biggest sportswear manufacturer. The company (2)..... (name) after the Greek goddess of victory, and (3)..... (start) in the early 1970s. Nike's (4)..... (know) for its clever advertising, using the world's best-known sportsmen. In the 1980s, tennis star John McEnroe (5)..... (sponsor) by the company, and in the eighties and nineties the basketball star Michael Jordan (6)..... (ask) to appear in ads. In 1997, a \$40 million contract (7)..... (sign) with golf star Tiger Woods. He (8)..... (associate) with Nike until the year 2010! The famous Nike "swoosh" (9)..... (recognize) all over the world nowadays. It (10)..... (create) by a designer in Oregon in 1971, and he (11)..... (pay) just \$35 for his idea!



c) [12.2] Listen and check your answers.

Pronunciation

With passives, the stress is on the past participle. The verb *be* is often weak, or a contraction is used.

The company's named after the Greek goddess of victory.

It was /wəz/ started in the early 1970s.

He'll be /bi:/ associated with Nike until the year 2010!

- 1** [12.3] Listen to the sentences above and practice saying them. Pay attention to the weak forms and contractions.
- 2** Practice reading the second paragraph of the text (Practice, Exercise 1b) aloud.

2 Passive or active? Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

- a More cars (steal) every year in Britain than in any other European country: about half a million!
- b In the next ten years, about 30% of the world's cars (manufacture) in Asia.
- c Corradino d'Ascenio (design) the first Vespa scooter in 1946.
- d The Japanese newspaper *Yomiuri Shimbun* (read) by over 14 million people every day.
- e Australia (produce) about 40% of the world's diamonds.
- f A book of drawings by Leonardo da Vinci (sell) for over \$30 million in 1994.
- g Surprisingly, the Finns (eat) more ice cream than any other people in Europe!
- h More than 10 million Sony PlayStations (sell) in the next year.
- i Giorgio Armani (start) his successful clothes label in the late 1970s.
- j In 1997, 15% of all clothes sold in the world (make) by the American company, Levi Strauss:

Language focus 2

Sentences joined with *that*, *which*, and *who*

- 1 [12.4] Read the rules and then play the game *Definitions*.

Definitions

- 1 Work in teams.
- 2 Close your books and listen to some definitions of words. Your teacher will stop the recording after each one.
- 3 You have twenty seconds to discuss and write down which word was defined.
- 4 Your team gets **two** points if you understand the definition and know the word in your own language.
- 5 Your team gets **four** points if you know the word in English.

Which team won?

- 2 Complete the definitions with *who* or *that*. Listen again to check your answers.

- a It's a hat protects your head from the sun.
- b It's a person designs clothes.
- c It's stuff you use to wash your hands – not water!
- d It's a person sells flowers.
- e It's a long leather thing stops your pants from falling down!
- f It's a machine answers the phone for you when you're busy.
- g It's makeup women (and sometimes men!) wear on their mouths.
- h They're a special kind of shoe you wear in summer.
- i It's a person sells meat.
- j They're gold or silver things people wear in their ears.

Grammar analysis

- 1 In all the sentences in Language focus 2, Exercise 2, there are two ideas joined together with *who* or *that*.

It's a hat, ^{that} protects you from the sun.

It's stuff, ^{that} you use to wash your hands.

It's a person, ^{who (that)} designs clothes.

- a For **things** we use *which* or *that* (not *what*).
- b For **people** we use *who* (or sometimes *that*).

- 2 Join these short sentences in the same way.

- a A plumber is a person. He mends pipes.
- b A calculator is a small machine. It does arithmetic for you.
- c A kettle is a machine. It heats water.
- d A scarf is a thing. You wear it round your neck.
- e Sunscreen is stuff. You put it on your skin when it's very sunny.

► Language summary B, page 155.

Practice

- 1 a) Match the people to the definitions.

antique dealer car dealer carpenter chef
realtor auto mechanic jeweler newsdealer

- 1 person/buy and sell/cars
- 2 person/make and sell/rings and necklaces
- 3 person/buy and sell/old furniture
- 4 person/sell/newspapers, cigarettes, etc.
- 5 person/cook/meals in a restaurant or hotel
- 6 person/sell/houses and apartments
- 7 person/make/things from wood
- 8 person/repair/automobiles

- b) Use the prompts to write sentences like this:

A person who buys and sells cars is called a car dealer.

What do you call the shorts that men wear for swimming?

shorts/men wear for swimming
thing/you make tea in
stuff/makes plates and cups clean
bag/you carry on your back
stuff/you use to clean your teeth
woolen things/keep your hands warm
things/you cut paper with

brush/you clean your teeth with

woolen things/keep your feet warm

stuff/makes clothes clean

thing/you use to draw straight lines with

machine/makes coffee

thing/women wear for swimming

big warm bag/you sleep in

b) A looks at the pictures on page 139 and B looks at the pictures on page 145. Use the pictures to answer your partner's questions from Exercise 2a above.

What do you call the shorts that men wear for swimming?

swimming trunks

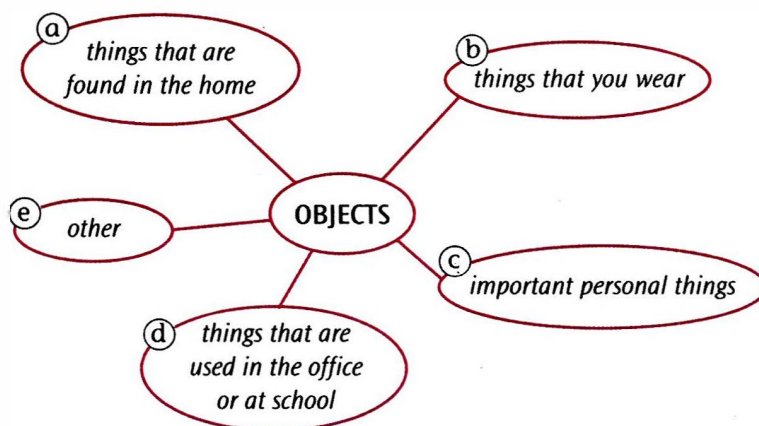
Objects

1 a) Mark the objects in the box below (✓) if it's a word you know, (?) if you're not sure, (X) if you don't know.

billfold/coin purse corkscrew datebook keys Band-Aids
personal stereo credit card umbrella sunglasses identity card
cellphone eraser address book can opener aspirin ashtray
tissues Scotch tape lighter chewing gum flashlight towel
underwear comb driver's license

b) MD: Compare with a partner and check any unknown words.

2 Write the words in the best place on the diagram below. Compare your ideas with other students. Can you add any other words to each list?



3 Answer the following questions individually. Give as many items as you can. Compare answers in pairs and find five things you have in common.

a Which of the things above do you keep:

- in your bedroom? in the kitchen? in the bathroom?

b Which of the things above:

- do people often have in their pockets?
- might someone have in their briefcase?
- do you always take with you when you go out?
- do you often forget to take with you?

I always take
my ... with me.

I never leave
the house without my ...

Useful language

**“We should definitely take ...
because ...”**

"It might rain/be very hot
so ..."

“We could take ...”

“We need a ... to ...”

“Anything else?”

b Suggesting other things to take


“How about ...?”

“Perhaps you should also take ...”

“Have you remembered ...?”



Preparation for task

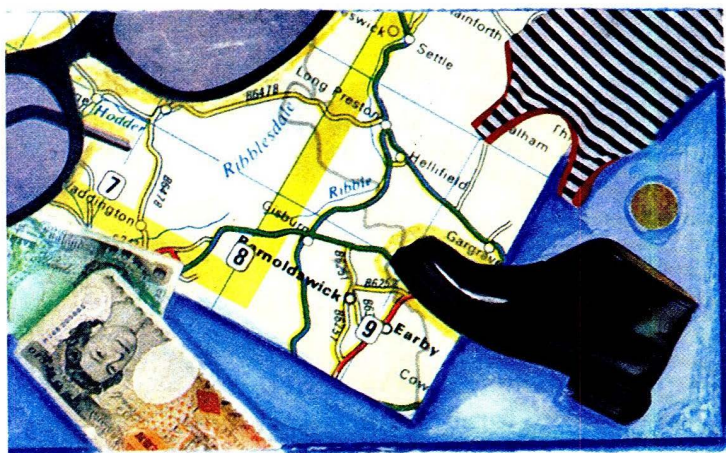
1  [12.5] Neil and Lucy are going away for a few days. Listen to their phone conversation. Which **two** things from the box below are they **not** taking with them?

toothbrushes	underwear	shorts	T-shirts	sweaters	raincoats
passports	tickets	travelers' checks	driver's licenses	camera	
guidebook	sunscreen	razor	shaving cream	phrasebook	

2 Compare answers with a partner. From what Neil and Lucy say, what are the answers to the following questions?

- Are they going to the beach, to the country, or to a city?
- What are they going to do there?
- What do they think the weather will be like?
- Are they staying in their own country or going abroad?
- Are they going with anyone else?
- How are they going to travel?

3 Listen again and check your answers.



Task

1 a) You are going away and need to make a list of what to take with you. Work in pairs. Your teacher will give each pair a letter, A, B, or C. Pair A looks at page 142, Pair B at page 145, and Pair C at page 146.

b) Complete the list of the ten most useful things to take. Ask your teacher for any special vocabulary you need.

► **Personal vocabulary**

c) Think about how to explain why you need these things.

► **Useful language a)**

2 With your partner, agree on a list of the ten most useful things to take with you and why.

3 Form a new group with people who have planned for a different trip. Tell your partners what you are going to take, but do not tell them what kind of trip it is.

a) Which of these can your new partners guess?

- what kind of place you are going to/what kind of trip it is
- who you are going with
- what kind of weather you are expecting
- how you are traveling

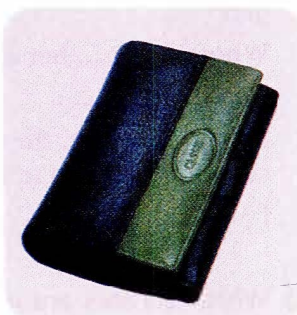
b) Can they think of anything important that you have forgotten?

► **Useful language b)**

Real life


Making suggestions

1 Work in pairs. Make sure you know the names of all the objects below.



2 [12.6] Listen to four conversations where people are making suggestions. Answer the following questions for **each** one.

- What is the relationship between the people?
- Where are they?
- Which two objects above are mentioned? Why?


3 a)  [12.7] Listen to the extracts again, and complete the blanks.

- a What for dinner tonight?
- b Why pasta?
- c my favorite.
- d this perfume?
- e I don't
- f You her a really nice lipstick.
- g Yes, maybe I'll
- h What do you think get?
- i What her a purse?
- j Good
- k Should the sales clerk for your size in these?
- l I so.

b) Which phrases are used to:

- ask for a suggestion?
- make a suggestion?
- respond to a suggestion?

Pronunciation

 [12.8] Listen again and practice the phrases. Pay attention to the intonation.

4 Choose one of these situations. In pairs, prepare a conversation to act out.

- You are trying to decide what to wear for a special occasion. Your partner makes suggestions.
- You and your partner are going to cook dinner for some friends. You are trying to decide what to cook.
- Your partner is staying with an English family for a month and wants to bring a present. Make suggestions.

Do you remember?

1 Discuss the following in pairs. When did you last:

- buy something because of the advertising?
- save up for something special?
- spend a lot of money on a present for someone?
- lose one of your favorite possessions?

2 Match a beginning from A with an ending from B, and a verb from the box. Use a passive form of the verb in the present, past, or with will.

use pull down make free replace speak

A	B
a) Yogurt	by more than 250 million people.
b) Nelson Mandela	in 1989.
c) The Internet	from milk.
d) In the future, letters	from jail in 1990.
e) The Berlin Wall	by millions of people every day.
f) Spanish	by emails.

For example: Yogurt is made from milk.

3 Three of the sentences below have grammatical mistakes. Can you correct them?

- a) People which live in the Netherlands speak Dutch, don't they?
- b) I'd like a camera that has an automatic flash.
- c) That's the actor who he was in *Die Hard*.
- d) Do you have that book what I lent you last week?
- e) We've a new kettle that cleans itself.

4 What do these people buy and/or sell?

- a baker
- a travel agent
- a newsdealer
- a realtor
- a jeweler
- an antique dealer

5 Put the words in the correct order. In pairs, make and respond to the suggestions above.

- a) meal/go/a/let's/out/for
- b) about/soccer/a/how/of/game/?
- c) see/go/we/a/could/and/movie
- d) TV/stay/why/we/don't/in/watch/and/?

module 13

The right kind of person

► **Vocabulary and speaking:** jobs and personal characteristics

► **Present Perfect Simple and Continuous** with the “unfinished past”

► *How long ...?, for, since, and all*

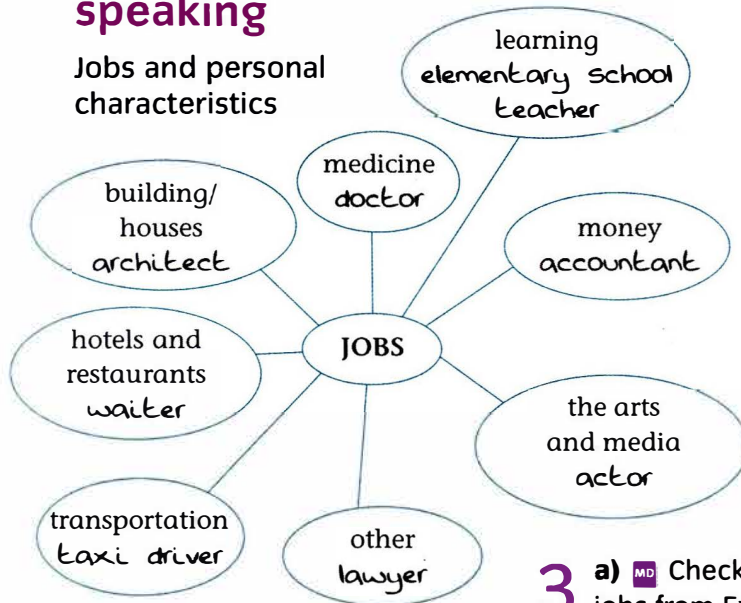
► **Wordspot:** how

Task: select a new mayor for Queenstown



Vocabulary and speaking

Jobs and personal characteristics



1 Work in pairs. How many more jobs can you add to the diagram? You have three minutes. Compare answers with other students.

2 Divide the jobs into the three categories below. Compare your ideas in pairs.

- I'd really like to be ...
- I wouldn't mind being ...
- I'd hate to be ...

3 a) Check the meaning of the words in **bold** below. Which jobs from Exercise 1 do you think the people are describing?

- “You need to be **patient** and it's important to have a lot of **experience**.”
- “You have to be **well-qualified** ... and very **careful** and **accurate**.”
- “You need to be **good with people**, and you have to be **smart** and **well-mannered**.”
- “You have to be friendly and **sympathetic**, and you need to know about all the **latest methods**.”
- “You need lots of **imagination** ... and to know the right people.”
- “You have to be **good with money and numbers**, and **honest**.”

b) Work in pairs. Take it in turns to describe the qualities you need for one of the jobs in Exercise 1. Your partner guesses which job you are talking about.

Language focus 1

Present Perfect Simple and Continuous with the “unfinished past”

1 Work in pairs or small groups. What qualities do people need in these jobs?

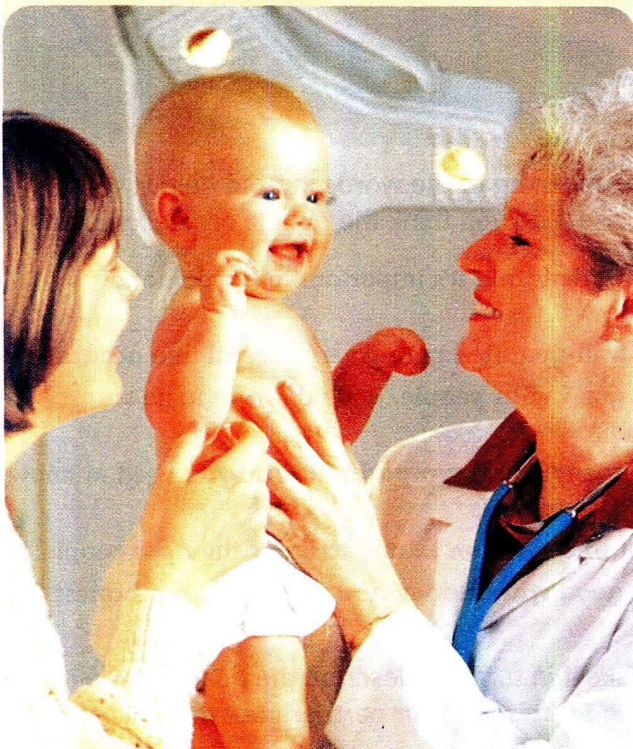
- a family doctor
- a driving instructor
- a babysitter

2 Read the texts below. What qualities does each person have? Who would you choose for each job? Explain why.

1 You need a new family doctor.

Pam Hansen is sixty-eight years old, and has been a doctor for over forty years. She doesn't take many patients these days, so she has plenty of time. She's very kind and interested in her patients, but her methods are a bit old-fashioned.

Matt Gregorio is twenty-nine years old. He hasn't been a doctor for long, but he's very well qualified and knows all about the latest methods. He's sympathetic, but very busy because he has lots of patients.



2 You need a driving instructor.

Jim Burrows has been teaching people how to drive for about ten years, and two of your friends passed their driving test the first time with him. But they say he's not very patient when you make mistakes.

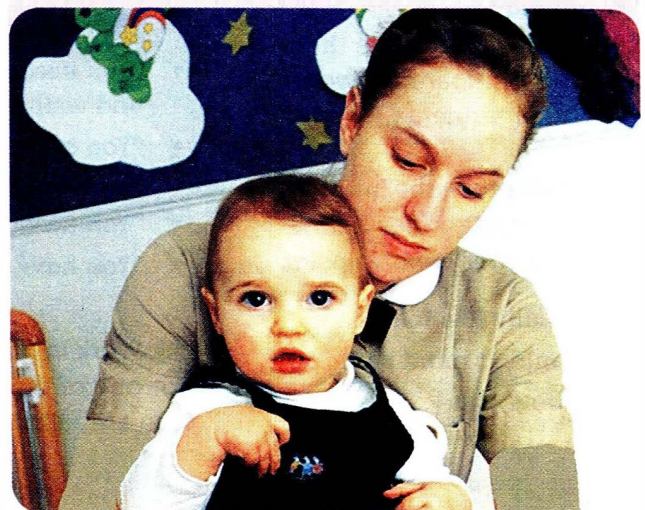
Angela Dunn hasn't been working as a driving instructor for long, but a friend has recommended her because she is very patient and sympathetic, especially if you are nervous. She charges more than Jim.



3 You need a babysitter three afternoons a week for your children aged one and seven.

Florence is a twenty-year-old student. She has no experience of working with children, but she has five younger brothers and sisters, who she often looks after. She's kind, good fun, and seems reliable.

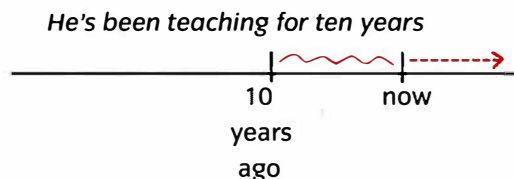
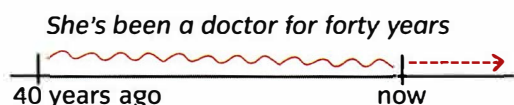
Celia is about fifty-five years old, and has been working with children all her adult life. She's kind but seems strict, and has her own way of doing things.



Grammar analysis

- 1 Look at these examples of the Present Perfect Simple and Present Perfect Continuous.
- Is the person still a doctor/driving instructor?
He's been a doctor for forty years.
He's been teaching people how to drive for ten years.

- 2 a Both tenses describe actions that started in the past and continue to the present.



- b We often choose the Present Perfect Continuous if we want to emphasize the **duration** of the action.

She's been working with children all her adult life.

- c But REMEMBER! there are many verbs that we cannot use in the continuous form because they describe states: *be*, *have*, *like*, *know*, *believe*, etc.

She's been a doctor for forty years. (not *She's been being*...)

► **Language summary A, pages 155–156.**

Practice

- 1 Complete the conversations with the correct form of the words in parentheses. Use the Present Perfect Continuous **when possible**.

- a A: You look a bit annoyed.
 B: Yes, well, I (*wait*) all day for Richard to phone. It's always the same with him!
- b A: How long (*you/have*) your car now?
 B: Oh, about twelve years! We really need to change it!
- c A: Who's P. Pearson? Is it someone in accounts?
 B: I don't know actually, I (*not work*) here for very long.
- d A: I'm really fed up. It (*rain*) all weekend!
 B: I know, it's awful, isn't it.
- e A: What do you think of Rosie?
 B: I (*not know*) her long, but she seems very nice.
- f A: (*your parents/live*) in this house long?
 B: No, only about two years.



- g A: Poor Tom looks really tired!
 B: Yes, but he (*travel*) since seven o'clock this morning, so it's not surprising!
- h A: How long (*Chris/be*) away?
 B: Nearly three weeks. He's coming back on Friday, I think.

- 2 [13.1] Listen and check your answers. Write in any contractions (short forms) that you heard.

Language focus 2

How long ...?, for, since, and all

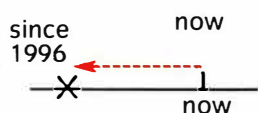
Look at the four examples below. Write a question with *How long ...?* for each, using the words in brackets.

- 1 A:? (he/travel)
B: Since seven o'clock this morning.
- 2 A:? (she/work with children)
B: All her adult life.
- 3 A:? (she/work as a driving instructor)
B: Not for long.
- 4 A:? (you/have your car)
B: For about twelve years.

Grammar analysis

- 1 To answer the question *How long ...?* with the Present Perfect Simple and Continuous:

- a we use *for* with a period of time.
for 5 years
- b we use *since* with a point in time.
since 1996



- 2 Change the following phrases with *for* to phrases with *since*, without changing the meaning.
for two years for three days for five hours
for six months
- 3 Notice that there are many phrases with *all* which we can use with the Present Perfect Simple and Continuous. For example:
all my life all day all summer
Can you think of two more?

► Language summary B, page 156.

Practice

- 1 [13.2] Listen and write the time phrases below. Add *for*, *since*, or *all* as necessary.

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------|---------|
| a for ten years | e | i |
| b | f | j |
| c | g | k |
| d | h | l |

Pronunciation

- 1 [13.3] Listen to these examples. Notice the contractions and weak forms we use in the middle of sentences.

/bɪn/
I've **been** waiting since nine o'clock.

/bɪn/
She's **been** working here since May.

/hævənt/ /fər/
I **haven't** known her for long.

/bɪn/ /fər/
They've **been** living with us for two years.

/hæv/
How long **have** you had your car?

/həz/
How long **has** he been waiting?

- 2 Practice the sentences. Pay attention to weak forms and contractions.

- 2 You are going to interview other students using the questionnaire below. First, spend a few minutes thinking about the questions.

How long?

Student A

1 occupation

work/study?

How long ...?

Do you work or study?

How long have you been working/
studying there?

2 learning English

How long ...?

3 your home

How long/this town?

How long/your house?

4 organizations

member of any clubs

How long ...?

5 sports/music

play any sports/musical instruments?

How long ...?

6 relationships

married/partner/best friend?

How long/know ...?

7 possessions

got car/bicycle/motorcycle/computer/pet?

How long/have ...?

Select a new mayor for Queenstown

Personal vocabulary



Preparation for task

1 a) Does your town have a mayor? How is he/she chosen?
What are the duties of a mayor?

b) Read about the election for the mayor of Queenstown.

The city of Queenstown (population 100,000, main industries tourism and peanut farming), on the island of St. Helena, needs a new mayor. The current mayor, Mr. Tony Boller, is going to retire after five years doing the job. There are four candidates to replace him.

Useful language

a Saying who you prefer

"I think ... will do more for the economy/for ordinary people/for young people."

"I prefer (Zelda) ... to ... because ..."

b Explaining your reasons

"... has more experience of ..."

"... knows more about ..."

"... is too (young/old). ..."

"... isn't suitable because ..."

c Agreeing and disagreeing

"I agree ..."

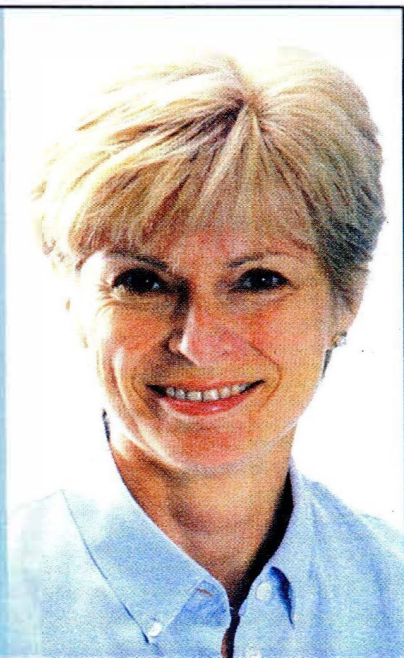
"I don't agree ..."

"Yes, but what about ...?"

2 [13.4] MD Here is some information about two of the candidates to be mayor. Read the information. Check the meaning and pronunciation of any unknown words, then listen and complete the blanks.

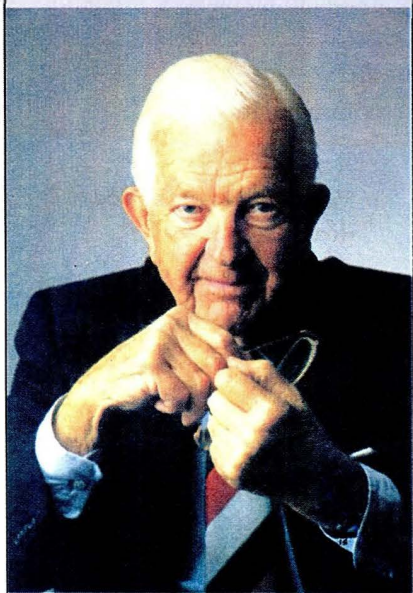
ZELDA MARKOVITCH

Since her first appearance on TV at the age of (1)..... (in an advertisement for soap!), Zelda (2)..... in television for nearly twenty-five years. She is now the country's most popular TV host, thanks to her Saturday night quiz show "Your Money Or Your Life." She moved to Queenstown (3)..... and says it is her favorite city. Although she has (4)..... in politics, she promises to use her fame to bring more tourists to Queenstown. Her slogan is: "Queenstown – first for fun, first for sun!"



MAX ROBERTSON

A successful peanut farmer for the last (1)..... years, Max Robertson has lived in Queenstown (2)....., and is a popular local politician. He entered politics (3)..... years ago, and is now deputy mayor to Mr. Tony Bolleri. He promises to improve the local economy, but he thinks tourism is bad for the town. He wants to make Queenstown the peanut capital of the world. Now (4)..... years old, his campaign slogan is "Peace, Prosperity and Peanuts."



3 What are the positive and negative points about each candidate? Discuss with a partner.

Task

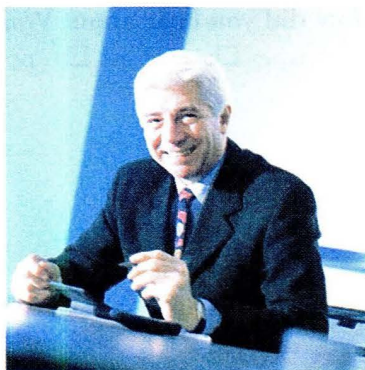
1 You are going to find out about the other two candidates. Work in pairs, A and B.

A reads the information about Jack Novak on page 142, and completes the fact file below.

B reads the information about Cristina Scarlatti on page 146, and completes the fact file below.

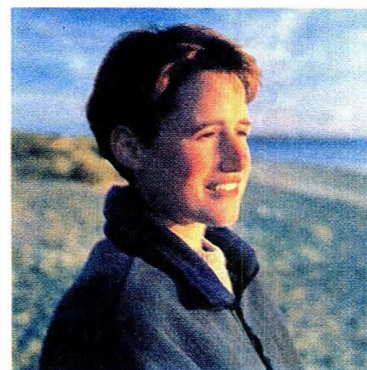
JACK NOVAK: FACT FILE

Job:
How long:
How long/living
in Queenstown:
Campaign slogan:
Good points:
Bad points:



CRISTINA SCARLATTI: FACT FILE

Job:
How long:
How long/living
in Queenstown:
Campaign slogan:
Good points:
Bad points:



2 Ask your partner questions to complete the fourth fact file. First, spend a few minutes thinking about the questions.

3 Complete the voting form below. Number the candidates from 1–4. How will you explain your choice?

- ▶ *Useful language a) and b)*
- ▶ *Personal vocabulary*

ZELDA MARKOVITCH	
MAX ROBERTSON	
JACK NOVAK	
CRISTINA SCARLATTI	

4 Compare your answers in groups of three or four. Explain why you put the candidates in that order. Did you agree or not?

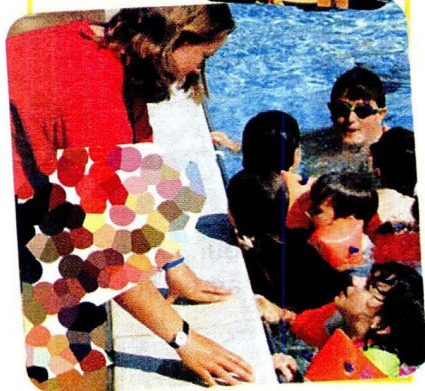
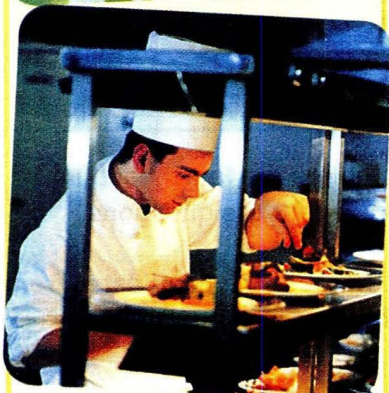
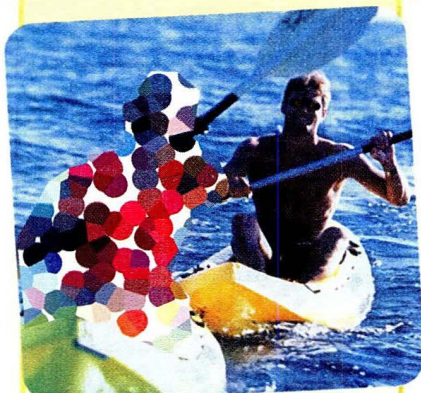
- ▶ *Useful language c)*

Writing and real life

An application for a job

1 Read about Work Canada.
What is it?

Work Canada is an organization helping young people (aged 18–27) to find work within the tourist industry in Canada. Jobs include hotel and restaurant work, child day care, sports instructors, activity leaders, tour guides for foreign visitors, etc.



WORK CANADA APPLICATION FORM

First name Iris Surname Hauptmann
 male ☐ female ☐ (check)
 Address Postcode
 City/Country
 Tel. (include town & country code) (home)
 Tel. (work) Fax
 email
 Best time to reach me is
 Date of birth 6.28.79
 Earliest travel date (year/month)
 Driver's license yes ☐ no ☐ learning ☐
 Languages spoken German
 Present occupation or studies
 Which of these work areas interests you? (check at least one box)
 hotel ☐ restaurant ☐ child care ☐ tour guide ☐
 sports instructor ☐ activity leader ☐
 Describe any relevant experience you have

 How did you hear about Work Canada?
 newspaper ☐ website ☐ personal recommendation ☐
 other

www.irLanguage.com

Borgfelder Strasse 11
 Hamburg 20537
 Germany
 (0049) 40 - 33 23 09

March 12, 2000

Dear Sir/Madam,

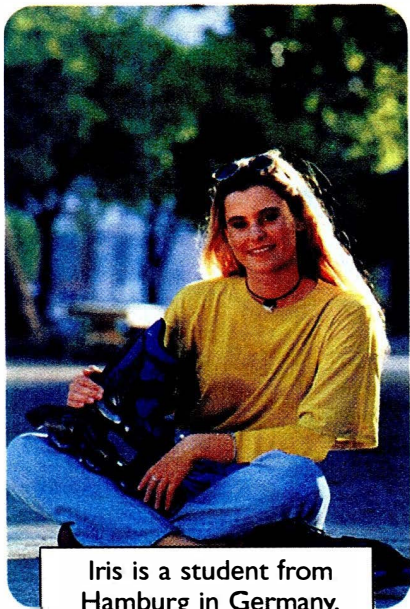
I have heard about your organization from a friend, and am writing to apply for work with you this summer. I am interested in any jobs you may have, either as a tour guide, a sports coach, or possibly restaurant work.

I am a twenty-year-old student (date of birth July 12th, 1979), in my third year of a four-year language course at Hamburg University. I speak three languages fluently (German, English, and Spanish) and have had a full driver's license for a year. I have had no experience as a tour guide, but have worked in various restaurants in Hamburg, and I am good at working with people. I am also a member of my college tennis team, and have been working as a tennis coach with children aged 12–14 for the last three years.

Please note that my college course finishes on June 10th, so I will be available from then. If you want to phone me, you can contact me at home after six o'clock. Unfortunately I don't have a fax number or email address.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.
 Yours faithfully,

Iris Hauptmann



Iris is a student from Hamburg in Germany. She wants to apply for a job with Work Canada.

2 Iris wrote a letter of application to Work Canada. They sent back a form for her to complete instead. Use her letter to complete the form.

3 a) Work in pairs, A and B. Student A is the interviewer and Student B is Iris. Student A prepares questions and Student B prepares answers. Think about:

- more information about Iris's occupation
- why Iris is interested in particular work areas
- Iris's other interests and hobbies

Why are you interested in ...?

How long have you been ...?

b) Interview your partner. Would you give him/her the job?

Do you remember?

1 Choose an adjective from the box for the perfect:

- teacher
- friend
- waiter

honest well-mannered smart sympathetic
good with people honest strict

2 Complete the blanks in the article with the correct form (Present Perfect Simple or Continuous).

Julia Molina (1)..... (play) the piano since she was five, but she (2)..... (never/play) professionally. That will change on Monday, when Julia makes her first CD for a big recording company. For the last two weeks Julia, from Bristol, (3)..... (stay) in a hotel in London, and (4) (practice) for ten hours a day. "It's really strange," she said, "I (5)..... (eat) in the hotel restaurant every day, and I (6)..... (only/leave) the hotel two or three times!" Julia is very excited: "This is my big chance – I (7)..... (wait) for something like this all my life." Her mother is not so happy. She is so busy that she (8)..... (not/have) time to phone her!

3 Finish the following sentences so they are true for you. Compare your answers with a partner.

- I've been in this lesson since ...
- I've been wearing these shoes for ...
- I've known the person next to me for ...
- I've been studying the Present Perfect since ...
- I've had my ... for a long time.
- I've been ... all my life.

4 Match a word from A with one from B to make jobs.

A	B
1 tour	editor
2 TV	instructor
3 taxi	host
4 newspaper	guide
5 sports	driver

5 Work in pairs. Think of a job. Your partner asks questions to find out the job. You can only answer Yes or No.


module 14

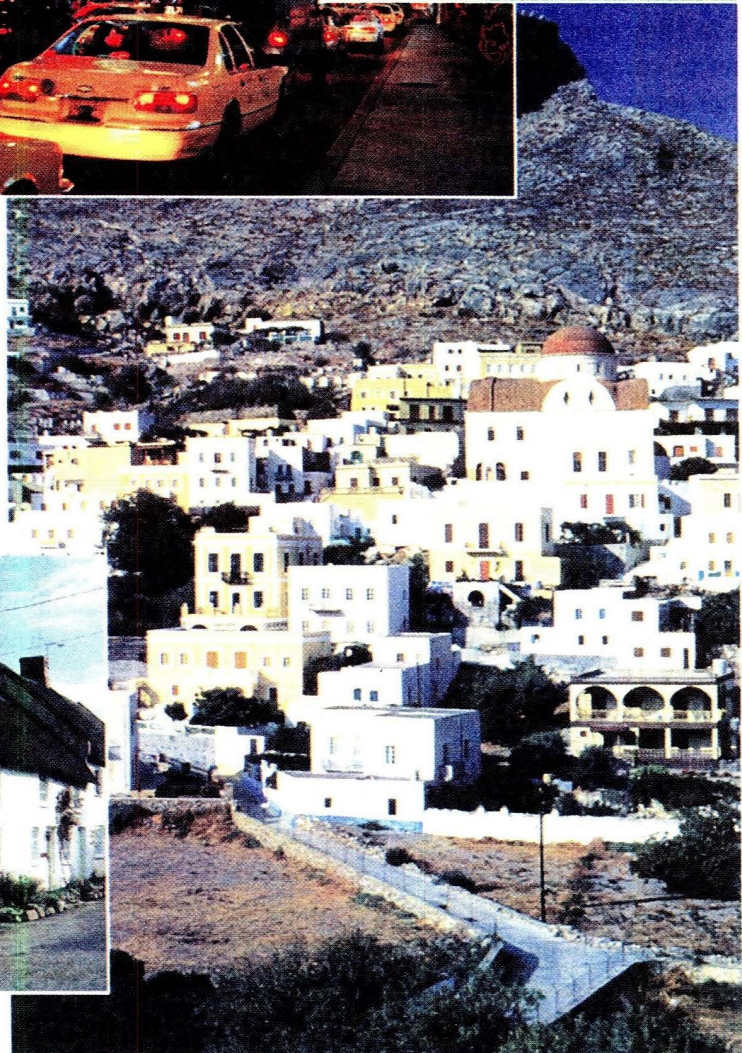
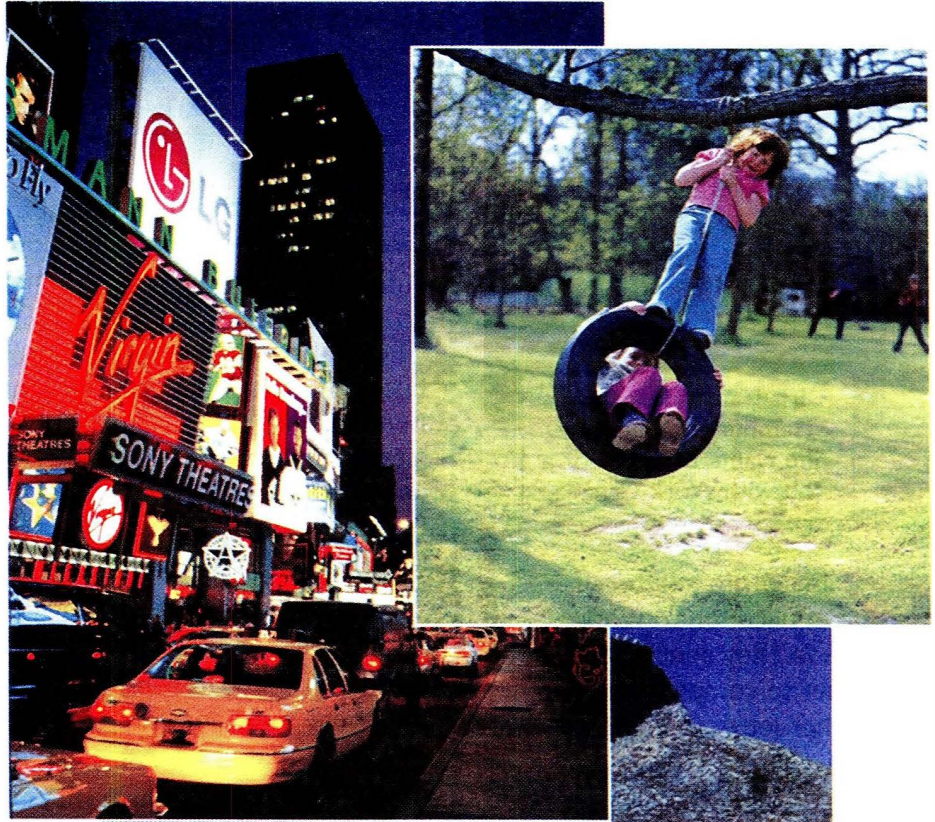
Building your dreams

- ▶ *Some, any* and quantifiers
 - ▶ **Vocabulary:** describing houses and apartments
 - ▶ **Describing where things are**
- Task: describe a favorite room

Language focus 1

Some, any, and quantifiers

- 1 Discuss with other students.
 - Do you live in a city, village, or in the country?
 - Are you happy with this, or not?
- 2 a)  [14.1] What do you think people are talking about in extracts 1–7? Listen and write:
 - C for life in a big city.
 - V for life in a small village.
 - ? for not sure/it could be either.
- b) Listen again. Is each opinion positive (+) or negative (–)?




Grammar analysis

Answer the questions about the following examples.

- 1 a *There are some lovely old houses.*
b *There aren't any modern buildings.*
Why do we use *some* in a) and *any* in b)? Which do we usually use in questions?
- 2 a *There are no clothes stores near here.*
b *There aren't any clothes stores near here.*
c *There are any clothes stores near here.*
Which of these sentences is wrong? Can you correct it?
- 3 a *There are a lot of old people.*
b *There aren't many young people.*
A lot of and *many* mean "a large number of." Which do we use in a positive sentence and which in a negative sentence?
- 4 a *There aren't many stores.*
b *There isn't much nightlife.*
Why do we use *many* in a) and *much* in b)?
- 5 a *There are a lot of coffee shops and restaurants.*
b *There are too many coffee shops and restaurants.*
c *There aren't enough coffee shops and restaurants.*
In which two sentences is the speaker unhappy about the coffee shops and restaurants? Which words tell you this?
- 6 a *There are **a few** nice restaurants.*
b *There are **some** lovely old houses.*
Look at the words in **bold**. Which means "a small number of"? Which means "an indefinite number of"?

► **Language summary A, page 156.**

Pronunciation

 [14.2] Listen to these examples. Notice the links between the words. Practice saying the phrases.

there's a good baker there isn't much nightlife

there are no clothes stores there aren't many young people

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with the correct quantifier.

- a Be careful on the road.
There's *many/much/a lot of* traffic at this time of day.
- b My apartment's got a nice view, but there really isn't *many/enough/no* space.
- c Unfortunately, there aren't *many/much/some* young people around here.
- d I can't go out tonight, I don't have *any/no/many* money.
- e The city's mainly modern, but there are *any/much/some* old buildings.
- f We're very lucky, there are *a lot of/much/too many* parks where we live.
- g There aren't *any/no/much* stores around here. You have to go downtown.
- h There are *no/a few/any* places for young people to go, but not enough, really.

2 a) Choose a place to visit. Think of reasons to go there. Use some of these ideas.

old buildings hotels parks
museums scenery people
tourists nightlife stores
movie theaters/theaters
restaurants

b) Work in pairs. Persuade your partner to go to the place.

Let's go to Paris.
There are a lot of fantastic stores and ...

Oh, but there are too many tourists.

Vocabulary

Describing houses and apartments

1 Read the three extracts below. What kind of building does each one describe? Which comes from:

- a brochure for vacation rentals? • a letter? • a story?

(a) ...finally found somewhere to live! It's on the fifth floor of this lovely old apartment house, right in the city center. It's very spacious and there's lots of light, but the best thing is that it has a wonderful view of the river. If you look out, you can actually see the parliament building ...

(b) ...this **three-story** house with a charming **balcony** is situated **in a small village** on the west coast of the island.

Set in its own **private yard** with a large **swimming pool**, it has 6 **bedrooms**, 3 **bathrooms**, a **modern kitchen**, and an **attractive living room**. There are tennis courts within a few minutes' drive, and bars and supermarkets nearby.

(c) ... the address was **in the suburbs**, **at the end of a quiet street**. Sylvia went up the **path**, unlocked the front door, and walked in. Inside, the rooms were small and **rather dark**. As she looked around the living room, she noticed some wood next to the **fireplace** and the vase of fresh flowers by the window. The **old-fashioned furniture** was **simple** but **elegant** and there were **colorful rugs** on the **wooden floor**. At the back of the house there was a small, **sunny courtyard** with some plants in pots. Sylvia smiled. It was perfect.

2 Check the meaning of the words and phrases in **bold**, and add them to categories a) to e) below.

- a where things are **on the fifth floor**
- b types of building **an apartment house**
- c phrases to describe buildings and places **spacious**
- d things buildings have **6 bedrooms**
- e things rooms have **old-fashioned furniture**

3 Use these questions to interview your partner about where he/she lives. How similar are your homes?

- Do you live in an apartment or a house? Where is it?
- Which floor is it on?/How many stories does your house have?
- How many bedrooms/bathrooms are there?
- Does it have a nice view/yard/balcony?
- What other important features does it have?

Language focus 2

Describing where things are

Look at the pictures on page 119 and choose the correct preposition or phrase to complete sentences a)–m) below.

behind	between	under
in front of	below	near
on top of	opposite	above
next to	inside	outside

- a A is behind B.
- b A is B.
- c A is B.
- d A is B and C.
- e A is B.
- f A is B.
- g A is B.
- h A is B.
- i A is B.
- j A is B.
- k A is B.
- l A is B.

Grammar analysis

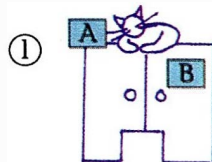
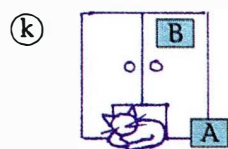
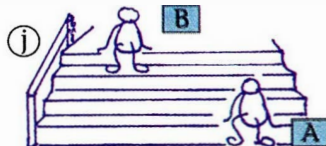
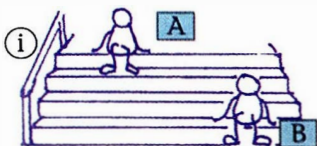
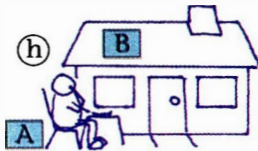
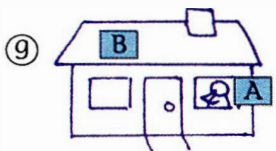
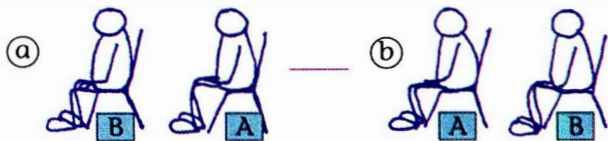
1 Which phrases start with:

- at? • in? • on?

2 Which phrases are followed by:

- to? • of?

► Language summary B, page 156.



Practice

1 Look around you now. Who/What is:

- above the teacher's desk?
- on top of the teacher's desk?
- behind you?
- between you and the door?
- sitting next to you?
- opposite the window?
- outside the door?
- under your bag?
- below your classroom?
- inside your coin purse/billfold?
- sitting near you?
- in front of you?

2 Work in pairs, A and B. A looks at the picture on page 143. B looks at the picture on page 147. Find ten differences between the two pictures.

Real life and writing

Giving directions

1 Mark and Lola have invited some friends to a party at their home. Read the invitation and directions they sent to their guests. Complete the blanks with these words or phrases.

cross past opposite Get off along
take it takes toward about
turn on the left the train



Mark and Lola invite you
to a barbecue in their yard
at: 5 New Road, Banfield
on Saturday, June 21st. 2 p.m. till?!
Bring a friend and good weather!

How to get to Mark and Lola's apartment.

From LIVERPOOL STREET STATION take
(1)..... which goes to STANSTED AIRPORT.
(2)..... at BANFIELD HILL (9th stop -
(3)..... about 25 minutes).
When you come out of the station, (4)..... the
road and (5)..... right. Walk (6)..... BUSH
HILL ROAD (7)..... BANFIELD. Go up the hill
and (8)..... the garage.
New Road is the third street (9).....
No. 5 is the big house (10)..... the school. (Just
press the bell marked, Apartment A.)
OR
(11)..... the subway (Blue Line) to HALETON
JUNCTION. Then take the 351 bus to Enfield
Lock Station (it takes (12)..... 45 minutes).
The 351 bus stop is opposite the main exit.

See you there!

Mark and Lola

2 a) [14.3] Jeff is driving Cindy to the party. She calls him to ask for directions to his house. Listen and put a X on the map where Jeff's house is.



b) Listen again. Circle the word or phrase you hear in the instructions below.

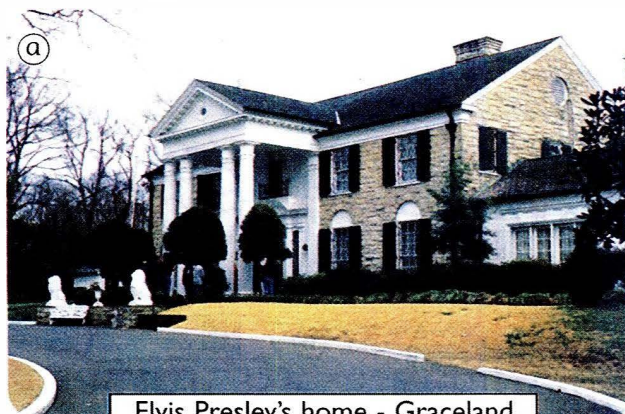
- 1 When you *come to/come out of* Manor House station, take the Finsbury Park *exit/road* and go *straight ahead/turn left*. Then go *down/up* Green Lanes with Finsbury Park on your *left/right*.
- 2 You go *across/past* the park and there's a bridge *in front of/next to* you. Keep going toward the bridge and *cross/take* the street on the left just *before/after* you get to the bridge.
- 3 Then my street's *one/two* blocks after on the *left/right*.
- 4 My house is at the *beginning/end* of the street. It's number four, the second house on your *left/right*.
- 5 It takes about *ten/twenty* minutes.

3 a) Draw a map of the area near your house, and mark the nearest station or bus stop. Do **not** mark your house.

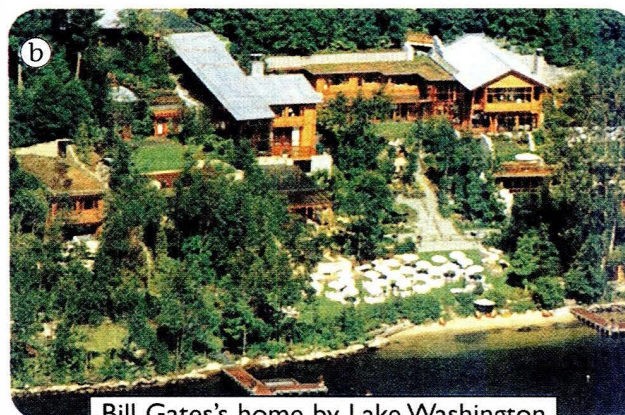
b) Work in pairs. Give the map to your partner and direct him/her from the station/bus stop to your house. Your partner marks your house on the map.

4 You are having a party at your house. Write a similar note to Mark and Lola's in Exercise 1 on page 119.

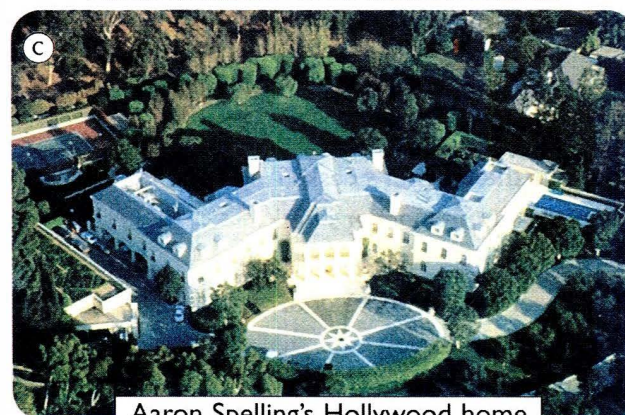
Reading



Elvis Presley's home - Graceland



Bill Gates's home by Lake Washington



Aaron Spelling's Hollywood home




Justo Gallego's cathedral in Majorada del Campo

Building your dream ...

- ① For most people, a dream home is just that ... a dream. But for those people who have the right combination of money and imagination, building that dream can become reality and the results can be rather strange!
- ② A Frenchman named François Labbé built the world's first revolving house in the village of Saint-Isidore, near Nice. Made of metal, it can turn to the sun at the press of a button. A Spanish ex-priest named Justo Gallego spent nearly thirty years building his own personal cathedral in Majorada del Campo, a small town 25 kilometers east of Madrid. The strange building looks like a castle with its two 55-meter towers. The roof is made of zinc and its entrance is similar to that of the White House in Washington DC.
- ③ Not surprisingly, perhaps, it's in the United States that the idea of dream homes seems strongest. Jim Onan, of Illinois, built his own five-story golden pyramid. The pyramid is surrounded by water – and just to make sure there are no unwanted visitors, there are sharks swimming around in it! The pyramid has five bedrooms, six bathrooms, and an observatory on the top floor so Jim can watch the stars in peace.
- ④ But that's tiny compared to the Hollywood home of TV producer Aaron Spelling: The house itself occupies 3,390 square meters, and contains four bars, three kitchens, eight garages, a doll museum, and a special room for wrapping presents!
- ⑤ And if it's technology you're interested in, computer billionaire Bill Gates spent over \$50 million on his state-of-the-art home by Lake Washington. Everyone who enters receives an electronic pin that controls lights, services, and even turns off the TV when you leave the room!
- ⑥ Perhaps America's most famous dream home is a white-columned mansion in Memphis, Tennessee, which now attracts 700,000 visitors a year. Graceland, Elvis Presley's "rock 'n' roll palace" was decorated in his favorite bright colors – red, orange, and green – and is filled with velvet, gold, wall-sized mirrors, and enormous statues. Elvis lived at Graceland with his family from 1957 – but became more and more lonely there. He died alone in an upstairs bathroom in 1977.

1 Look at the four places in the pictures on page 120. Who lives/lived in each one? Which one looks:

- the biggest?
- the most interesting?
- the most attractive?

2  Read the text. Which of the places in the pictures:

- a is near Madrid?
- b cost over \$25 million?
- c has a toy museum inside?
- d looks like the White House when you walk in?
- e has enormous mirrors on the walls?
- f is full of large statues?
- g has a special room for wrapping presents?
- h has a special system to operate the lights and television?

3 Two other houses are described in the text.

- a What is special about François Labbé's house near Nice?
- b Read the description of Jim Onan's house in Illinois. Using your minidictionary to help you, draw a rough sketch of the house.

4 a) Which of the houses in the text would you most like to visit/live in? Why?

b) Do you have an idea of your dream home? Describe it to other students. (Draw a picture too, if you want to.)

Describe a favorite room

Personal vocabulary

Useful language

a Where the room is/was and why you go/went there

"It's/It was in/on/near ..."

"I go/I used to go there to ..."

"I spend/I used to spend a lot of time ... (read)-ing there."

b Describing the room

"It has/It had a ... view of ..."

"It's/It was quite/very ..."

"There is/There was ..."

"There are/There were a lot of ..."

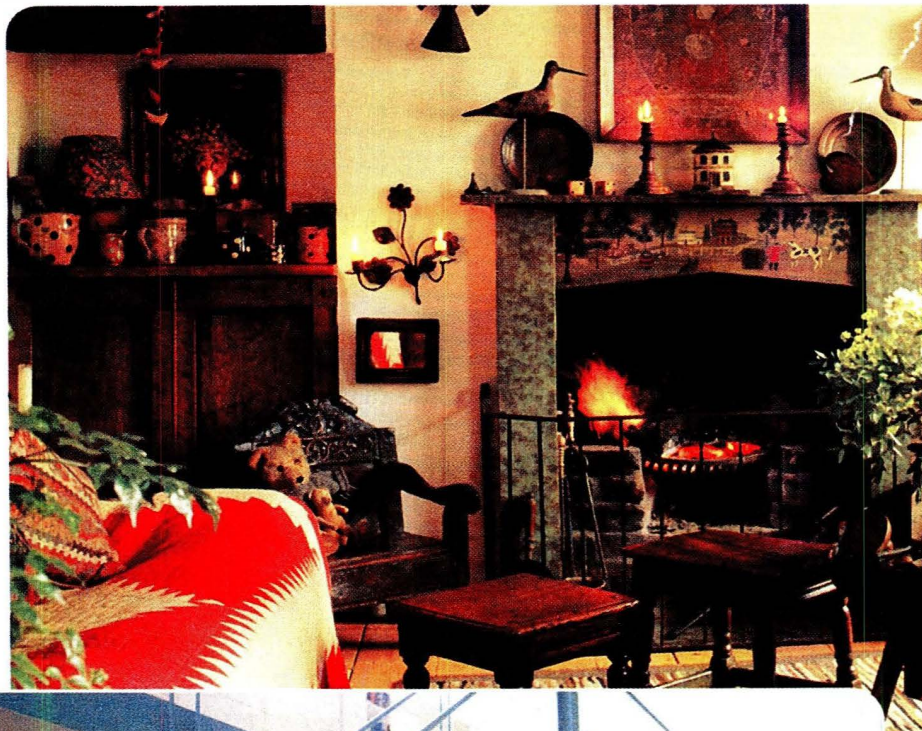
"It has/It had a(n) ... atmosphere."

c Why you like/liked the room

"I like/liked the room because ..."

"I love/I used to love the ..."

"I always feel/I felt ... there."



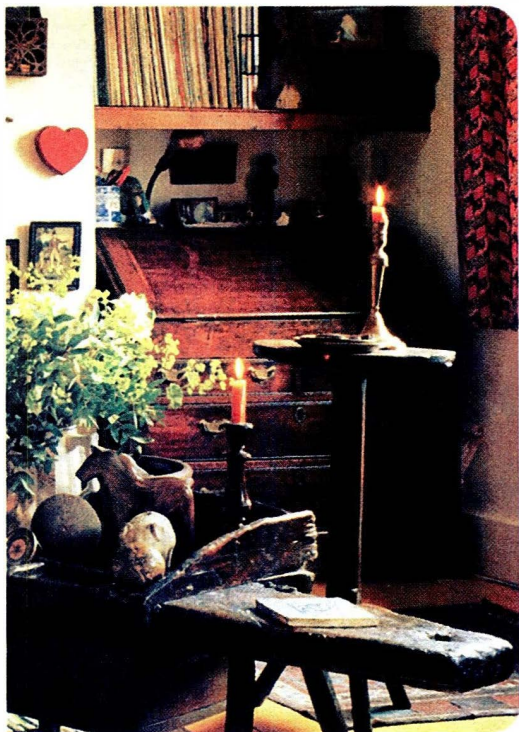
Preparation for task

1 In a room, which of the following is the most/least important for you? Tell your partner.

the furniture and decoration (colors, etc.) the size the view
the atmosphere things like books, plants, ornaments, etc.

2 [14.4] Sandra and Tom are talking about a favorite room. Listen and complete the table below.

	Sandra	Tom
Where it is/was and what he/she does/did there		
Description of the room: furniture, view, etc.		
Why he/she likes/liked the room		



Task

1 You are going to give a short talk about a favorite room, like those you heard in Preparation for task, Exercise 2. Make notes under the following headings.

- Where the room is/was and what you do/did there
- Description of the room
- Why you like/liked the room

Ask your teacher for any words or phrases you need

► **Personal vocabulary**

► **Useful language**

2 a) Work in groups. Talk about your room and answer any questions other students have.

b) Listen to the other students' talks and decide which room would be a good place for:

- a meal with a few friends.
- relaxing and reading.
- a party.
- studying.

Do you remember?

1 Put these words into three groups:

- places to live
- things in a house
- words to describe a room

suburbs	balcony	village	modern	attractive
furniture	spacious	elegant	building	fireplace
wonderful	private	courtyard	apartment	

2 Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

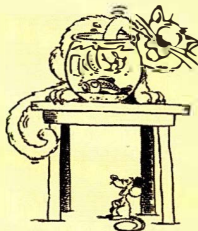
- a) Would you prefer to live:
- in the city center or in a small village?
 - in an apartment or in a house?
 - in a place with lots of nightlife or lots of parks?
- b) Would you prefer to have a house with:
- a wonderful view or lots of light?
 - a private yard or a swimming pool?
 - a balcony or a courtyard?

3 A word is missing from four of the following sentences. Can you think of the right word and put it in the right place?

- a) There isn't ^{enough} space for the piano. Can you move that sofa?
- b) There are some people at the door. Can you see what they want?
- c) Oh dear, I think I put much salt in this soup.
- d) Are you ready? The taxi will be here in few minutes.
- e) There's a lot noise next door. Are they having a party?
- f) There's no milk in the fridge. I'll go and get some.

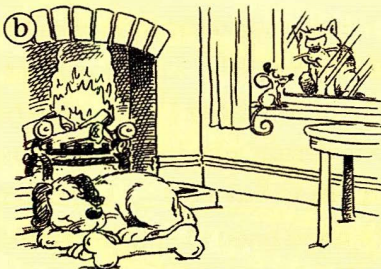
4 Look at the pictures and descriptions below. Which information is not true, in each case? Can you correct it?

a)



- 1 The cat is sitting above the table, behind the fish bowl.
- 2 The fish is at the bottom of the bowl.
- 3 There's a mouse near the table.

b)



- 1 The dog is lying in front of the fire.
- 2 There's a bone between the dog and the fire.
- 3 The cat is inside the house.
- 4 There's a mouse in the corner of the room.

module 15

Money, money, money

► **Vocabulary:** verb phrases to do with money

► **Past Perfect**


► **Reported speech**

► **Wordspot:** *make*

Task: find the differences between two stories

Vocabulary

Verb phrases to do with money

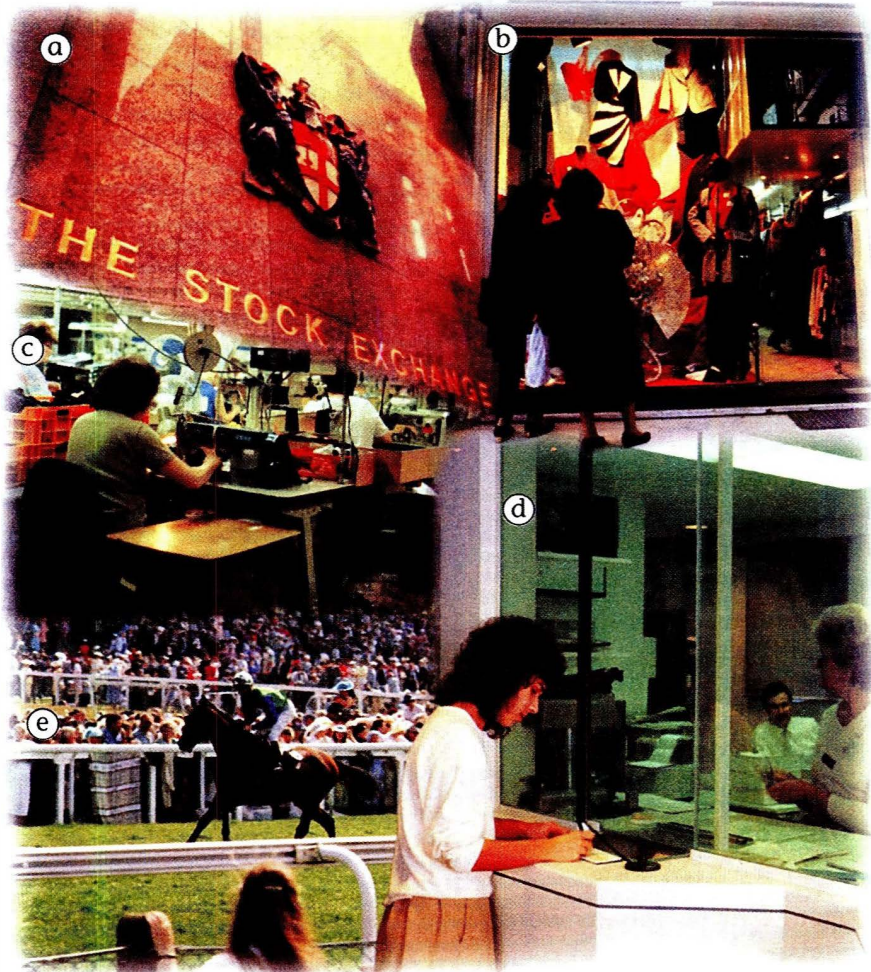
1 a)  Check the meaning of the verbs and phrases in **bold**.

can't afford something
save money
borrow money from
waste money
lend someone money
pay money back
lose money
earn money
spend money on ...
win money
invest money in ...
owe money
bet money on ...

b) Which five places can you see in the pictures? Which verbs above relate to these places?

For example:

People **save** money in the bank.



2 Complete each of the statements below so they are true for you. Then compare your answers with a partner. What are the most important differences between you?

- a Two of the things I spend most money on are ... and ...
- b I think too many people waste money on ...
- c If I borrow money from ..., I always/usually/never pay it back.
- d I sometimes/never forget about money people lend me.
- e I find it easy/difficult/impossible to save money.
- f The person who earns the most money in my family is ...
- g The most money I've ever lost/won was ...
- h One person who owes me money is ...
- i I'd like to buy a(n) ..., but I can't afford it.
- j It's not a good idea to invest money in ...
- k In my country, people often bet money on ...

Language focus 1

Past Perfect

Read about how the Hoens lost all their money and explain the connection between the pictures below. What was Ilona's "expensive mistake"?

AN EXPENSIVE MISTAKE

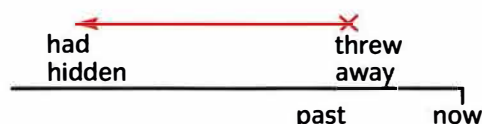


Dutch housewife Ilona Hoens made an expensive mistake when she threw away a pair of her husband's old shoes: Her husband had hidden £15,000 of savings inside them. When her husband found out what had happened, the couple rushed to the garbage dump in Amsterdam. The people there listened sympathetically, but explained that they had burned all that day's garbage several hours before.

Grammar analysis

1 Look at the example below.

... she **threw away** a pair of her husband's old shoes: her husband **had hidden** £15,000 of savings in them.



- How many past actions are there?
- Which action happened first: hiding the money or throwing away the shoes?
- What tense is *threw*? What tense is *had hidden*?

2 Find two other examples of the Past Perfect in the text.

► **Language summary A, page 157.**

Practice

1 Match a beginning from A with an ending from B. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Perfect.

A

- She couldn't afford the shoes because ...
- By the time George retired ...
- Hilda and Jerry bought a new car ...
- Kate needed some advice ...
- When Grandma died, nobody knew that ...

B

- ... with the money they (*win*) in a competition.
- ... because she (*never/invest*) money before.
- ... she (*spend*) all her money on presents for her family.
- ... she (*save*) thousands of pounds in a box.
- ... he (*earn*) enough money to buy a summerhouse.

2 a) Read about Justine Klaus. What did she do with her money when she died?

When Swiss millionairess Justine Klaus (1)..... (die) in Geneva at the age of 79, most of her family (2)..... (come) to hear the details of her will, hoping the old lady (3)..... (remember) them. Instead they (4)..... (get) a real shock. Justine (5)..... (live) alone for many years, and most of her family (6)..... (not see) her for several years. The family (7)..... (be) amazed when they (8)..... (hear) that the old lady (9)..... (leave) £370,000 to her favorite houseplant! Justine said that the plant (10)..... (be) her best and only friend. In contrast, her family only (11)..... (receive) £100 each!

Language focus 2

Reported speech

1 Look at the pictures below. What do you think happened? Discuss in pairs.



2 [15.1] Listen to the story. Is it the same as yours?

b) Complete the sentences with the Past Simple or the Past Perfect.

c) Justine also gave £170,000 to a man in his forties called Willi. Why? Think of two possible reasons.

Maybe he'd ...

... or perhaps he was ... and he'd ...

Look at the answer on page 141. Did anyone guess correctly?

Grammar analysis

1 Look at the sentences below. How does the verb form change:

- in the Present Simple? • in the Past Simple?
- with *will*?

Direct speech

"You **look** just like my daughter."

"She **died** a year ago."

"My daughter **will pay**."

Reported speech

The old lady told my sister that she **looked** just like her daughter.

She said that her daughter **had died** a year ago.

She said that you **would pay**.

2 Which of the alternatives below is wrong?

She told me/She said me/She said that her name was Mary.

► Language summary B, page 157.

Practice

1 Complete the sentences below about yourself. Some should be true, and some false.

- a I love ...
- b I don't like ...
- c I bought a new ... over the weekend.
- d I'm planning to ... next weekend.
- e I'll probably ... after this lesson.
- f I never spend money on ...
- g In 19 ... I won ... in a competition.
- h I can't ...
- i I'll be ... tomorrow morning.
- j I saw ... yesterday.

2 Read your sentences to a partner. Your partner makes a note of your answers, and decides which are true/false.

3 Tell each other which sentences you think were false, like this:

You said you loved tea, but I don't believe you, because you always drink coffee.

You're right, it's false!

You told me you'd be at home tomorrow morning, but I think you'll be at work.

No, it's true. I have the day off tomorrow!

Wordspot

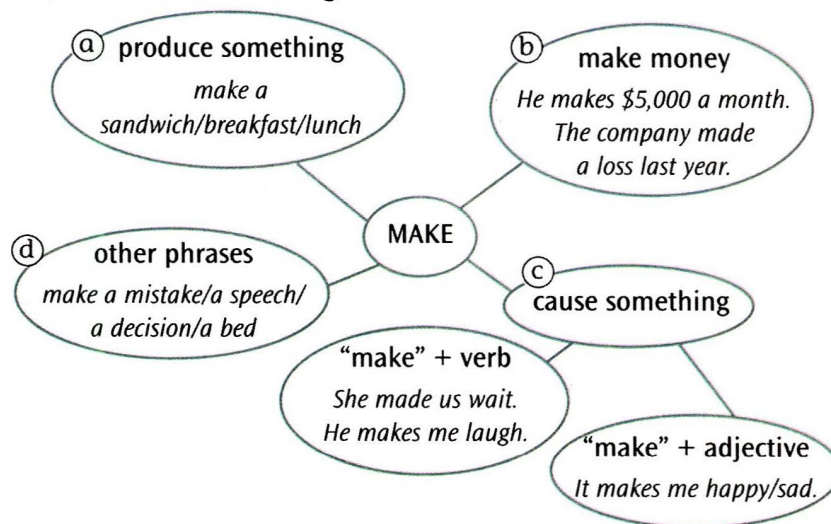
make

1 [15.2] Complete the blanks with a word from the box. Then listen and check your answers.

dinner noise a mess a cup of tea profit
a phone call feel angry cry friends

- a Wait a minute – I need to make before we go.
- b This company has made a big again this year.
- c Are you hungry? I'm going to make in a minute.
- d Stella's already made lots of at her new school. I think she's really happy there.
- e That washing machine's making a very strange
- f You look really tired. Sit down and I'll make you
- g Our math teacher's horrible – he made Lucy today.
- h Andrew really makes me He's always late!
- i Can I have a party here, Mom? We won't make
- j I hate flying – it makes me sick.

2 Underline the phrases with *make* in the sentences above and add them to the diagram.



3 Discuss with a partner. Think of two:

- things that make you angry.
- things that make a lot of noise.
- reasons why people make speeches.
- things that are made in Scotland.
- things that you can make with eggs.
- mistakes that you often make in English.

Find the differences between two stories

Useful language

Checking information

"What did he say about ...?"

"I didn't understand the part about ..."

"How many differences did you find?"

"I have ... differences."

"That's the same in both versions."

Describing the differences

"The first/second/third thing that's different is ..."

"On the recording he said that .../but in the article it says that ..."

"Another difference is that ..."

"Are you sure that's different?"

IS THIS MAN BRITAIN'S UNLUCKIEST CRIMINAL?



Local businessman, Edward Carson, stole clients' money

Everybody in the small town of Thornaby, in the north-east of England, had always thought that local businessman Edward Carson was an honest man. But when Carson lost all his money after a series of bad investments, he decided it was time to do something ...

Carson stole £60,000 of his clients' money and took an airplane to Monte Carlo, in the south of France, where he planned to get back the money he had lost by playing roulette. However, the casinos became suspicious of a man with so much cash and did not accept his bets. Carson returned to England.



Still thinking that gambling was the answer to his problems, he went to Doncaster racetrack, and put £10,000 on a horse called Lucky Seven. Sadly, the horse was certainly not lucky, and finished last in the race!

The casino in Monte Carlo where Carson tried to win back the money

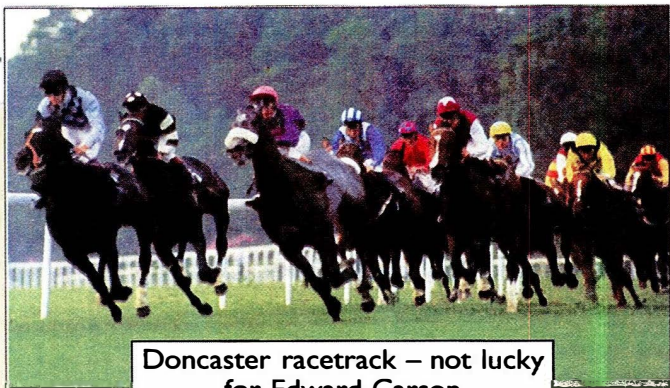
Preparation for task

1 Read the first paragraph of the article above and answer the questions.

- Who was Edward Carson, and was he honest?
- What was his problem?
- Can you guess what he decided to do?

2 Read the rest of the article and find:

- three ways in which he tried to make money.
- three ways in which he was unlucky.



Doncaster racetrack – not lucky for Edward Carson

Carson then invested the rest of his money in a travel company ... a few days later the company collapsed. Carson had lost everything.

He used his last £1,000 to buy a second-hand car. He had decided to kill himself by driving off the cliffs near his home town. Just before he reached the cliffs, a police officer stopped him for speeding. It was enough to make Carson think that perhaps he wasn't so unlucky after all. He told the police officer everything, and Carson was arrested.

At his trial, the judge gave him just one month in prison: He said Carson had probably suffered enough already.



The car in which Carson tried to kill himself – the police stopped him

Task

1 [15.3] After he left jail, Carson gave an interview about what happened. There are at least ten differences between the article and what he says happened. Make a note of any differences you hear.

2 Work in a group. Make a list of the differences between the article and Carson's version of what happened.

► Useful language

3 [15.4] Listen and check to see if you identified all the differences correctly.

Real life

Dealing with money



1 Where are the people in the pictures? In which places might they:

- a change money?
- b ask if they can pay by credit card?
- c ask about the exchange rate?
- d leave a tip?
- e ask for change?
- f ask if the service charge is included?
- g ask the price of something?
- h pay in cash?
- i find some pound coins?
- j open a bank account?

2 [15.5] You will hear five conversations. Match the conversations with the pictures above.


3 Listen to the conversations again and complete the information below.

- a The person wants to change \$..... into pesos. The exchange rate is to the dollar. She receives
- b The person needs £..... for the machine. Her friend gives her pound coins and fifty pence coins.
- c The girl would like to buy some earrings. The larger ones cost , and the smaller ones cost
She decides to buy She pays by credit card/in cash.
- d Which documents does the young man need to open a bank account?
- e What food and drinks did they have? How much did they cost? How much did they pay in total?

4 Look at these sentences. In each case, cross out the incorrect/unnecessary word.

- a What's the exchange rate for ~~the~~ US dollars?
- b I'd like to change this money into pesos, please. It's 200 of American dollars.
- c Do you have any change for £5?
- d Excuse me. How much are these earrings cost?
- e OK, I'll be take this pair.
- f Can I pay by my credit card?
- g What the documents do I need?
- h Can we to have the check, please?
- i Is the service charge included?
- j Do you think we should to leave a tip?

Pronunciation

 [15.6] Listen to the correct sentences from Exercise 4 and repeat them. Copy the intonation.

5 Look back at the pictures on page 129. Invent three conversations of your own for these situations. Use some of the phrases in Exercise 4 above.

Do you remember?

1 When he died, a millionaire left his money to his three children: Lucky Luke, **Clever Clare**, and Unfortunate Fred. What do you think they did with the money? For example:

Clever Clare invested some money in a computer company and made a profit.

- a) ... lost some money in a game of cards.
- b) ... saved some money in the bank.
- c) ... spent money on a lottery ticket and won.
- d) ... lent money to a friend who never paid it back.
- e) ... bet on a horse that won all its races.

2 What is the difference in meaning between the following pairs of verbs?

- a) He **earns** much more than me.
I never **win** any money in the competitions.
- b) I think we need to **borrow** some more money.
I can **lend** you £50, but that's all.
- c) She never **spends** any money on clothes.
You **waste** too much money on CDs.

3 Think of two reasons for each of these situations. Use the Past Perfect. Why:

- a) did Freda have a Band-Aid on her hand?
Because she had burned her hand on the stove.
- b) didn't Jim telephone his wife?
- c) did Martin crash his car?
- d) was Robert sitting in the bath in his clothes?
- e) did Jake run up and down the road shouting?

4 Put the sentences below into a logical order to make a story. What were Rita's actual words in a, b, d, e, and g?

- a) You said you'd never leave me.
- b) You said your name was Rita.
- c) I met you in a cocktail bar.
- d) One day you said you loved another man.
- e) You said I had a nice smile.
- f) Then you left me.
- g) You said you loved me.

module 16

Imagine ...

► Conditional sentences with *would*

► *Will and would*

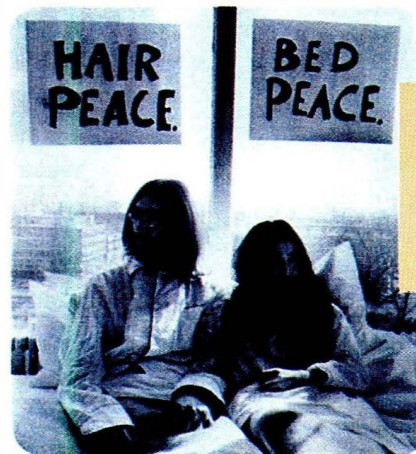
Task: choose people to start a space colony



Reading and vocabulary

1 MD John Lennon and Martin Luther King were famous in the 1960s. In pairs, discuss the following questions. Who:

- was a pop star?
- was a civil rights leader?
- won a Nobel Prize?
- was married to a Japanese woman?
- received an award from the British Queen?
- was a Christian minister?

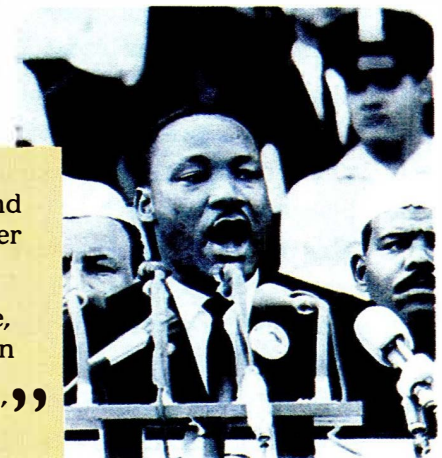


John Lennon
1940–1980, British singer and songwriter

“... imagine all the people,
sharing all the world ...”

Martin Luther King
1929–1968, Christian minister and Black American civil rights leader

“I have a dream ... that all God’s children, black and white, Catholic and Protestant, will join hands and sing ‘Free at last! Thank God, we are free at last!’”



2 Work in two groups. **Group A** reads the text about John Lennon. **Group B** reads the text on page 142 about Martin Luther King. Answer the appropriate questions below with other students in your group.

The Decade of Dreamers

John Lennon

A In 1969 ... many people were shocked to open their newspapers and see photographs of the Beatle, John Lennon, and his new Japanese wife, Yoko Ono, sitting in bed in their hotel room in the Amsterdam Hilton as a "peace protest."

Lennon, the writer of songs like "All you need is Love" and "Give Peace a Chance," put into words many young people's hopes for a new and better world. A world of freedom and peace, without wars, religion, governments, and even countries.

John Lennon had become more and more interested in these ideas in the late 1960s. In 1968 he traveled to India with the other Beatles to study meditation with the Maharishi, and in the same year he returned his MBE, a special award from the British queen, as a protest against Britain's part in the wars in Nigeria and Vietnam. In 1971 he wrote perhaps his most famous song, "Imagine," which expresses his ideas of the perfect world. It is particularly tragic that a man who believed so strongly in peace was to die so violently, fewer than ten years later, when he was shot in front of his New York apartment building by a crazy fan, Mark Chapman.

A Questions about John Lennon

- What did John Lennon and Yoko Ono do in 1969 as a peace protest?
- Which of John Lennon's songs were about changing the world?
- Why did he return an award to the British queen? When?
- When did he write "Imagine"? What was it about?
- How did John Lennon die?
- Where did he die and who killed him?


B Questions about Martin Luther King

- What happened in Washington in 1963?
- Who was speaking, and what famous words did he say?
- How many people joined the demonstration?
- Was the demonstration peaceful or violent?
- Which two things happened the next year?
- How and when did Martin Luther King die?

3 Ask and answer questions with a member of the other group. Student A asks the questions about Martin Luther King and Student B asks about John Lennon.


4 Discuss the following questions in groups.

- In what way were Martin Luther King and John Lennon "dreamers"?
- Who did more to change the world?
- Can you think of any other famous dreamers? What did they do? What did they believe in?

5  Complete the blanks in the table using your minidictionary if necessary. Be careful with the spelling of the adverbs.


	noun	adjective	adverb
a	peace	peaceful	peacefully
b		violent	
c	power		
d	freedom		
e	religion		religiously
f		tragic	
g			strongly

Pronunciation


 [16.1] Listen to the pronunciation of the nouns and adjectives in Exercise 5 above. Listen and mark the stress on words of more than one syllable. Practice saying the words.

Listening and vocabulary

Imagine

1  Look at the pairs of phrases below and mark them **S** if they have the same meaning and **D** if they are different.

- a peace/war **D**
- b above us/below us
- c it's easy/it isn't hard
- d heaven/hell
- e heaven/the sky
- f to kill/to die
- g to imagine/to wonder
- h a dreamer/a madman
- i possessions/things people own
- j greed/hunger
- k to share/to join

2  [16.2] Listen to the song and write in the phrases you hear. Compare answers with a partner.

3 a) Check (✓) the things below that John Lennon thought were good. Write a cross (X) next to the ones he thought were bad.

living in peace ✓	heaven
hell	countries
brotherhood	
living for today	possessions
greed	hunger
dreamers	

b) Which of his ideas do you agree with? Which do you disagree with?

IMAGINE

Imagine there's no (1)

(2) if you try

No hell (3)

(4) only (5)

Imagine all the people

Living for today

Imagine there's no countries

(6) to do

Nothing to kill or (7) for

And no religion too

Imagine all the people

Living life in (8)

You may say I'm (9)

But I'm not the only one

I hope some day you'll

(10) us

And the world will live as one

Imagine no (11)

I (12) if you can

No need for (13) or (14)

A brotherhood of man

Imagine all the people

(15) all the world

You may say I'm a (16)

But I'm not the only one

I hope some day you'll (17) us

And the world will live as one

Language focus 1

Conditional sentences with *would*

Underline the endings to the sentences **you** think are true. (You can underline both endings if you want.) Compare answers with a partner.

- 1 If there were no countries,
 - the world would be a better place.
 - life wouldn't be so interesting.
- 2 If people didn't have possessions,
 - people would share everything equally.
 - some people would still try to become rich and powerful.
- 3 If there weren't any wars,
 - we would all have a much better life.
 - people would soon get bored.
- 4 If everyone lived only "for today,"
 - we would enjoy life much more!
 - there would be chaos!

Grammar analysis


- 1 Answer the questions below.
 - a Are the sentences above about:
 - real situations?
 - imaginary situations?
 - b Which verb form comes after *if*?
 - c Which verb form can we find in the other part (the main clause) of the sentences?
 - d Are the sentences about the past/about the present/general?
- 2 a What are the negative and question forms of *would*?
 - b Notice the contractions with *would*.
I'd enjoy life more. I wouldn't enjoy life.
 What are the forms for *you, he, she, it, we, and they*?

► Language summary A, page 157.

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in parentheses.

- a If there (*be*) no countries, there (*not be*) any governments or laws either.
- b We (*not need*) policemen or jail if we (*not have*) any laws.
- c If countries (*not exist*) , people (*not have*) passports, and they (*can live*) anywhere in the world they liked.
- d If there (*not be*) any countries, everyone (*speak*) the same language in the end.
- e If people (*not have*) possessions, nobody (*need*) money any more.
- f Without money, we (*not have*) stores.
- g Many people (*lose*) their jobs if we (*not have*) stores
- h If we (*not own*) anything, what (*people/wear*)? Where (*they/sleep*)

2 a)  If you were the prime minister or president of your country, what would you do? Look at the ideas below.

build better hospitals/schools
 pay teachers/politicians more
 open more colleges/movie theaters
 make the weekend four days long/the working day shorter
 make the army bigger/smaller
 build more roads/shopping malls
 clean up cities/rivers
 give more money to old people/the unemployed

b) Compare answers with other students. Tell your partner about anything else that you would do, if you were president.

I would definitely build better ...

I think I'd pay teachers more.



Language focus 2

Will and would

1 Look at the picture. What is happening?

2 a) Match the words/thoughts below with the people in the picture.

“... and I promise that if I become president, I will open *more* schools and employ *more* teachers than ever before ...”

“If I was president, I'd close all the schools and there would be no teachers!”

b) Who says/thinks:

“teachers will work longer hours”

“there wouldn't be any homework”

“school vacations would be longer”

“all children will do a minimum of two hours' homework a day”

Grammar analysis

1 Which person in the picture

- a might **really** become president?
- b is only imagining?

2 Look at these examples:

If I become president, I'll open more schools.

If I was president, I'd close all the schools.

- a Which verb form is used after *if* in each type of sentence?
- b Which verb form is used in the other part of the sentence (the main clause)?

► Language summary B, page 157.

Practice

Complete the sentences below with your own ideas using *will* or *would*. Compare answers with a partner.

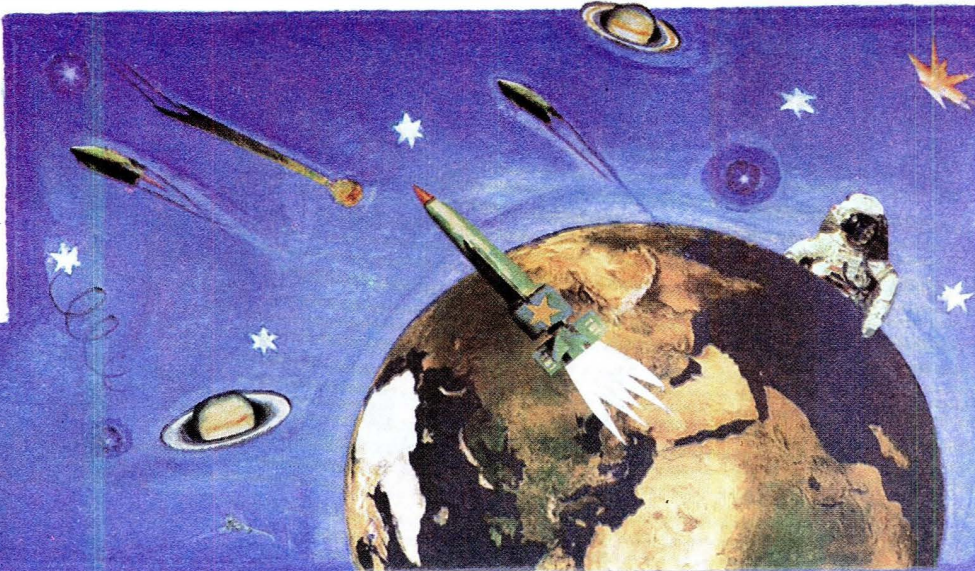
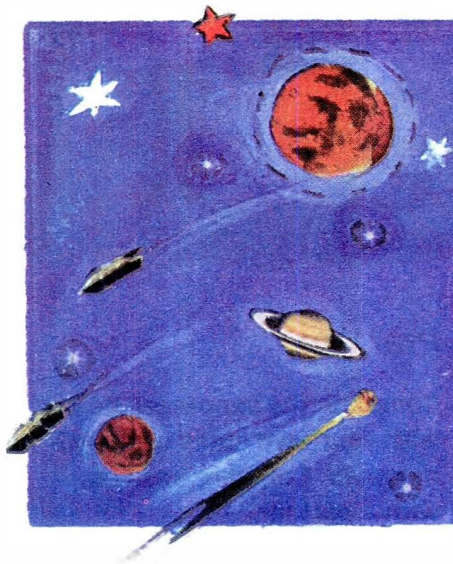
- 1 If I learn to speak English well, ...
- 2 If I could live anywhere in the world, ...
- 3 If I have time this week, ...
- 4 If I could change places with a celebrity, ...
- 5 If I go out tonight, ...
- 6 If I were invisible, ...
- 7 If I'm up early tomorrow, ...
- 8 If I could turn back time, ...
- 9 If I live to be eighty, ...
- 10 If I were very rich, ...

Pronunciation

[16.3] Listen to the phrases below and write 'll or 'd in the gaps.

- 1 I see you later.
- 2 I have a look.
- 3 I love to.
- 4 I think about it.
- 5 You like him.
- 6 That be great.
- 7 We be back soon.
- 8 I prefer not to.

Choose people to start a space colony



Useful language

Explaining why people are suitable

"He/She would be very useful because ..."

"He/She knows a lot about ..."

"He/She has experience of ..."

"He/She can have children ..."

"We need someone who can ..."

"He/She could ..."

Explaining why people are not suitable

"There might be problems with ..."

"He/She's too old to .../too young to ..."

"If ... happened, perhaps he/she would ..."

Preparation for task

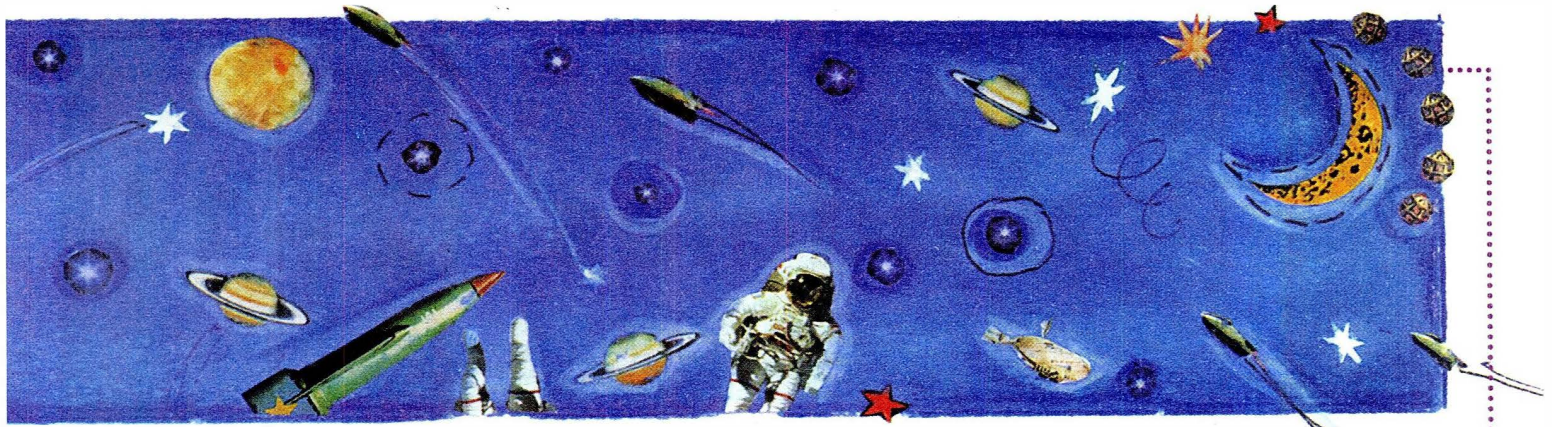
- 1 Do you believe that there is life on other planets? Do you think that humans will ever go and live on other planets?
- 2 Read about the new planet, Hero, and answer the questions. Compare your answers with a partner.
 - a Why do scientists think that humans will be able to live on Hero?
 - b Are there any aliens on Hero?
 - c How many people will they send to Hero, and why?
 - d When will these people come back to Earth?
 - e Will other people join the space colony later?
 - f What will the volunteers take with them?
 - g How long will it take to travel to Hero?
 - h How many people have volunteered to go?

THE NEW PLANET HERO

Scientists have discovered a new planet, Hero. They are very confident that human beings will be able to live there, since it has water, light, oxygen, and the temperature and air are similar to those on Earth. They have made tests and know that plants can grow there. They have not seen any alien life there, but they cannot be sure that it doesn't exist. They have decided to send a spaceship of people there from Earth to start a space colony, and a new human society. But there is space for only six people. These people will have to stay there for the rest of

their lives. No one else will be able to join the space colony for at least a hundred years. They will take enough food tablets for five years, together with four guns to protect themselves, and blankets, space-tents, etc. The spaceship will be controlled from Earth, so there will not be a pilot. The journey to Hero will last about ten weeks.

The organizers have asked for volunteers, but unfortunately only ten people have volunteered. The spaceship must leave in two days' time so there is no time to find new volunteers.



Ten Candidates

Natalya Boreva, 38, from Moscow. College lecturer in Ancient Greek Literature. Unmarried, no children. Very good health.

Jake Green, 42, from New York, USA. Engineer. Recently divorced after eighteen-year marriage. No children. Had cancer two years ago, but doctors say he is now clear.

René Bernard, 76, from Lyon, France. Retired doctor. Widower with seven adult children. Has traveled all his life and has been to every corner of the world. Lived alone on a Pacific island for three years. In very good health.

Claudette Parkin, 22, from Ohio, USA. Factory worker (married to Brandon below). Six months pregnant. Health OK, but heavy smoker.

Brandon Parkin, 25, also from Ohio, USA. Unemployed (married to Claudette above). As a teenager, he went to jail for a violent crime and because of this cannot get a job. Very loving husband to Claudette. Excellent health and very strong physically.

Gheeta Singh, 29, from Birmingham, UK. Nurse. Unmarried, no children.

Rashid Bengherbia, 56, from Algiers, Algeria. A judge in his own country. Has traveled the world and worked for many years as a United Nations representative. Widower with adult daughter. Good health.

Luciana DeSouza, 17, from Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. School student. Unmarried, no children. A very good singer. Wanted to become an opera singer before she heard about this mission. Parents have given permission for her to go. Excellent health.

Roberto Fratelli, 31, from Naples, Italy. Policeman. Divorced with three children. Won a special award from the Naples police for bravery last year. Very good health.

Lourdes Lagraña, 43, from Málaga, Spain. Agricultural scientist. Divorced with one adult child. Has worked in difficult conditions all over the world. History of health problems, but now says that these are finished.

Task

1 Work individually. Spend five minutes choosing the six best candidates, in your opinion.

► **Useful language**

2 a) Work in pairs. Compare the reasons for your choices. Try to agree on the six best candidates.

b) Discuss and compare answers in larger groups or with the class. Can you agree on the six final candidates?

3 Do you think a space mission like this will ever happen? Would you volunteer? Why/Why not?

Creative writing

You are one of the people traveling to Hero. You have just landed on the new planet. Write a letter to a friend back on Earth. Describe:

- the planet.
- the journey there.
- what you think of the other people you are with.
- how you feel at the moment.

3 Read about the ten candidates. Underline like this () the reasons that make them suitable to travel, and like this () the reasons that make them unsuitable.

Consolidation

modules 12–16

A Vocabulary: connections

Work in small groups. Take turns to choose a word from each box below and explain the connection between them. For example:

- scarf/velvet You can have a scarf which is made of velvet.
- chef/waiter A chef and a waiter both work with food.

If the other students think your explanation is convincing, you win a point.

You can use each word more than once.

scarf	invest money	chef
furniture	leave a tip	corkscrew
realtor	architect	make someone cry
accessories	doctor	designer goods
make a mistake	balcony	sign a contract
waiter	can opener	lighter
made of wood	velvet	sunglasses
lawyer	gloves	make a lot of money
wonderful view	waste money	driving instructor
honest	actor	patient

B Speaking: real life

Work in pairs. Act out the following situations.

1

A A friend from another country is coming to stay in your city for a few days. You are not sure about the best places to go/things to see. Ask B for some suggestions.

B Give A some suggestions about the best things to do/places to go with a visitor from another country.

2

A You are standing near the main entrance of your school. B is a new student. Answer his/her questions.

B Ask A where the nearest telephone is. You also need some coins for the telephone.

3

A You have lost your bag and you are upset. Tell B.

B Try to calm A down and help him/her to find the bag.

4

A You are talking to a travel agent about a vacation. Ask about the place you want to go to, the hotel, price, etc.

B You are a travel agent. Answer B's questions about the place he/she wants to go to.

C Speaking and listening

1 Work in pairs. The sentences below come from conversations. Read them and decide:

- who the speakers are.
- where they are.
- what the situation is.

- Yes, all the bedrooms are cleaned every morning, ma'am.
- Then he said he never wanted to see me again!
- If you gave me £10,000, I wouldn't go there again.
- I saw that someone had broken the kitchen window.
- I've been working on it all day, but I haven't finished it yet.

2 Choose a sentence and expand it into a conversation. Act it out for the other students like this:



3 [1] Listen to the conversations. Were yours very similar/different?

Communication activities

Module 1: Exercise 2, page 11

Group A

HOW ENERGETIC ARE YOU?

- 1 usually get up as soon as you wake up?
- 2 slow getting ready in the morning, or
..... usually leave the house quickly?
- 3 walk to school or work, or
..... usually go by car or bus?
- 4 How often run upstairs?
- 5 often sleepy after lunch?
- 6 energetic when you come home in the evening,
or usually tired?
- 7 How often stay up very late or all night?

Module 2: Exercise 2, page 16

Student A

Make these into complete questions and answers.

- 1 Which/was/first country/introduce/a driving test?
a France b Germany c Switzerland

Answer: France (*be*) the first country to introduce a driving test, in 1899.

- 2 Where/people/first/use/paper money?
a China b India c Japan

Answer: People first (*use*) paper money in China nearly 1,500 years ago.

- 3 What/Louis Réard/design/1946?
a the world's first bikini
b the world's first miniskirt
c the world's first jeans

Answer: He (*design*) the world's first bikini.

- 4 Where/first World Cup final/take place?
a Argentina b Brazil c Uruguay

Answer: The first World Cup final (*take*) place in Montevideo, Uruguay, in 1930. The home team (*win*) 4-2.

Module 2: Exercise 1, page 16

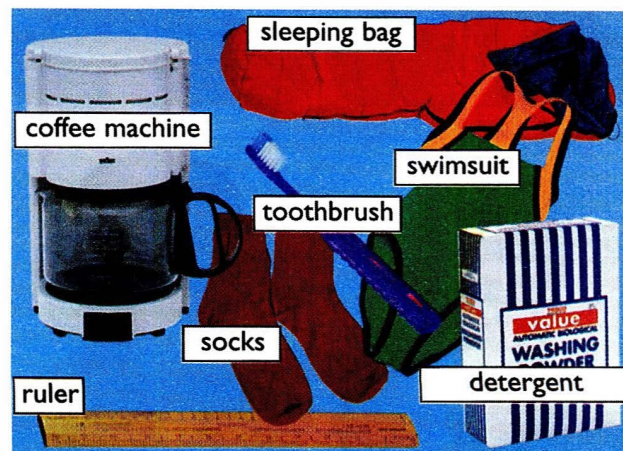
- 1 The first woman to graduate from college was Italian. Her name was Elena Cornaro, and she received a doctorate of philosophy from the University of Padova on June 25th, 1678 – nearly two hundred years before the first woman received a degree in the United States.
- 2 The world's first vending machine was on an Underground railroad station in London. It sold postcards.
- 3 The first McDonald's restaurant opened in December 1955, in Des Plaines, Illinois. Today there are over 26,000.
- 4 The first space flight took place at the end of 1951 when four monkeys named Albert 1, Albert 2, Albert 3, and Albert 4 flew into the stratosphere from White Sands, New Mexico. They all returned to Earth safely.

Module 11: Exercise 4, Page 90

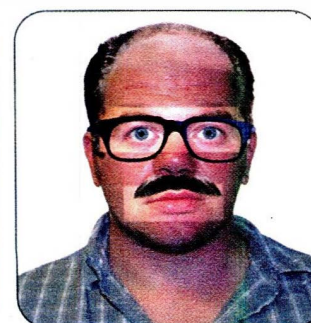
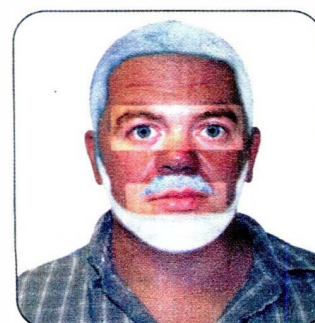
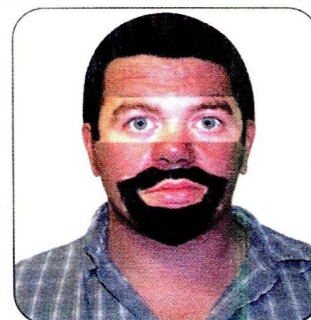
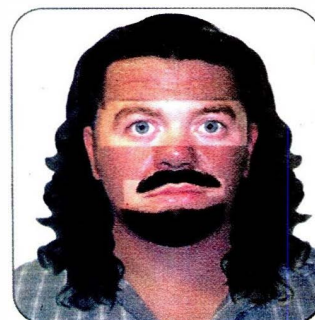
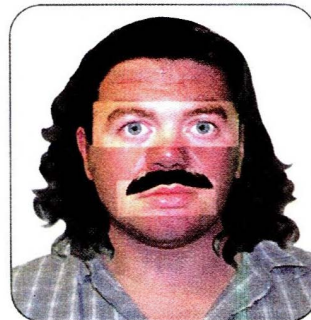
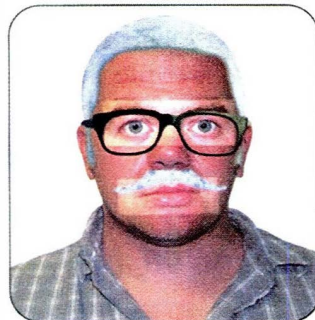
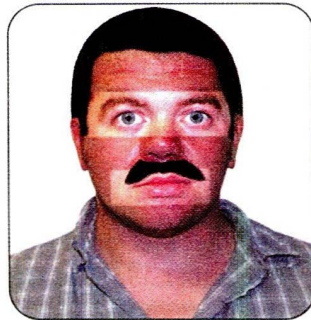
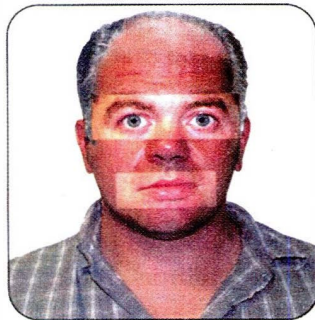
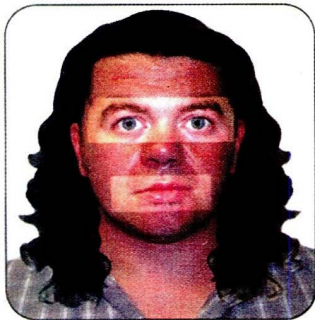
Answer: Obsession

Module 12: Practice, Exercise 2, page 103

Student A



Module 5: Task, Exercise 2, page 45



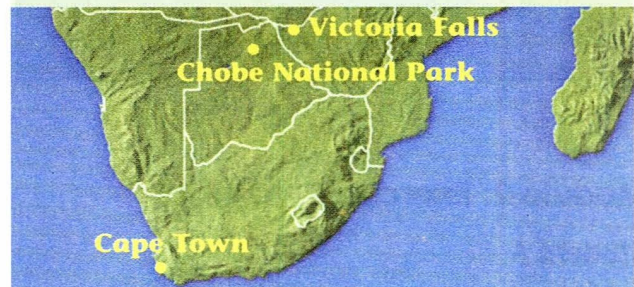
**Module 7: Wordspot (*know*),
Exercise 3, page 61**

Student A

- 1 What do you know about the weather in England?
- 2 Do you know how to say "I love you" in more than three languages?
- 3 Think of a place you know well – tell me three things about it.
- 4 How long have you known your best friend?
- 5 Do you know what to do if you spill red wine on your clothes?
- 6 Do you know the words of any English songs?

Module 6: Task, Exercise 2, page 53

African Wildlife Safari: Fact File



Main places to visit: The tour begins in Cape Town, South Africa's oldest and most elegant city. We then fly to Zimbabwe, where we see one of the natural Wonders of the World – Victoria Falls. From there we cross the border into Botswana, where we hope to find lions, rhinos and elephants in the world-famous Chobe National Park.

How many days? 14

Accommodations: In Cape Town and at Victoria Falls you will stay in comfortable four-star hotels. On our visit to Chobe, you can camp out under the African stars, or stay in one of our simple but comfortable safari lodges.

When to go? The dry season is the best time to see the animals (June through October – temperatures 25–40°C). The temperatures are highest in October (36–40°C).

Optional excursions: You can choose three of the following optional excursions.

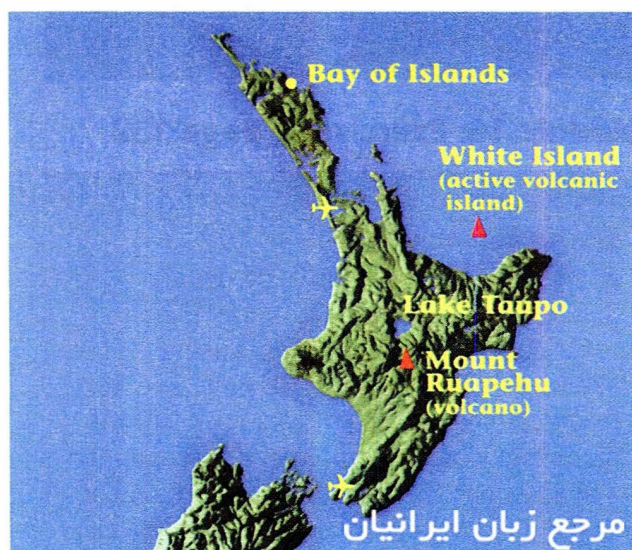
- A visit to an ostrich farm. You can ride on an ostrich!
- A visit to the vineyard region of Stellenbosch.
- A relaxing cruise along the River Zambezi.
- A chance to bungee jump at Victoria Falls.
- A visit to a Zulu village to see traditional Zulu dancing.

Complete the table to design your dream holiday.

Main places to visit	1
	2
	3
Number of days	
Accommodations in each place	
Best time to go and why	
Optional excursions you prefer	1
	2
	3

Module 8: Task, page 69

Student A



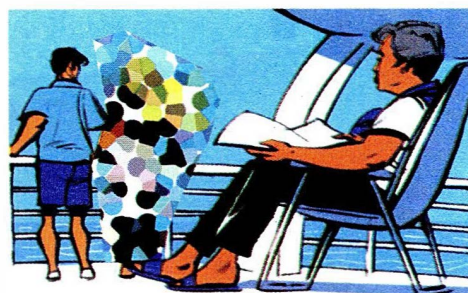
Module 11: Practice, Exercise 1, page 93

Student A

- 1 Do/Would you like (live) in the United States? Why/Why not?
- 2 Do/Would you like (own) a dog? What kind?
- 3 What kind of music do/would you most like (listen to)?
- 4 Which country in the world do/would you most like (visit)?
- 5 Do/Would you like (cook)? If yes, what's your specialty?

Module 10: Task, page 87

Group A



Shirley Yeats: on vacation on cruiseship/sail/near Malaysia



one day/go back to her cabin/could smell burning/look around/see smoke



immediately telephone the captain/then go up to help/soon fire out of control/captain decide to leave ship

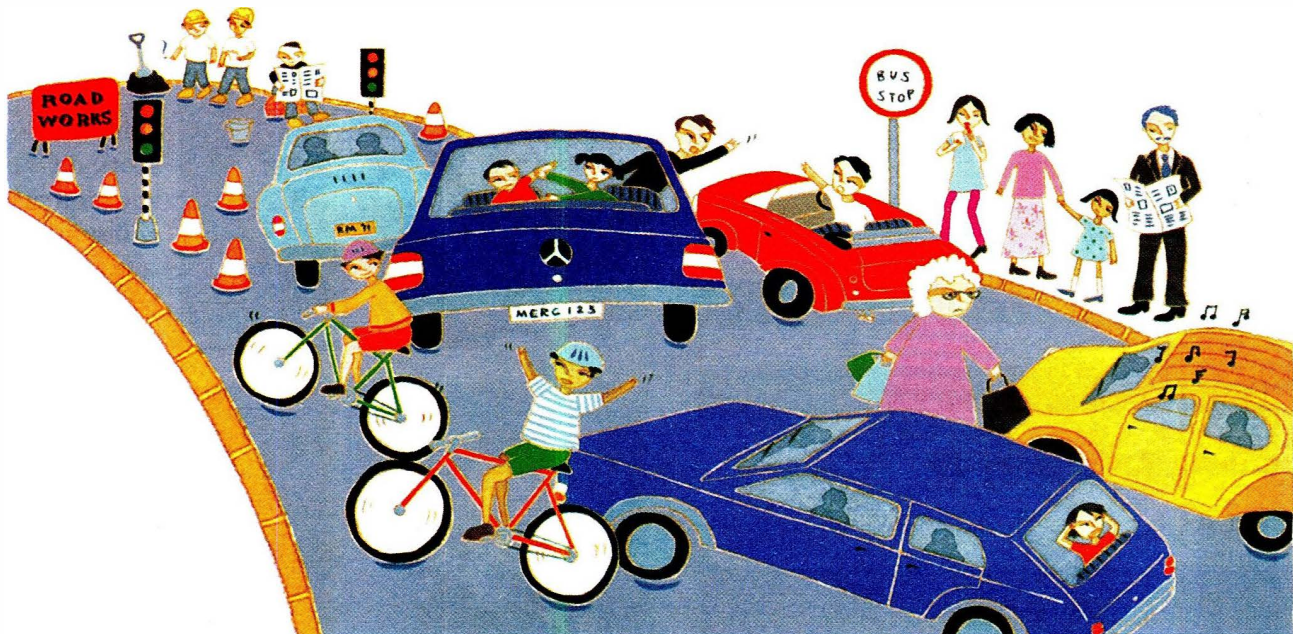


Shirley help passengers get into lifeboats/give first aid to other passengers/one of the last to leave/1,100 passengers get off safely

Module 15: Practice, Exercise 2, page 126

Answer: Willi was the owner of the store where Justine had bought the houseplant.

Module 10: Exercise 1, page 85



Module 12: Task, page 105

Student A

You are going camping in the mountains by a small lake for the weekend, with your friend. You will be ten kilometers from the nearest town – the weather forecast is quite warm, but it may rain. You are traveling by bicycle.

List • *lent*

Module 13: Task, page 113

Student A

JACK NOVAK

Probably the richest man in the whole of St. Helena, 70-year-old Jack Novak has been the owner of the biggest national newspaper, the *St. Helena Times*, since 1994. He moved to Queenstown a month ago. Police have been investigating his connections with the local mafia for more than a year, but so far they have not found any reason to arrest him. He promises to reduce taxes and spend a lot of money improving facilities in the city (for example, a new swimming pool and sports center). His slogan is, "With Jack Novak, everyone will be better off."

Module 16: Exercise 2, page 132

The Decade of Dreamers

Martin Luther King

B In 1963, more than 200,000 people demonstrated in Washington DC. Black Americans walked with show business stars like Marlon Brando, Judy Garland, and Bob Dylan, demanding civil rights for everyone, black and white. But most of all, people had come to hear Martin Luther King, the most exciting of the young black leaders. It was a time when, in many states of the US, African-Americans could not go to the same schools, ride on the same buses, or eat in the same restaurants as whites. The Washington police were very worried about so many thousands of people demonstrating in their city, but the day passed peacefully: King, a Christian minister, believed in nonviolent action, and the crowd listened quietly as King gave his famous speech beginning, "I have a dream..."

The next year, in 1964, the law in the US was changed to give black people civil rights, and Martin Luther King won the Nobel Prize for Peace. But he continued his work until his death, always fighting for "shared power." On the day of his assassination in April 1968, he was, as always, speaking out against violence.

Module 13: Exercise 2, page 111

Student A

- 1 did Johnny Dell Folley, from Texas, throw an egg in 1978 without breaking it?
a 9 m **b 98 m** c 980 m
- 2 wives did the English King Henry VIII have?
a one **b six** c ten
- 3 What is the best answer to the question, "How?"
a I am very well, thank you. And you?
b Good idea! c I'm going home.
- 4 is Hollywood star Danny De Vito?
a 1.52 m b 1.72 m c 1.92 m
- 5 was Princess Diana when she died in 1997?
a 26 b 30 **c 36**
- 6 Brazil is the biggest country in South America. is it?
a 8.5 million square kilometers
b 20.5 million square kilometers
c 65 million square kilometers

Module 2: Exercise 2, page 16

Student B

Make these into complete questions and answers.

- 1 What/was/first program/satellite TV?
a a boxing match b a soccer game
c a tennis match

Answer: The first program on satellite TV (be) a boxing match between Muhammad Ali and Joe Frazier in 1975.

- 2 When/the world's first Disney theme park/open?
a October 1961 b October 1971
c October 1981

Answer: Disney World (open) in October 1971. It (be) in Florida, in the USA.

- 3 Where/people/first/play/chess?
a Africa b Asia c Europe

Answer: People first (play) chess in what is now Pakistan, Asia, about 4,500 years ago.

- 4 When/the first *Star Wars* movie/appear?
a 1967 b 1977 c 1987

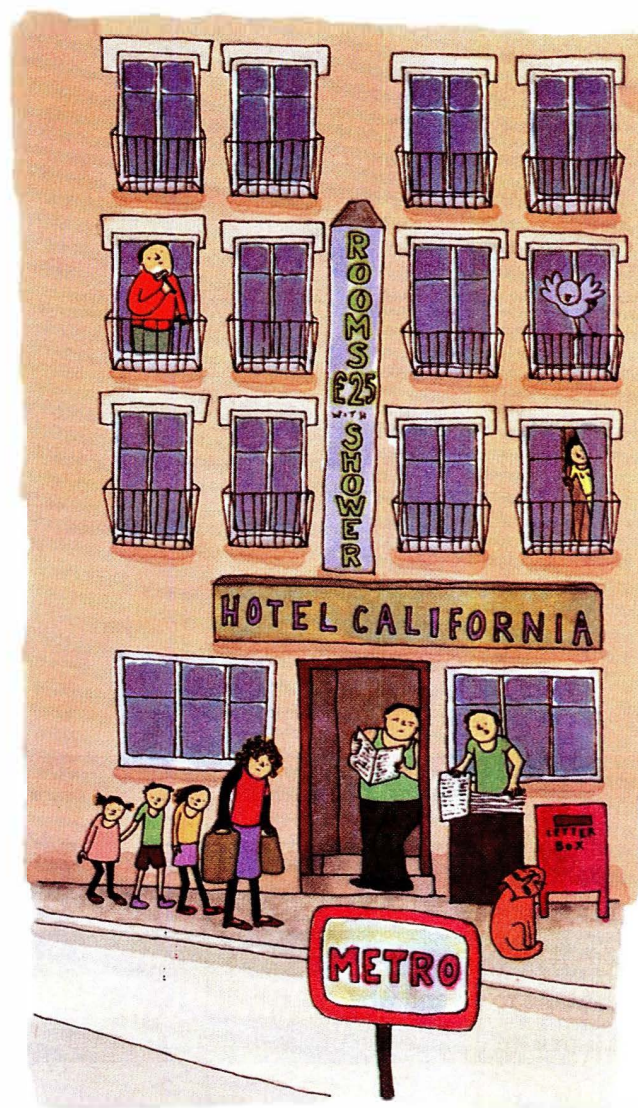
Answer: The first *Star Wars* movie (appear) in 1977.

Module 8: Vocabulary, Exercise 1, page 66

- 1 the Nile 2 Italy, Germany
- 3 Switzerland, Hungary, Austria
- 4 Greece 5 Venice 6 Algeria, Egypt, Libya
- 7 Spain, Italy, Switzerland, Germany 8 Tripoli
- 9 Barcelona 10 Rome, Athens
- 11 Egypt, Morocco, Tunisia, Libya, Algeria
- 12 Italy 13 Switzerland

Module 14: Exercise 2, page 119

Student A



Module 6: Task, Exercise 2, page 53

The Florida Experience: Fact File

Complete the table to design your dream vacation.



Main places to visit: Your vacation begins in the city of Orlando – the world’s theme park capital. From Orlando, it’s a short trip to Disney World, where you can choose between a number of theme parks, such as Disney’s Animal Kingdom, Disney’s Water Park or Disney’s Wide World of Sports. Finally, you will spend a week relaxing in the sunshine at Clearwater Beach on Florida’s Gulf Coast.

How many days? 14

Accommodations: You can choose between accommodations in rental houses (most have their own swimming pool) or comfortable motels just outside Orlando.

When to go? Temperatures in Florida are high all year round, from 20–25°C in winter, to 35°C or more in summer (June–August).

Optional excursions: You can choose three of the following optional excursions.

- A visit to the Kennedy Space Center.
- A visit to SeaWorld Adventure Park to feed the dolphins and see the whales.
- A visit to Fort Lauderdale – the “Venice of America.” Perfect for cruising.
- A visit to Miami, with its exciting mixture of American, Caribbean, and Hispanic cultures.
- A visit to Universal Studios to see the magic of the movies come to life.

Main places to visit	1
	2
	3
Number of days	
Accommodations in each place	
Best time to go and why	
Optional excursions you prefer	1
	2
	3

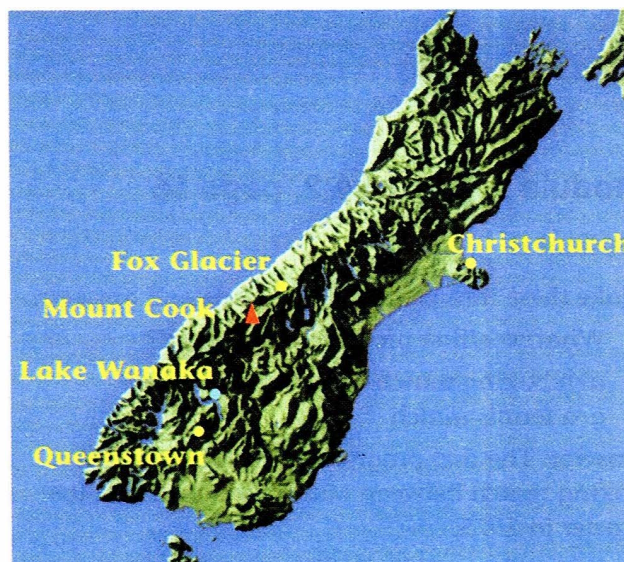
Module 7: Wordspot (know), Exercise 3, page 61

Student B

- 1 What do you know about the food in the US?
- 2 Do you know how to spell “disappointed?”
- 3 Think of a person you know well – tell me three things about him or her.
- 4 How long have you known the other people in this class?
- 5 Do you know what to say if someone says “Bless you!”?
- 6 Do you know the difference between the Present Perfect and the Past Simple?

Module 8: Task, page 69

Student B



Module 11: Practice, Exercise 1, page 93

Student B

- 1 Do/Would you like (watch) sports? Which one(s)?
- 2 Do/Would you like (speak) any other languages (apart from English!)?
- 3 Where do/would you like (go) next summer?
- 4 Do/Would you like (travel) by plane? Why/Why not?
- 5 Do/Would you like (go) to bed early? Why/Why not?

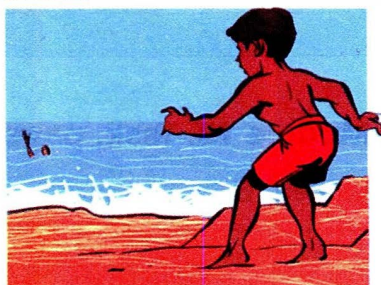
Module 10: Task, page 87

Group B



Simon Roland/10 years old/one day play on the beach near home/young man jump into water

a few minutes later/hear shouts/the young man drown/Simon decide to help



Simon swim 100 m/reach young man/young man unconscious/Simon pull him back to the beach

later/young man recover/ambulance take him to the hospital/thank Simon for saving his life



Consolidation Modules 7-11: Speaking, page 98

Situations for speaking.

- two people in the doctor's waiting room
- someone buying an unusual birthday present
- someone's first day in a new office
- someone trying to book a tour
- someone in a foreign country trying to buy a train ticket
- someone reporting a crime at a police station

Module 12: Practice, Exercise 2, page 103

Student B



Module 12: Task, page 105

Student B

You are taking three nephews and nieces (aged 4, 6, and 8) to a nearby city for the day. You are going to a science museum in the morning and to a zoo in the afternoon. It is an hour each way by train. It is fall and the weather forecast says it might rain.

List • umbrellas

Module 1: Exercise 2, page 11

Group B

HOW HEALTHY ARE YOU?

- 1 How many hours' sleep normally have?
- 2 normally sleep well or often awake in the middle of the night?
- 3 usually have a good breakfast in the morning?
- 4 How many cups of coffee normally drink every day?
- 5 smoke? If yes, a heavy smoker?
- 6 How often drink alcohol?
- 7 play any sports regularly?
- 8 In your own opinion, very fit and healthy, OK, or unfit?

Module 6: Task, Exercise 2, page 53

European City Tour: Fact File



Main places to visit: Your holiday begins in **London**, famous for its history and tradition. You can visit Buckingham Palace, and the Houses of Parliament, and of course many excellent theaters and stores. From there, we travel by high-speed Eurostar train to **Paris**. Take a romantic walk by the River Seine and visit Notre Dame, the Louvre, and many other famous places. Finally, we move on to the canals, museums, and coffee shops of **Amsterdam**.

How many days? 10. Either 3 days in each city or 6 days in one city (you choose) and 2 days in the others.

Accommodations: In all three cities, accommodations are in three-star or four-star hotels in the city center.

When to go? July and August are the warmest months (average 18–20°C), but there are fewer tourists in May–June (average 14–16°C) and in September (average 16–18°C).

Optional excursions: You can choose three of the following optional excursions.

London

- Visit Shakespeare's birthplace in Stratford-on-Avon.
- Take a day trip to the historic city of Cambridge.

Paris

- Enjoy a family day out at Disneyland, Paris.
- Day trip to the beautiful seventeenth-century palace of Versailles.

Amsterdam

- Visit the Keukenhof Gardens, the world's greatest flower show.
- Take a canal trip to the historic town of Arnhem.

Complete the table to design your dream holiday.

Main places to visit	1
	2
	3
Number of days	
Accommodations in each place	
Best time to go and why	
Optional excursions you prefer	1
	2
	3

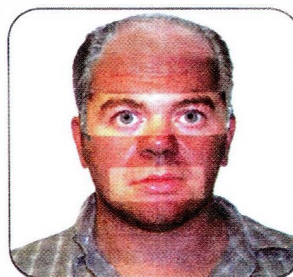
Module 13: Task, page 113

Student B

CRISTINA SCARLATTI

A well-known student politician, Cristina Scarlatti was born in Queenstown and was a student at the college. After finishing college she traveled overseas doing voluntary work for three years. Now 25 years old, she has been editor of the student newspaper *Young Voice* for two years. An excellent speaker, she is very popular with the young people of Queenstown. Her main promise is to stop corruption and to spend more money on schools and hospitals. Her slogan is, "Queenstown: Time for a Change."

Module 5: Exercise 2, page 44



Module 13: Exercise 2, page 111

Student B

- 1 the word "height"?
a **H-E-I-G-H-T** b H-I-G-H-T c H-I-T-E
- 2 did US President Bill Clinton pay for a haircut in the Los Angeles airport in 1993?
a \$8 b \$830 c **\$83,000**
- 3 What's the best answer to the suggestion "..... going to see a movie tonight?"
a **Yes, good idea.** b Yes, I will.
c Yes, I'd like.
- 4 have East and West Germany been reunited?
a since 1945 b since 1985
c **since 1990**
- 5 What is the best answer to the question, "How do you do?"
a Fine, thanks, and you?
b **How do you do?** c Not bad.
- 6 did world record holder Fred Rompelberg ride his bicycle in October 1995?
a 26 km an hour b 159 km an hour
c **268 km an hour**

Module 12: Task, page 105

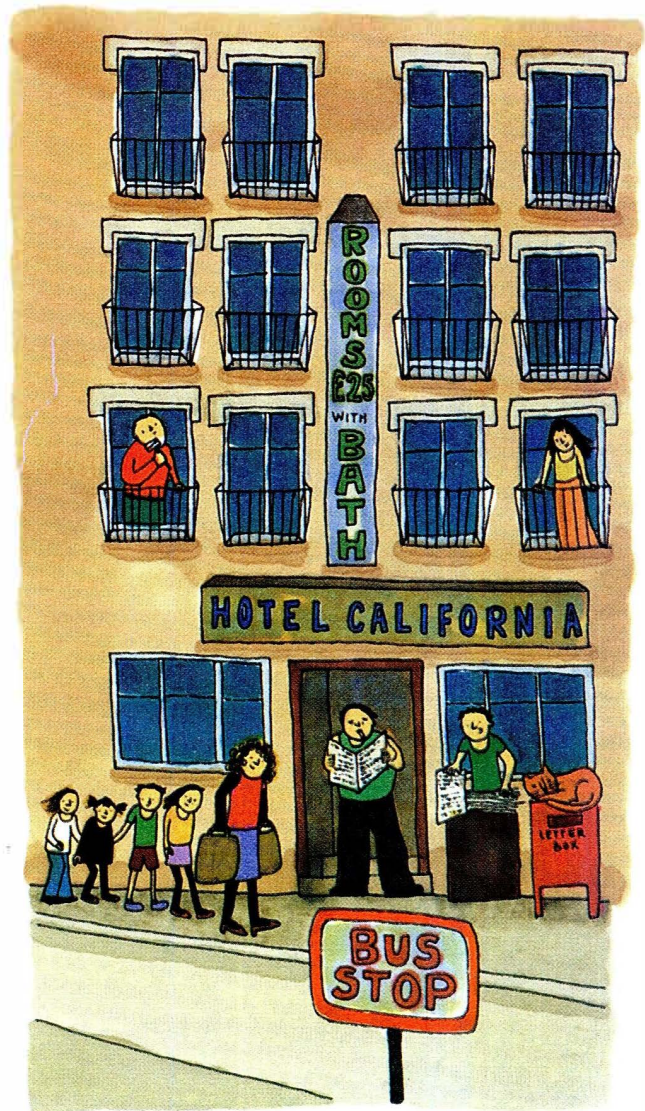
Student C

You are going with a group of friends for a picnic in the country by a river. It is the middle of summer and the weather forecast for the day is very hot. You are traveling by bus and the trip is two hours each way.

List • plastic plates and cups

Module 14: Exercise 2, page 119

Student B



Irregular verbs

Verb	Past Simple	Past Participle
be	was / were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
buy	bought	bought
can	could	been able
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed / dreamt	dreamed / dreamt
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone / been
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
lead	led	led
learn	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
leave	left	left

Verb	Past Simple	Past Participle
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
must	had to	had to
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read / rɪd /	read / red /	read / red /
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
smell	smelled / smelt	smelled / smelt
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilled / spilt	spilled / spilt
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Language summary

Module 1

A Question words

To ask about:	We use:
a thing	What's that under the table? Which coat is yours?
a time	When's your next vacation?
a place	Where do you go at Christmas?
a reason	Why do you always wear blue?
a person	Who's your favorite movie star?
the way you do something	How do you remember their names?
a period of time	How long does the program last?
the number of times you do something	How often do you see Maria?
the cost of something	How much is this?

- We use **what** if there are many possible answers.
What's your name?
- We use **which** if there are only a few possible answers.
Which girls' names begin with J and end with E?

Some other expressions with **what** and **which**.

What sort of computer do you have?
Which countries do you want to visit?
What time does the newsdealer open?
Which part of Poland is Wrocław in?
What color are his eyes?
What size are your shoes?

B Word order in questions

- With the verb *be* we put the subject after the verb.
They are in the kitchen. – Are they in the kitchen?
You were late for class. – Were you late for class?
- With the Present Simple, we put the auxiliary *do* or *does* before the subject.
You like skiing. – Do you like skiing?
Jamie works in that office. – Does Jamie work in that office?
- If **who** or **what** asks about the **subject**, the word order is the same as in a statement.
Who lives in that strange house?
What happens at midnight on December 31st?
- If **who** or **what** asks about the **object**, we put the auxiliary *do* or *does* before the subject.
Who **do** you (= subject) know in the class?
What **does** Gina (= subject) wear to the gym?

C Present Simple

	I / you / we / they	he / she / it
+	know	knows
?	Do you know?	Does he know?
–	I don't (= do not) know.	She doesn't (= does not) know.

We use the Present Simple for:

- habits. *He goes for a run before breakfast.*
- things that are generally / always true. *They live in a small town.*

These are the spelling rules for *he / she / it*.

Verb	Rule	Example
ends in a consonant + -y (fly)	change -y to -ies	This airline flies to Malawi.
ends in -s (miss) -x (fix) -ch (catch) -sh (wash)	add -es	She misses him. He fixes old cars She catches the 6:30 train. She washes her hair in beer.
do and go	add -es	He does all the cooking.
all other verbs	add -s	My sister speaks German.

D Showing how often things happen

1 Adverbs

never 0%	sometimes	often	usually / generally	always 100%
-------------	-----------	-------	---------------------	----------------

- With most verbs, we put the adverb before the main verb.
We never drink wine at lunchtime.
- With the verb *be*, we put the adverb after the verb.
He's always late.

2 Other phrases

every	day
once / twice / X times a	week month

- We usually put these phrases at the end of the sentence.
We go swimming every week.
She cleans her teeth twice a day.
- But we can also put them at the beginning of the sentence.
Every day I go for a short walk in the park.
Once a month we go out for a really nice meal.

Module 2

A Past Simple

Regular Past Simple forms end in **-ed** in the positive form.
But many verbs have an **irregular** past form (see list on page 148).

+	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	liked (reg.) saw (irreg.)	the movie.
-	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	didn't like / see	the movie.
?	Did I / you / he / she / it / we / they	like / see	the movie?

- 1 We use the Past Simple to talk about a finished action or state in the past. It can be something that happened once or many times. We often say **when** it happened.

He **died** in 1970. (= single action)

My dad **took** me to school every morning. (= repeated action)

We **lived** in a very small house in those days. (= state)

- 2 For regular verbs, we add **-ed** (**watched**, **started**). But there are some exceptions.

Verb	Rule	Example
ends in one -e (<i>hate</i>)	add -d	I hated spinach.
has one syllable and ends in vowel + 1 consonant (stop)	double the final consonant	They stopped for lunch.
ends in consonant + -y (<i>carry</i>)	change -y to -ied	He carried the bags all the way home.

- 3 The past of *be* is **was / were**.

+	I / he / she / it was late	we / you / they were late
-	I / he / she / it wasn't (= was not) late	we / you / they weren't (were not) late
?	Was I / he / she / it late?	Were we / you / they late?

B Time phrases often used in the past

1 In, on, at

These time phrases can also be used in the present and future.

- a **at** + time at 9:30
2/3 days on weekends at Christmas
- b **on** + day, date on Wednesday, July 10th
day + part of day on Wednesday morning
- c **in** + month in June year in 1993
season in the winter decade in the 1960s
part of day in the afternoon

2 Ago

Ago means *before now*. We use it to show how far in the past something happened.

I first met Jackie two years **ago**.

We do not use **ago** after specific time periods with *the*.

I met him ⁱⁿ the summer **ago**.

3 No preposition

We do not need *in*, *on*, or *at* when we use **last**, **yesterday**, **this**
I saw him yesterday / last Thursday / this morning.

Module 3

A Can, can't, have to, don't have to

1 Can, can't

+	I / you / he / she / we / they can	speak English.
-	I / you / he / she / we / they can't (= cannot)	speak English.
?	Can I / you / he / she / we / they	speak English?

We use **can** and **can't** to talk about what is or isn't possible.

- a ability
Sue **can** dance quite well but she **can't** sing.
- b permission
You **can't** come in here.
Can we go home now?

2 Have to, don't have to

	I / you / we / they	he / she / it
+	have to go now	has to go now
-	don't have to go now	doesn't have to go now
?	Do I have to go now?	Does he have to go now?

- a We use **have to** if something is necessary (or very important).
In my country you **have to** stay in school until you are fifteen.
- b **Have to** is very similar to **must**.
We **must** go now. (= it's necessary)
We **have to** go now. (= it's necessary)
- c We use **don't have to** if something is not necessary or important.
We **don't have to** wear a uniform at my new school.

REMEMBER!

Don't have to is **not** the same as **mustn't**.

You **mustn't** take any photographs. (= you can't, it's prohibited)

You **don't have to** take any photographs. (= it's not necessary)

B Should / Shouldn't

+	I / you / he / she / we / they should buy a dictionary.
-	I / you / he / she / we / they shouldn't worry about the exam.
?	Should I / you / he / she / we / they come in now?

- 1 We use **should** to say that something is a good idea, or the right thing to do. We use **shouldn't** to say that something is not a good idea or not the right thing to do.
You **should** try to learn three new words every day.
Those CDs **shouldn't** be on the floor!

- 2 *Should* is less strong than *have to*.
 We **have to leave** now or we'll be late. (= this is necessary)
 We **should leave** now or we'll be tired for work tomorrow. (= this is a good idea)

Module 4

A Present Continuous

+	-	?
I'm going.	I'm not going.	Am I going?
You / We / They're going.	You / We / They aren't going.	Are you / we / they going?
He / She's going.	He / She isn't going.	Is he / she going?

- 1 We use the Present Continuous for: something happening at this moment or something happening in the present period, but perhaps not at this moment.
Sue's phoning her boyfriend.
We're studying French this term.

- 2 For *-ing* forms with most verbs, we add *-ing* (*starting, going, buying*). But there are some exceptions.

Verb	Rule	Example
ends in one -e (<i>make</i>)	take away -e	What are you making?
has one syllable and ends in vowel + 1 consonant (<i>stop</i>)	double the final consonant	Why is the train stopping?
ends in -ie (<i>lie</i>)	change -ie to -y	He's lying in bed.
has two syllables, ends in vowel + 1 consonant, stress on the last syllable (<i>begin</i>)	double the final consonant	I'm beginning my new course today.

- 3 We do not usually use some verbs in the continuous form. These verbs describe states (things which stay the same): *believe, know, like, love, own, remember, understand, want*.
I believe what she said. (not I'm believing what she said.)

B Present Continuous for future arrangements

- 1 We use the Present Continuous to talk about what we have arranged to do in the future.
 A: What **are you doing** next weekend? (= what have you arranged?)
 B: **I'm taking** my little sister to the zoo on Saturday afternoon, then **I'm cooking** lunch for some friends on Sunday. (= I've arranged to take my sister to the zoo, and I've invited my friends to lunch)
- 2 When we use the Present Continuous like this, we either give a future time (for example *next weekend*), or we know from the situation that we are talking about the future.

Module 5

A Comparative and superlative adjectives

1 One-syllable adjectives and two-syllable adjectives ending in -y

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative	Spelling rule
cheap dark	cheaper darker	the cheapest the darkest	most adjectives: + -er, the -est
nice large	nicer larger	the nicest the largest	adjective ends in -e: + -r, the -st
thin big	thinner bigger	the thinnest the biggest	1 vowel + 1 consonant: double the consonant
happy	happier	the happiest	change -y to -i

2 Other two-syllable adjectives and longer adjectives

famous	more famous	the most famous
attractive	more attractive	the most attractive

But we usually use *-er* and *the -est* with: *clever, quiet, simple, gentle*.

3 Irregular forms

good bad far	better worse farther / further	the best the worst the farthest / furthest
--------------------	--------------------------------------	--

4 Prepositions in comparative phrases

*I think he's **more attractive than** his brother.*
*Your eyes are very **similar to** your mother's.*
*Are these glasses **different from** your old ones?*
*Do you think he **looks like** his father?*
*No, I'm sure they're not **the same as** mine.*
*My little sister's **the tallest in** the family! (not ~~of~~ the family)*

5 Making comparisons with nouns

*Julie spends **more time** at the gym than anyone I know.*
*Our team won **the most games** last year.*

B Describing what people look like

- 1 We use questions with *have to* to ask about features, for example, *nose, mouth, eyes, beard, mustache, glasses*.
 Does he have a beard (noun)? No, he doesn't
 Does she have big eyes (noun)? Yes, very big.
- 2 We use the verb *be* in these questions.
 Is he tall or short (adjective)? He's very tall.
 How old (adjective) is she? She's about 35.
 How tall (adjective) is he? He's about average height.
 What color (noun) is her hair? It's darkish. (= quite dark)
 What size (noun) are her feet? Size 38, I think.
- 3 We use the question *What does he / she look like?* to ask about appearance in general.
 A: What **does** your boyfriend **look like**?
 B: He's tall and quite good-looking, and he has long hair.

- 4 We use the question *What is / are (noun) ... like?* when we mean *Tell me about ...*, *Describe ...* or *Give me your opinion about ...* It is used for character, as well as appearance.

A: *What's your piano teacher (noun) like?*

B: *Oh, he's lovely. He's very old and gray, and patient with me.*

REMEMBER

We do not use *like* in the answer. He's ~~like~~ lovely.

We do not use *How ...?* to ask about appearance or character.

We use *How ...?* to ask about things that change, for example health, work.

A: *How are you this morning?* B: *I'm fine, thanks.*

A: *How was school today?* B: *Really good, I got an "A" in English!*

Module 6

A Intentions and wishes

1 Going to, planning to

+	I'm You / We / They're He / She's	going to planning to	buy a car.
-	I'm not You / We / They're not He / She's not	going to planning to	buy a car.
?	Am I Are you / we / they Is he / she	going to planning to	buy a car?

- a We use *going to* to talk about what we intend to do in the future. It can be the near future or the more distant future.
I'm going to be a famous actor.
Are you going to see him again?
- b We normally use *planning to* when we have thought carefully about the plan and decided how to do it.
What are you planning to say at the meeting?
I'm planning to leave this company next year.

2 Would like to, would prefer to

+	I / You / He / She / We / They	would like to have a vacation. would prefer to go by train.
-	I / You / He / She / We / They	wouldn't like to miss the plane.* wouldn't prefer to sit at the back.*
?	Would I / you / he / she / we / they	like to stay in a hotel? prefer to pay by credit card?

* These negative forms exist but we do not use them very often.

- a We use *would like to* to say what we want to do.
I'd like to travel around the world.
It is less direct than *want to* and we often use it to be polite.
I'd like to change some money, please.
- b We use *would prefer to* to say we want to do something more than something else.
I'd prefer to go on a biking tour. Beach vacations are boring.
Would you prefer to have a view of the sea or the mountains?

B Will for predictions

+	I / You / He / She / We / They	'll be here at six.
-	I / You / He / She / We / They	won't see him next week.
?	Will I / you / he / she / we / they	have time to phone them?

- 1 We use *will* to say what we **expect** to happen. We use it when there is **no** particular plan or intention.
The weather will be lovely in June. (= this is what I expect)
Will there be a lot of people? (= what do you expect?)

Notice the difference between *will* and *going to* here.

We're **going to visit** the National Gallery today. (= this is what we intend / plan)

It'll **probably be** really busy and we'll **have to wait** in line. (= this is what I expect, but it's **not** a plan)

- 2 We often use *will* with *I think* or *I don't think*.
Do you think we'll win?
I don't think she'll be very pleased about this.
- 3 Notice the *will* forms of *can* and *have to* / *must*.
You'll be able to see the mountains from your hotel room.
London's terribly expensive! You won't be able to buy anything.
If you go to Warsaw in March, you'll have to bring a warm coat.

Module 7

A Present Perfect

We form the Present Perfect with *have / has* + past participle. Regular past participles end in *-ed* in the positive form. Many verbs have an **irregular** past participle (see list on page 148).

+	I / you / we / they've finished / won	he / she / it's finished / won
-	I / you / we / they haven't finished / won	he / she / it hasn't finished / won
?	Have I / you / we / they finished / won?	Has he / she / it finished / won?

We use the Present Perfect to talk about the past and present together. The Present Perfect tells us something about the present.

I've met your new boss before. (= I know something about her now)

They've left the country. (= they are not in the country now)

B Present Perfect and Past Simple with for

- 1 We use the Present Perfect with *for* to talk about an action or state which continues from the past to the present.
My dad's worked at the post office for fifteen years.
- 2 We use the Past Simple with *for* to talk about a past action or state in a period of time which is finished.
We had our dog for two years and then he ran away.

C Present Perfect and Past Simple with other time words

- 1 To talk about actions or states in a period of time that is finished, we use the **Past Simple** with:
 - a days, dates, times, years.
*They arrived **on Saturday**, **at about four o'clock**.*
*I started college **in 1998**.*
 - b *last* and *ago*.
*Did you see the soccer game **last** night?*
*They moved away two or three years **ago**.*
 - c questions and statements with *when*.
*She got married **when** she was seventeen.*
***When** did you get home?*
- 2 To talk about actions or states in a period of time which continues from the past to the present, we use the **Present Perfect** with:
 - a no time reference.
He's lived in lots of different countries.
 - b adverbs such as *never*, *already*, *just*, *recently*, *lately*, *yet*.
*I've **never** liked eggs.* (= not at any time)
*He's **already** gone.* (= before now, maybe before you expected)
*Mom's **just** made a cake.* (= a short time before now)
*She **recently** got married.* (= not long ago)
*They've had a lot of problems **lately**.* (= like recently, but goes at the end of the sentence)
*Have you finished **yet**? I haven't had time **yet**.* (= before now, not used in the positive form)
 - c *this*.
*I haven't seen Marco **this morning**.* (= the morning isn't finished)
 - d *times*.
*I've told him to clean his room **three times**!*

Module 8

A Using articles

- 1 We use *a* or *an* the first time we mention something. When we mention it again, we use *the*.
*I saw **a** beautiful vase in **an** antique shop a few days ago. When I went back to **the** shop yesterday, **the** vase wasn't there any more!*
- 2 We do **not** use *the*:
 - a to make general statements about a group of things or people.
*Dogs **make** very good pets.*
*Americans **eat** a lot of fast food.*
 - b with many place names.

continents	Africa, Asia	countries	Spain, Poland
cities	Madrid, Sydney	lakes	Lake Como
islands	Sicily, Jersey	hills	Primrose Hill
mountains	Mount Fuji	streets	Oxford Street
roads	Camden Road		

- 3 We use *the*:
 - a with some place names.

oceans and seas	the Arctic Ocean, the Tasman Sea
rivers	the Danube, the Thames
mountain ranges	the Alps, the Himalayas
countries which are republics or unions	the UK, the Czech Republic
groups of countries and islands	the Netherlands, the West Indies

- b with superlative forms.
***the** longest river in the world*
- c when there is only one and we see it as unique.
***the** Sun, **the** Earth, **the** Moon, **the** Sky, **the** Pope*

B Phrases with and without the

- a with *the*
on the left, on the right, in the middle, in the center
in the east, in the west, in the south, in the north
on the floor, on the wall, on the ceiling
on the coast, on the border
at the top, at the bottom
in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening
- b without *the*
at home, at work, at school, at college
in bed, in jail
at night, at sunset
on vacation

Module 9

A May, might, will, definitely / probably etc., for making predictions

I / You / He / She / We / They	will definitely	win the game. (= you are sure this will happen)
	will probably may (not)	win the game. (= you are less sure)
	might (not)	win the game. (= you think it's possible)
	probably won't	win the game. (= you think it's less possible)
	definitely won't	win the game. (= you are sure this won't happen)

Notice that *definitely* and *probably* come after *will* but before *won't*.

B Present tense after *if*, *when*, *before*, and other time words

Look at these examples, which talk about the future.

I'll go to the bank if I have time.

(not *I'll go to the bank if I will have time.*)

When Clarke arrives, I'll ask him about the money.

(not *When Clarke will arrive, I'll ask him about the money.*)

- 1 We are talking about the **future**, but we use a **present** tense:
 - a *if / when*
If Sandra phones, I'll tell her. (= you think Sandra might phone)
When Sandra phones, I'll tell her. (= you know Sandra will phone)
 - b *when / as soon as*
As soon as John arrives, we'll have lunch. (= you want to have lunch immediately)
When John arrives, we'll have lunch. (= it is not so urgent)
- 2 In the other part of the sentence (the main clause), we use:
 - a a future verb form.
Next time I see you, I'll be married!
I won't see the children before I leave.
When the rain stops, I'm going to take the dog for a walk.
As soon as I finish work on Friday, I'm flying to New York.
 - b other modal verbs.
Before you go out, you should do your homework.
If you're good, I might buy you some ice cream.
If Sue comes on Saturday, she may bring her new boyfriend.
When François gets here, we can start the meeting.
After you finish that, you must go to bed.

Module 10

A Used to

+	I / You / He / She / We / They	used to	walk to school.
-	I / You / He / She / We / They	didn't use to	have a car.
?	Did I / you / he / she / we / they	use to	go by train?

- 1 We use *used to*:
 - a for actions that happened more than once in the past.
He used to wait for me at the school entrance.
 - b for past states.
They used to live in a house by the river.
- Notice that the action or state may **not** be true now.
We used to have two dogs. (= we don't have the dogs now)
 Or it may be true now.
I didn't use to like math at school. (= and I still don't like it)
- 2 We can always use the Past Simple instead of *used to*.
We had a dog called Tilly. I didn't like math.
 - 3 We do **not** use *used to* for actions that happened only once.
I went skiing last Christmas. (not *I used to go*)

B Past Continuous

+	I / He / She was looking	We / You / They were looking
-	I / He / She wasn't looking	We / You / They weren't looking
?	Was I / he / she looking?	Were we / you / they looking?

- 1 We use the Past Continuous to talk about actions in progress:
 - a at a certain time in the past.
I was driving home at 6:30 this evening.
 The action started some time **before** 6:30.
 - b when another (completed) action happened.
I was cooking dinner when she came home.
 The Past Continuous action started first.
- 2 We often use the Past Continuous to describe the background situation in a story. The main events are in the Past Simple.
I was sitting in my car, listening to the radio, when suddenly that idiot crashed into me!
- 3 Sometimes the other action interrupts the Past Continuous.
She was crossing the street when she slipped on some ice.
 (= she stopped crossing the street)
- 4 When two actions happen one after the other, we use the Past Simple.
When I heard the crash, I ran to the end of the street.

REMEMBER!

State verbs are not used in the continuous form.

I was knowing her when we were children.
 knew

- 5 We use *when*, *while*, and *as* to join Past Continuous and Past Simple parts of a sentence.
I saw Karl when / while / as I was getting off the train.
 We do not use *while* with a single completed action in the Past Simple.
The sun was shining when / while / as we got to the top of the hill.

Module 11

A Gerunds (-ing forms)

We use gerunds (-ing forms) in the same way as nouns / pronouns:

- a as the subject of the sentence.

Learning English is very important for my career.

Going to the gym regularly is very good for you.

- b after certain verbs that express likes and dislikes, for example *like*, *love*, *enjoy*, *hate*, *don't mind*, *can't stand*, *feel like*.
I always enjoy seeing my grandchildren.
I don't mind cooking dinner, if you're tired.

REMEMBER!

A large number of other verbs are also followed by the gerund, for example *suggest*, *finish*, *give up*, *go on*, *spend time*, *imagine*.

Mary suggested **having** a break, and the others agreed.
 I finished **writing** that report at 2 a.m.

- c after prepositions.
Do you feel OK about staying here on your own?
Did you know Ferdie's afraid of flying?

- 1 Sometimes we want to talk about an action that started in the past and continues up to the present. We can call this the "unfinished past." We can use both the Present Perfect Simple and the Present Perfect Continuous.

I've worked here since I was twenty-two.

I've been reading all afternoon.

We often use the Present Perfect Continuous here, because continuous forms show **duration**.

- 2 But if a verb describes a **state** (for example, *like, love, be, have, see, know*, etc.), we cannot put it in the continuous form.

I've known her all my life. (not *I've been knowing*)

We've had this car for ages. (not *We've been having*)

- 3 The following time phrases are often used to describe "the unfinished past."

How long have you been waiting?

I've been trying to speak to him all morning / all day, etc.

B For and since

The use of *for* and *since* is similar, but *for* is used with periods of time.

She's been on the phone for hours.

I haven't seen her for about three weeks.

Since is used with points in time.

He's been off work since last Friday.

We've been living here since about 1995.

- 2 We usually use **any** in:

a sentences with a negative meaning.

There aren't any movie theaters where I live.

b questions, when the answer can be "yes" or "no."

Are there any stores near your house?

- 3 **No** means the same as *not any*.

There's no bread left.

Notice that the verb is positive. We do **not** say:

~~*There isn't no bread left.*~~

- 4 **A few** means "a small number of." We usually use it in positive sentences.

I have a few minutes now, if you want to speak to me.

- 5 We usually use **a lot of** (also **lots of**) in positive sentences, meaning "a large number of."

There are a lot of nice places to eat around here.

- 6 We usually use **many** and **much** in negative sentences or in questions.

I don't have much money at the moment.

Are there many tourists at this time of year?

- 7 **Too much** and **too many** have a negative meaning. We use them when we mean "more than the right amount."

I can't work here – there's too much noise.

We've too many things in this room – it's impossible to move.

- 8 **Not enough** has a negative meaning. We use it when we mean "less than the right amount."

There aren't enough places for children to play.

Module 14

A Some, any, and quantifiers

With plural nouns		With uncountable nouns	
(not) many	minutes	(not) much	time
too many	pounds	too much	money
a few			
With plural nouns and uncountable nouns			
some	minutes		
(not) any	pounds		
no	time		
a lot of (also "lots of")	money		
not enough			

REMEMBER!

We do not use *some, any, and other quantifiers* with singular countable nouns.

Would you like ~~some~~ a piece of cake?

- 1 **Some** means "an indefinite number of." We usually use it in positive sentences.

There are some beautiful pictures in the museum.

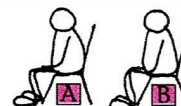
We can also use *some* to make questions more positive, for example, if you expect the answer "yes."

Would you like some more wine? (= an offer)

Could you get me some milk? (= a request)

B Describing where things are

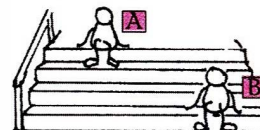
- 1 A is **in front of** B.
B is **behind** A.



- 2 A is **next to** C.
B is **near** A and C.



- 3 A is **above** B.
B is **below** A.



- 4 A is **between** B and C.



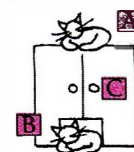
- 5 A is **opposite** B.



- 6 A is **inside** C.
B is **outside** C.



- 7 A is **on top of** C.
B is **at the bottom of** C.



Module 15

A Past Perfect

We form the Past Perfect with *had* + past participle. Regular past participles end in *-ed*. Many verbs have an **irregular** past participle (see list on page 148).

+	I / You / He / She / We / They'd gone
-	I / You / He / She / We / They hadn't gone
?	Had I / you / he / she / we / they gone?

- We use the Past Perfect to show that one action happened before another in the past, and that the first action finished before the second action started.
*When I **looked** out of the window, the rain **had stopped**.*
- We often use the Past Perfect with *because* to explain a past situation.
*Patrick **felt** sick because **he'd eaten** all the chocolates.*
- To show that two actions happened at the same time, we use the Past Simple.
*He **woke up** when the telephone **rang**.*
- If the sequence of actions is clear from the context, we do not use the Past Perfect.
*I **left** the house and **went** to the station. (not I ~~had left~~ the house and went to the station.)*

B Reported speech

	Direct speech (someone's actual words)	Reported speech (reporting what someone said)
	Before we went on vacation, the travel agent said:	
Present Simple	"The hotel is near the sea."	... (that) the hotel was near the sea.
Past Simple	"Everyone enjoyed the tour last year."	... (that) everyone had enjoyed the tour last year / the year before.
Will	"The weather will be lovely."	... (that) the weather would be lovely.

- The verb forms change because what the travel agent said is now in the past.

Notice that:

- we can leave out *that* in reported speech.
She said the hotel was very cheap.
 - we can change *last year* to *the year before* and *yesterday* to *the day before*.
 - we sometimes need to change the possessive adjective.
"My son lives in Monte Carlo," she said.
*She said (that) **her** son lived in Monte Carlo.*
- Say and tell
*He **said** (that) he was a movie star. He ~~said me~~ ...*
*He **told me** (that) he was a movie star. He ~~told (that)~~ he ...*
 - If what the person said is still true, we do not need to use reported speech.
"Australia's really beautiful."
He said (that) Australia's really beautiful.

Module 16

A Conditional sentences with *would*

If + Past Simple + *would* (n't) + infinitive without *to*

*If I **became** president, I **would build** more roads.*
*I **wouldn't pay** politicians more.*
***would** you **vote** for me?*

We use conditional sentences with *would* to talk about imaginary situations. The verb after *if* is in the past tense, but we are **not** talking about the past. We are talking about a general present time.

*If I **had** a ticket, I'd **come** with you. (= the speaker doesn't have a ticket)*

*If you **lived** in the country, you'd **get** bored. (= the person doesn't live in the country)*

Notice that:

- we can change the order of the two clauses.
You'd get bored if you lived in the country.
- we can use *were* instead of *was* after *I / he / she / it*.
*If he **were** here now, he'd **tell** you the truth.*

we often use *If I were you, I'd ...* to give advice.
*If I **were** you, I'd **forget** all about it.*
- we can use *might* or *could* instead of *would*.
*If you **worked** hard, you **might** pass the exam.*
*If I **borrowed** Mom's car, I **could** give you a lift.*

B Will and would

If + present + *will* (won't) + infinitive without *to*

*If the weather's nice tomorrow, I'll **phone** you.*
*I **won't go** to work.*
***will** you **go** swimming?*

- We use *will* to talk about real possibilities in the future.
*If Frank **phones**, I'll **tell** him you want to see him.*
- We use *would* to talk about imaginary situations.
*If I **were** taller, I'd **buy** that suit.*
- The choice of *will* or *would* sometimes depends on how we see a situation. Look at these examples:
*If I **get** the job, I'll **take** you out for a meal.*
*If I **got** the job, I'd **earn** a lot more money.*

In the first sentence, the speaker thinks it is a real possibility that he will get the job. In the second sentence, the speaker thinks it is unlikely that he will get the job (the situation is "imaginary" for him).

Tapescripts

Module 1

Recording 1

- a The Winter Olympics are held every four years, just the same as the summer Olympics.
- b The Barcelona Olympics were in 1992.
- c A 100-meters race normally starts when someone fires a gun.
- d Judo originated in Japan, but it is now popular all over the world.
- e An ice hockey game has three periods of twenty minutes. That's sixty minutes in all.
- f A rugby ball is similar to the type used in ordinary soccer, but there is one important difference – the shape, which is oval or egg-shaped.
- g Baseball is the national sport in the US.
- h There are 21 dots on a die.
- i The white player always starts in a game of chess.
- j The three most important sports in which players use a racket are tennis, badminton, and squash.
- k The referee tosses a coin to decide which way the two teams will play.
- l They play extra time until someone scores a goal. If there are no goals after thirty minutes, there is a penalty kick.

Recording 3

- a When do you usually play soccer?
- b Who do you play with?
- c Where do you usually play?
- d Why do you play?
- e How often do you have English lessons?
- f How long are the lessons?
- g Which days are the lessons on?
- h How many teachers do you have?

Recording 4

Toshi, a nineteen-year-old from Nagasaki, in Japan, wants to become a sumo wrestler. Toshi, who weighs over 175 kilos, and is 1 meter 95 tall, lives in a special training camp, called a Heya, with thirty other sumo wrestlers. Their training is very hard. Even before breakfast, they normally practice for four and a half hours! It is important that Toshi doesn't lose weight, so he always has a large lunch of rice, meat, fish, and vegetables, with lots of beer, and sometimes he eats extra pizzas and burgers. After lunch he goes to sleep for a few hours. One day, Toshi hopes to be famous – and rich – but at the moment he doesn't earn much money, so each month his parents send him money to help him.

Ania, who comes from Lublin in Poland, is a champion gymnast. She's seventeen years old and lives in a small apartment with her mother. She trains very hard – usually about eight hours every day, except Sunday, when she rests. She normally gets up at about seven in the morning and practices for three or four hours. Then she rests in the afternoon, before practicing for another four hours in the early evening. Like most gymnasts, Ania is very small – only about 1 meter 50, and she weighs very little too – around 40 kilos. This is very important for a gymnast, so she doesn't eat very much – although her mother makes sure she has a healthy diet! Ania doesn't earn very much money, but she enjoys her lifestyle very much.

Dan, from Bucharest in Romania, is a professional soccer player with a big Italian soccer club. He lives with his Italian girlfriend in a large villa in the mountains near Milan. Although he's only twenty-three years old, he earns around \$50,000 a week. He spends his money on fast cars, Italian designer clothes, and goes to all the best restaurants and clubs in Milan. But Dan has to live a healthy life – he never smokes and only occasionally drinks alcohol, and most days he lives

on a special diet of pasta and vegetables. Most mornings, before he goes to train with the rest of the team, he runs about eight kilometers.

Recording 5

- 1 WAITER: **Can I help you**, ma'am?
WOMAN: Yes, **where are the toilets, please?**
WAITER: Over there, next to the bar.
WOMAN: Thanks. And then, **can we have the check, please?**
WAITER: Certainly, ma'am.
- 2 A: Excuse me. **Do you speak English?**
B: A little bit.
A: **Where's the nearest** subway station – do you know?
B: Over there, next to the movie theater. Can you see it?
A: Oh yes. Thank you.
B: **Where are you from?**
A: Ontario, Canada.
B: That's a long way. What are you doing in Warsaw?
A: Oh, I'm just here on business.
B: And **how long are you going to stay?**
A: Just a week, but I'm having a great time!
B: Oh well, good luck and enjoy your stay.
A: Thanks, bye.
- 3 A: Excuse me. **How much does this cost?**
B: Twelve ninety-nine.
A: OK, right ... I'll take it then.
B: **Anything else?**
A: No, that's it, thank you.
B: How do you want to pay?
A: By credit card, if that's OK.
B: Sure ...

Recording 6

Where are you from?
What time is it?
What's your date of birth?
How long have you been in England?
How long are you going to stay?
How do you spell your name?
How much does this cost?
Where's the nearest bank?

Module 2

Recording 3

- a When's your birthday?
- b What time does this class finish?
- c What time did it start?
- d When did you last watch TV?
- e Which month does it usually start to get hot in your country?
- f What time do you usually go to bed?
- g In which year were you born?
- h In which decade did your parents grow up?
- i When did your grandparents get married?
- j When is your next vacation?

Recording 4

nervous excited disappointed worried bored surprised
guilty afraid angry relaxed in a good mood embarrassed
fed up

Recording 7

DAVID: OK, well, I remember the first time I went abroad ... I was eleven years old at the time, and we had a trip, a school trip to Paris. So, to get to Paris, we took a bus to London airport, to catch the plane, and it was about a three-hour drive, down the super highway, and about half way we stopped at a service station and had lunch. And then we got back on the bus and continued our trip to the airport, and we were almost in London, almost at the airport, when the teacher suddenly said, "Oh my God! I've left the passports in the service station, the place where we stopped for lunch." So we went all the way back to the service station, got the passports, drove all the way back to the airport, finally we got on the plane, arrived in Paris. And the other thing I remember is when I got to Paris, I bought some cakes, some French pastries. They were so good, I ate. Oh I don't know four, five French pastries ... and I was sick, I was so sick. I didn't get out of bed for three days ... I was so sick ...

JAYNE: I remember very clearly how I met my boyfriend. I had a job, in a coffee shop that sold sandwiches, ... I was about nineteen ... and when someone asked for a sandwich, we had to slice the bread with a big, big knife and make the sandwich. So one day, a really gorgeous-looking guy came in and I thought, "Oh, he's cute!" and, well, I felt a little nervous ... and he asked for a cheese sandwich. "No problem," I said. So there were a lot of people in the shop, it was very busy, so I sliced the bread really fast, made the sandwich, gave the sandwich to this young man ... with a big smile on my face ... and he looked at the sandwich and went "Argh!" and I saw the sandwich was all red, it was covered in blood. I'd cut my hand making the sandwich because I was so nervous ... and well, there was a silence and then everyone laughed. And I felt so stupid ... but anyway, when the coffee shop closed at six o'clock ... he came back and asked me out for a pizza, and we started going out!

Module 3

Recording 1

Ildiko

I think for any Hungarian person, learning another language is really important. Most foreigners can't speak Hungarian, of course, so if you want to meet and talk to people from other countries, you have to learn English ... and of course it's also very important if you want to get a good job!

Karina

It's very important for me to learn Greek, because I'm married to a Greek man! He can speak Danish, of course, so I don't have to speak Greek at home, but when we go to Greece in the summer, I can't talk to my husband's parents or any of the older people in his family, and I think that's really sad.

Dorothy

For me learning Italian is just a hobby. I don't have to study it for a special reason, I just like the language and I like going to my evening classes – it's something to do in the winter. And, of course I love Italy ... I always go to Italy for my vacation, so then I can practice what I learn ...

Daniel

My reasons are very simple – I have to learn English for my college exams. At my college, if we don't pass, we can't continue into the second year, and we have to do the first year again! If we pass, we can take another course instead of English – economics or other things – but I want to continue with English, it might be useful one day.

Recording 2 (missing words / phrases only)

a can, have to b can c can't
d have to e don't have to f can't
g can h don't have to, have to

Recording 4

ELLEN: There are a lot of laws in Britain about what students can and can't study. For example, all students at **both elementary school and high school have to study RE and PE at least once a week**, and all **elementary school students have to have at least one hour of math every day, and one hour of English**. But later in high school, students actually have a lot of choice about what they study. **After the age of fourteen** they can stop studying a lot of subjects. For example, **they don't have to study geography or history** if they don't want to. By law, **everyone has to stay in school until they're sixteen** in Britain, but if they choose to stay in school after the age of sixteen, students can study what they want to. They have a free choice, depending on what courses the school can offer, of course. For example, you can't study subjects like philosophy or psychology in some high schools, but you can easily study these at college if you want to. There is one important rule for entering a college though ... **if you want to study any subject at all, you have to pass math GCSE**. If you don't pass it, you can't go to a college. So sometimes if people are really bad at math they have to take it three or four times, or they can't go!

Recording 5

KRISTINA: We think it's very important for the teacher to use English as much as possible and only to use the students' language when it's really necessary so the students can hear as much English as possible. The teacher should always assign homework. After every class there is some homework, but not too much, something short, and, of course, I have to correct the homework and give it back quickly so it's good for me if there isn't too much homework! Of course, the teacher should always try to make the classes interesting. Sometimes it's not so easy, but it's important always to make the effort! Yes, we think that the teacher should always try to answer the students' questions, but it can happen that you don't know, so the teacher shouldn't be afraid to say, "Sorry, I don't know, but I'll try to find out for you and I'll tell you next class." You should use the course book, but maybe not every class. It's a good idea to bring in other materials from time to time. About correcting mistakes, well, some students say the teacher should always correct all the mistakes, but in fact, if you do that, the students never get to the end of their sentences! I think the teacher should just correct the important mistakes myself.

Recording 6 (missing words / phrases only)

- 1 could you speak more ..., Thank
- 2 ... is it OK if I leave ..., go ahead, telling me
- 3 Can I borrow it ..., here you are
- 4 Do you mind if I ..., What's the problem

Module 4

Recording 1

- 1 Chinese New Year is either at the end of January or the beginning of February.
- 2 St. Valentine's Day is on February 14th.
- 3 In Britain, Mother's Day is at the beginning of March, usually the first Sunday in March.
- 4 Easter is usually between the end of March and the middle of April.
- 5 May Day is on the first of May. In some countries this is called Labor Day.
- 6 In Britain, Father's Day is in the middle of June.
- 7 American Independence Day is on the fourth of July.
- 8 Halloween is on October 31st.
- 9 Christmas is on December 25th.
- 10 New Year's Eve is on December 31st.

Recording 4

- 1 What did you do the day before yesterday?
- 2 Which weekday begins with the letters T-H?
- 3 Write the name of someone you talk to every day.
- 4 Write one reason why people have a day off.
- 5 What will the date be in three days?
- 6 Write the name of a daily newspaper in your country.
- 7 What are you doing the day after tomorrow?
- 8 Write the name of a place you would like to go for a day out.
- 9 Write the name of a singer who is popular in your country nowadays.
- 10 When did you last stay in bed all day?

Recording 5

K = Karen J = Johnny

- K: So what happens at New Year in Hong Kong, Johnny?
- J: Well, most importantly for Chinese people, we eat a lot and we also eat special food with special meanings. So for example, we eat Chinese mushrooms and oysters, because they bring us good luck and also lots of money!
- K: Aahh.
- J: What about in Scotland?
- K: Well, in Scotland we have special food, too, but the food is very sweet. We have special cakes with lots of fruit in them and that brings us good luck and lots of money.
- J: Mmm, we also wear, we also wear our new clothes, again to bring good luck, so ... because it's the New Year, so we wear all our new clothes.
- K: Really? In ... in Scotland, another thing we do to bring good luck is to clean the house. So before the stroke of midnight on the thirty-first of December you have to clean everything in the house, and then you open the front door and the back door, so that the good luck can come in the front door and the old year can go out of the back door.
- J: Mmm. Now, your New Year starts on December the thirty-first (Yeah) ... Now in Hong Kong, the Chinese New Year is different, because sometimes it's at the end of January, and sometimes it's at the beginning of February, because we have a special Chinese calendar, which follows the moon, and all special festivals and special days follow that calendar, so every year it's different, so sometimes I don't remember when New Year is!
- K: Really? So how do you find out, is it shown on the calendar?
- J: My mother knows everything. She has a special calendar.
- K: Yes, mothers are like that. Do you do anything special – do people do anything special at New Year?
- J: Oh yes, New Year's particularly nice for children because they get little red envelopes, with money in them, and red is a lucky color. And ... what they do is, they go to adults, and they say, "Happy New Year" in Chinese, and the adults give them little red envelopes of money.

K: Sounds good.

J: It is. It is very good, because I still get little red envelopes of money, because I'm not married ... so I'm still a child!

K: In Scotland the children don't really play much of a part in the New Year. It's mostly for adults because everything takes place in the middle of the night. Oh yes, at twelve o'clock on New Year's Day the first person to come to your door brings you your good luck for the year. We call them your "first foot," and it's very important who your "first foot" is.

Recording 7

J = Jackie D = David I = Interviewer

J: January ... yes ... I put January 11th because that's the day when I took my driving test this year. I was very nervous before, but it was OK. I passed. It was the first time. I was really, really happy when I got my license.

D: February, well, in February obviously the most important day is the 14th.

I: Valentine's Day.

D: Valentine's Day, yes.

I: Do you ever send a card? Or have you ever sent one?

D: No, I don't think I have, no ...

I: Really? Not very romantic.

D: Well, I get lots of them though ...

I: Of course.

D: Well, for May, I have my sister's birthday, it's my younger sister. It's important that I remember. I can forget my other brothers and sisters, but my little sister, she gets very mad at me if I don't call her up or anything. So I always do that wherever I am, I always call her up and sing Happy Birthday to her over the phone ...

I: How old is your sister?

D: Thirty-five! No, she's sixteen, sixteen on her next birthday ...

J: Because I come from Malta, I chose June 2nd, because that's when we have the festa in my town, which is Rabat. It's like a special day, or five days, for the saint of each town or village and there are fireworks. It's like a big party in the street. There is a big parade to the church. Everybody enjoys themselves, it's really fun, and this year, the festa in Rabat is starting on June 2nd.

September. For September I have September the twenty-first, which is Independence Day in my country. We became an independent country in 1964, so it's a holiday now.

D: For October, which is this month, my important day is the twenty-third. It's next week, because I have a friend coming. My friend Glen is coming from New Zealand, and he's arriving at the airport on Sunday night, so I have to meet him.

I: Is he an old friend?

D: Pretty old. I met him in New Zealand when I was working there.

J: December 1st is my parents' wedding anniversary and this year is their twenty-fifth anniversary, so we're having a big family party.

Recording 9

a Well, it's happened! I'm 30 years old ... today.

b I have some news for you. James and I are getting married!

c Well, I think that's everything ... a beer for you, André, and a glass of wine for you, Elisa.

d And I brought this for you, Leonardo. I hope you like it. I made it myself.

e (Sound of bell striking twelve. Sounds of a party.)

f I'd better go now. I have my exam tomorrow morning.

g ... anyway, I've decided not to come out tonight. I've got a really awful cold, and I just want to go home to bed!

h Ben, we have got to go now, but thanks for a great party.

Module 5

Recording 1

I'm pretty tall actually, around 5 foot 8, about 1 meter 75, and the only time I feel small is when I'm with my sisters – they're both taller than me. Kath is the youngest, and the tallest, although you can't see it in the photo, then comes Sophie. People say Sophie and I look very similar and that we both look like my father. We both have lighter hair than Kath, and high foreheads like Dad. Actually, we all have our Dad's blue eyes, but Kath looks more like my mother.

In personality, I think I'm very different from my sisters. They're both more organized than me! Kath always has to call me to remind me of family birthdays and things like that. The truth is, I'm really the oldest in age only!

Recording 2

- a My mother's older than my father.
- b I'm very different from my sister.
- c Her hair's very similar to mine.
- d She's the nicest person I know.
- e His nose is the same as mine.

Recording 5

- a A: Morning!
- B: Oh, morning! How are you?
- A: I'm fine, I'm fine. Nice day, isn't it?
- B: Yes, it's beautiful.
- A: So, do you have any plans for today?
- B: No, nothing special. We might go to the park later, what do you think?
- C: Yes, Mommy.
- B: How about you?
- A: Well, my grand-daughter's coming over later ...
- B: Oh, that's nice.
- A: Yes, well she's just come back from ...
- C: Mommy ...
- B: Yes, darling, I'm just talking.
- C: Mommy, can we go to the park now?
- B: Listen, I'd better get going. I hope you have a nice day.
- b A: Hello, dear.
- B: Hello, Laura. Are you feeling better now?
- A: Yes, I'm much better. I had to take a couple of days off, it's my back again.
- B: Oh dear.
- A: Yeah, I'm just ... it's because I'm sitting here all day.
- B: Mmm.
- A: Anyway, I went to see the doctor, and he gave me something for it, so I'm going back next week.
- B: Mmm. How's the family?
- A: Oh, they're all right. Yes, they're all fine.
- B: The children are back at school now, aren't they?
- A: Oh yes, they're back. That's \$8.26, please.
- c A: Afternoon.
- B: Good afternoon.
- C: Hi there.
- B: Where are you going?
- A: It's the, er, Caledonian Hotel, please, it's on...Princes Street.
- B: Caledonian Hotel, I know it, all right. So, are you here on vacation?
- A: Yeah. We're here on vacation. How did you know?
- B: Oh, I can always tell. Where are you from, America is it?
- C: No, we're Canadian. We're from Toronto.
- B: Canada, eh? Well, well, that's a long way to come. Is this your first time in Edinburgh?

- A: Yes, it's our first time here, but I have family here.
- B: Is that right?
- A: Yes, my family came from near here. They moved to Canada.

- d A: Hi.
- B: Hello there.
- A: Did you have a good weekend?
- B: Yeah, it was OK. I didn't do much, really, just sat at home relaxing, y'know. How about you?
- A: Yeah, oh I had a fantastic weekend, great.
- B: Oh really. What did you do?
- A: Oh well, nothing really.
- B: Oh. Like me then.
- A: Yeah, I suppose so.
- B: Did you see the soccer game on Sunday?
- A: Oh, yeah, fantastic, wasn't it? That goal was great!
- B: Did you think so? I wanted United to win, actually. I thought they were unlucky.
- A: What do you mean unlucky! They were lucky they only lost 1-0, and that was definitely a penalty ...
- B: Nah! He just fell over.

Recording 7

Nice day, isn't it?
 So, do you have any plans for today?
 Are you feeling better now?
 How's the family?
 Is this your first time in Edinburgh?
 Did you have a good weekend?
 Did you see the soccer game on Sunday?

Module 6

Recording 1

- a I'm planning to have a party for my birthday.
- b I'm going to see my grandparents on the weekend.
- c I'd like to go to Dublin in the summer.
- d I'd prefer to travel with a group of friends.

Recording 2

Part 1

- R = Rosa M = Mark
- R: So anyway, we decided to have a really good vacation – a “dream vacation” in the Caribbean, because we'd always wanted to go there. So we saved our money up for months and months, and booked this tour to a place called San Antonio. It cost over a thousand pounds each, but we wanted to do something really special so we booked it for two weeks in May, because all the brochures said that the weather's beautiful there in May ...
 - M: We were flying from Gatwick airport, and the flight was overnight ... leaving Gatwick late at night, and arriving in San Antonio the next morning, or that was the idea, anyway! But when we arrived at the airport, they told us that because of bad weather in the Caribbean, the flight was delayed until the next morning. So we had to spend the night at the airport, sleeping on the floor, and we finally got on the plane the next morning, twelve hours late!
 - R: But that was just the beginning. On the plane they told us that the bad weather over the Caribbean was actually a hurricane – Hurricane Georgia – and that we couldn't fly to San Antonio. We had to go to the capital city instead, and stay in a hotel there for the night, until the hurricane passed. Anyway, we weren't too worried, we thought – well, it's only one night ... and they told us that we were going to a five-star hotel, next to the beach, with a swimming pool, so we were happy at that point...

Part 2

- M: Anyway, we arrived at the hotel, the Hotel Paradiso it was called, what a joke! They said it was a five-star hotel, but I wouldn't give it one star! It was just awful... I don't know how to describe it ... it was an awful building. Yes, it was next to the ocean, but it wasn't a beach! Just a few rocks, and the ocean was so dirty you couldn't swim in it. There were big ships traveling past, and the ocean was all polluted and brown. It looked horrible.
- R: So we went to look at the swimming pool, but that was no better. It wasn't a nice blue color, like you'd expect. It was a sort of greeny-black color and as we looked at it we could see things moving around in it, and we looked more closely and we realized it was full of frogs. There were hundreds and hundreds of frogs in it. So after that obviously we didn't use it.
- M: And then there was the food. Do you remember the food?
- R: I'll never forget it! The first morning, we went downstairs for breakfast, expecting to have you know, the usual things you get in hotels, bread, jam, fruit, coffee, and we were very surprised instead to see lots of different types of vegetables, carrots, peas, cabbage, and a big bowl of lettuce! But anyway, I was really, really hungry so I decided to have some of the lettuce until I saw that it was moving! The leaves of lettuce were slowly moving around the bowl, and I looked a bit more closely and saw that the lettuce bowl was full of ants, hundreds of them, and there were so many that they were actually moving the lettuce leaves! After that, we didn't eat in the hotel again. We didn't want to.
- M: The worst part, though, was when the hurricane arrived. That was really scary. It was a fifteen-story hotel so you felt really terrified with all that wind, and rain, and the windows banging, and the trees crashing outside. It was terrible.
- R: And then they told us that, because of the hurricane, there were no flights to San Antonio, and that we had to stay there for another three days, three more days in that place! There was nothing to do! Nowhere to go! We couldn't eat the food! It was noisy and dirty. We just couldn't believe that it could happen.
- M: So when we finally arrived in San Antonio, we were five days late. And the worst thing was that Hurricane Georgia had never arrived there. The weather had been perfect in San Antonio all the time!

Recording 3 (missing words / phrases only)

- a You'll b You'll c There'll d It'll e It'll

Module 7

Recording 1

- a I've had my car for about six months.
b I've been a student for two years.
c I've been in high school for four years.
d Before that, I went to elementary school.
e I've lived in London for ten years.
f I've known Anna for about eight years.
g My grandparents have been married for over fifty years.
h My mother has worked as a doctor for twenty years.
i Helen has been a teacher for three years.
j Before that she was a translator for two years.

Recording 2 (missing words / phrases only)

- a Could you say that again, please? / What exactly is a warranty agreement?
b I'm sorry, I don't understand. / What does "or Dover" mean? / And can you explain what Bay Yin Tar Vey Zee is?
c Sorry, what was that? / How do you spell it? / What do you mean, exactly?

Module 8

Recording 1

- 1 No, that's a myth. It's actually very unusual to see a man in a bowler hat.
- 2 Well, if you go to the south, I think it's true. We always start our main meal with a pasta dish.
- 3 Yes, that's true. I saw it in London a lot. Japanese people were always carrying a camera.
- 4 Yes, that's seventy per cent true if you live in Paris. Paris is the fashion capital. But people in the street are not always well dressed, you know.
- 5 That's not really true any more. It was often foggy years ago. You read about it in Sherlock Holmes stories, don't you?
- 6 Oh yes, it's true. I think it's in the blood, it's in the air, it's in the spirit, it's in Brazil!
- 7 No, not true. Very few men actually wear kilts as everyday clothes, but a lot of people wear kilts when they go to weddings, or to special parties, like New Year celebrations.
- 8 No, that's false. It depends on where you are and when: For example, don't go to Harlem at night.
- 9 Well, that's true for older people, but now young people prefer to eat bread or cereal or fruit. We've become much more westernized.
- 10 Oh no, that's a complete myth...just for tourists! Most people are leaving work to go home at five o'clock!
- 11 That's not really true, no. In the north, in particular in winter, it rains, but not a lot. In the south it rains less, very occasionally.
- 12 That's certainly true...because of the nice weather, we can eat outside a lot – even at Christmas, in fact.

Recording 2

Sentence one is true.

Sentence two is false. The River Nile is, of course, in Africa. The longest river in Asia is the Yangtze, or Chang Jiang River, in China.

Sentence three is true, and so is **sentence four**.

Sentence five is false. Hawaii and Tahiti are both in the Pacific Ocean, but Madagascar is in the Indian Ocean, near the coast of Africa.

Sentence six is false too. Lake Superior is the second largest lake in the world. Despite its name, the Caspian Sea, in central Asia, is the largest lake in the world.

And **number seven** is also false. The River Danube, which runs through Germany, Austria, Hungary, and many other European countries, is twice as long as the River Rhine.

Recording 4

New Zealand is in the South Pacific, about one thousand two hundred miles southeast of Australia. It's not a very big country, about the same size as Great Britain or Japan, but it has a much smaller population, only 3.5 million. There are two official languages, English and Maori.

I suppose when most people think of New Zealand, they think of New Zealand lamb or butter and it's true that a lot of the country is farmland. There are a lot of sheep and cows! But there's a lot more to it than that. There are people who say that it's the most beautiful, unspoiled country in the world. I don't know about that, but it's certainly an amazing place to visit. There are so many different types of scenery and climate. We have almost everything. In the north there are fantastic beaches, mountains, volcanos, even a small area of desert, and the climate is pleasant and warm, usually around twenty-five degrees in the summer, while in the south of the country the temperatures are lower, especially in winter, and the scenery is almost like Norway or Canada. There are glaciers, fjords, and lots of snow-covered mountains where you can go skiing. There are so many different things to see and do.

Module 11

Recording 1

HELENA: I know everyone thinks I'm really strange, but I really hate ice cream. I've never liked it. Even when I was a child I always hated it. It's so cold and horrible. My mother used to think I was very strange.

OLIVER: I think spiders are really sweet. I'd really like to get a tarantula for a pet. They're cute and furry, and they're really easy to take care of, and they can live for ages. I could keep it in my bedroom. The only problem is my mom can't stand them. She says if a spider moves in, she's moving out!

DAVID: I know a lot of people think it's strange, but I really enjoy spending my birthday on my own. I do it every year. It's my own choice. My sister always invites me to her house with her and her children, and my parents, but to be honest, spending my birthday with my family isn't really my idea of fun. At home, in my own apartment, I can eat my birthday cake, I read my birthday cards, and watch my favorite video!

MELISSA: People always think it's a little strange, but I actually really enjoy doing the dishes! I don't know why, really, I just find it relaxing after a meal. Whenever I go to friends for dinner I always get up immediately after the meal and start doing the dishes. I guess I just hate sitting at the table looking at dirty plates. I feel much better when it's all clean again!

JULIA: A lot of people can't understand this, but I really hate chocolates. It's not just that I don't like them much, I absolutely loathe them. It's very embarrassing if I am given them for a present or I am offered them at the end of a meal at someone's house. I don't mind candy, and I love cakes and cookies, but I can't stand chocolates. Ugh! They're disgusting!

Recording 3

- a Would you like to travel back in time? Why/Why not?
- b Which famous person would you most like to meet and why?
- c You want to invite someone to the movies. What do you say?
- d What was the weather like yesterday?
- e What does snow taste like?
- f Think of two kinds of food you don't like very much.
- g Think of two friends who are like you, and say why they are like you.

Recording 5

- a A: I'm feeling really tired tonight.
B: Yes, so am I!
- b A: I'm not very hungry, actually.
B: No, neither am I.
- c A: I absolutely hate warm milk.
B: So do I. It's disgusting, isn't it?
- d A: My husband doesn't like dancing very much.
B: Really? Neither do I, I must say.
- e A: I was really sick last week!
B: That's funny – so was I!
- f A: Actually, I wasn't here for the last lesson.
B: No, neither was I, unfortunately.
- g A: We went to Istanbul for our vacation last year.
B: What a coincidence, so did we!
- h A: We didn't enjoy the movie much.
B: No, neither did we.

Recording 6

- a I'm really thirsty today.
- b I'm not feeling very well right now.
- c I don't like this weather much.
- d I watched that Julia Roberts movie on TV last night.
- e I was late for class today.
- f I don't mind doing the dishes, really.
- g I hope we're not too late!
- h I didn't sleep very well last night.

Consolidation Modules 7–11

Recording 1

ELIZA: Well, I live on my own now. I decided after my fourth husband died that I didn't want to marry again, and I like being independent. I still enjoy going to parties and meeting people – it's funny when I meet someone for the first time and they recognize me, but they can't remember the names of any of my movies. They get embarrassed, but I don't mind. The last one was quite a few years ago, after all! I've lived here in Los Angeles for almost forty years now, and I love the weather, and the people, but I feel I need a change, so maybe next year I'll do something exciting, like travel around the world. I've always wanted to go to Australia you know – so I should go before it's too late!

PHILIP: I used to be the director of a large finance company. I had a really good salary, nice house, big car, all those things, but I was just working all the time, and I never saw my wife, or had any time for my great passion – cooking. So, I decided, and one day – about three years ago – I just left my job, and we moved to a smaller house, got a smaller car, you know, and my wife and I opened a small restaurant. I did all the cooking at first, and it was very hard work – I thought, "I've made a mistake," but then we started to make some money, and we got a chef, and it was easier. Nowadays, I decide the menus, and I go to the market every day, to get fresh vegetables, fish, and I do some cooking. We're certainly not as rich as we were, and we work long hours, but I think we're much happier. Maybe next year we'll have a vacation – our first one in three years!

CARLA: I never go shopping myself – well not very often – I really hate it. All those crowds of people, and you can never find exactly what you want. That's what gave me the idea for the Internet company, you know, buy clothes, things for the house, presents, etcetera over the Internet, and the things were cheaper, too, of course. I was so surprised when the business grew so quickly – I suppose there are lots of people out there who hate shopping too! I still can't believe that the company is only a year old and it's already worth one and a half million! I don't really think of myself as a businesswoman – it was just luck, really. I think I'll probably sell the company in two or three years. Then I can stop work and have that great big family that I've always wanted, and go and live in a huge house in the country.

Module 12

Recording 1

VALERIE: When I was young we were very poor. My father died in the war, and we couldn't afford clothes. We never had any new ones, they were always other people's old ones and even when I got married myself, when my children were little, we didn't have much money, so I always had to make our clothes myself, mine and the children's. I didn't buy many things from stores, so now I'm older, and we've got some money, I do like to have nice things, I must say, good quality clothes, good labels. Of course, there are lots of designer things I would never buy. Some of the perfume and cosmetics and those things are a ridiculous price. I don't understand why people waste their money on them. But we do like to have nice clothes and a nice car, things like that. After all, you only live once, don't you? Why not enjoy it?

NICOLA: It really worries me the way young people today are so obsessed by these designer labels. I mean these running shoes that cost over \$100. I feel really sorry for parents who don't have any money with their children asking for these things. What do they do? The cheaper clothes are usually just as good, but the kids won't have them. I think the whole thing's crazy. It really makes me angry.

RORY: Some people I know, the only thing they're interested in is clothes, you know, designer T-shirts, and jeans and everything, and I think that's stupid. But I don't agree with my mom, either. She thinks you should just get the cheapest running shoes and the cheapest jeans, but she doesn't understand that other people notice these things, and you feel really stupid if you're the person wearing the cheap ones. You just don't look good when everyone else has the designer ones. You don't look cool.

Recording 4

- a It's a hat that protects your head from the sun.
- b It's a person who designs clothes.
- c It's stuff that you use to wash your hands – not water!
- d It's a person who sells flowers.
- e It's a long leather thing that stops your pants from falling down!
- f It's a machine that answers the phone for you when you're busy.
- g It's makeup that women (and sometimes men!) wear on their mouths.
- h They're a special kind of shoe that you wear in summer.
- i It's a person who sells meat.
- j They're gold or silver things that people wear in their ears.

Recording 5

- N = Neil L = Lucy
 N: Hello, Neil Lack.
 L: Hi, it's me.
 N: Hi!
 L: Listen, just a quick call. I'm packing for the weekend, and I just want to check what we want to take with us.
 N: Oh, I don't know, the usual things, toothbrushes, underwear, clothes, shoes ...
 L: Well yes, obviously, but any special clothes?
 N: Shorts and T-shirts because it'll probably be hot walking around sightseeing, and comfortable shoes. Actually, you can pack my brown shoes, because they're my best ones for walking around all day.
 L: Yes. Do you think we'll need sweaters for the evening?
 N: Probably, and put in those plastic raincoats just in case it rains.
 L: And we'd better pack something dressy if we're going to the theater on Saturday night.
 N: Yeah, put in my blue suit and that new shirt.
 L: OK, and what about other things apart from clothes. Obviously passports, tickets, money, travelers' checks. Do we need our driver's licenses?

- N: We're not planning to rent a car, are we?
 L: No but, well, anyway. What else?
 N: A guidebook. That little yellow one's really good. A phrasebook ... and don't forget the camera. You always forget the camera!
 L: What about you? It's not my job to remember everything you know!
 N: And what about sunscreen? It might get really hot.
 L: We can buy that there if we need it, can't we?
 N: Yeah, I suppose so. Oh, before I forget, can you pack my razor and shaving cream?
 L: Yeah, sure. Anything else?
 N: Can't think of anything. Listen, I'll call you back if I do, I have a meeting now. I'll see you at the check-in desk at five, OK?
 L: Yeah, see you then. Don't be late!
 N: I won't!
 L: I'm really excited, aren't you? I'm really looking forward to it!
 N: Yeah, me too! See you later!
 L: See you, bye. Take care.

Recording 6

- a A: Lisa? Hi, I'm just going to the supermarket. What should I get for dinner tonight?
 B: Oh, I don't know. Well, why don't we have pasta. You know, with some of that fish sauce. That's easy and quick ...
 A: OK then, and is there anything else we need? What about dessert?
 B: Oh, let's have my favorite – double chocolate ice cream ...
 A: All right. All right. I'll get some wine, too. See you later.
- b A: Are you OK there, sir? Do you need any help?
 B: Well, yes. I'm looking for a Christmas present for my mother, and I'm not sure what ...
 A: OK, well, how about this perfume? It's called "Heaven Scent." It's very popular with the more mature woman.
 B: I don't think so. I'm never sure with perfume.
 A: Yes, it can be difficult, can't it? Now, let's see. You could buy her a really nice lipstick. Now this range has some nice colors ...
 B: Yes, maybe I'll do that. Which one do you think would be ...
- c A: ... and I must get something to bring back for Francesca. What do you think I should get?
 B: Er, how about one of those ashtrays we saw in that little souvenir shop by the bridge?
 A: Oh, come on, Ricky, be serious. They were horrible. And anyway she doesn't smoke!
 B: Well, I don't know. What about getting her a purse, a really good leather one.
 A: Good idea. Thanks!
- d A: Now, here are the children's running shoes. Oh, these are nice, look. Why don't you try these on?
 B: Oh, Mom. Nobody wears running shoes like that. Can I have these?
 A: Oh, they're much more expensive. Don't you want that backpack we saw?
 B: Yes, 'course I do!
 A: Well, you can't have that and the expensive running shoes. So should we ask the sales clerk for your size in these?
 B: I guess so.

Recording 8

Why don't we have pasta?
 Let's have my favorite.
 How about this perfume?
 You could buy her a really nice lipstick.
 What about getting her a purse?
 Should we ask the sales clerk for your size in these?

Module 13

Recording 1

a 've been waiting b have you had c haven't been working
d 's been raining e haven't known f Have your parents been living
g 's been travelling h 's Chris been

Recording 2

a ten years b your last birthday c week
d nine o'clock this morning e months and months f last summer
g ages h the weekend i winter j a long time k he was born
l his life

Recording 4 (missing words / phrases only)

Zelda Markovitch

(1) three (2) has been working (3) two years ago
(4) no experience

Max Robertson

(1) fifty (2) all his life (3) forty
(4) seventy-six

Module 14

Recording 1

- 1 There are too many old people here for me, and not enough young people.
- 2 It's so dirty and smelly. There's too much traffic and noise.
- 3 The best thing is the nightlife. There are a lot of places to go in the evening. You're never bored. I love it.
- 4 There are a few nice restaurants and places to go for a drink, but there aren't many good stores. There aren't any clothes stores for example, that's a big problem about living here.
- 5 There isn't enough green space. There are too many buildings everywhere, and streets and cars and people everywhere. I really miss the open space.
- 6 People aren't really very friendly, I think ...
- 7 There are some beautiful old houses and traditional stores. I like the old butcher, and there's a good baker. They're really friendly and they sell wonderful food.

Recording 3

J = Jeff C = Cindy

J: Hello?
C: Hello, can I speak to Jeff, please?
J: Yes, speaking
C: Oh, hi. This is Cindy Kemble. Mark said you live near me and maybe you could give me a ride on Saturday.
J: Yes, of course, no problem. Did he tell you how to get to my house?
C: No, he said the nearest station is Manor House.
J: OK, well, when you come out of Manor House station, take the Finsbury Park exit and turn left. Then go up Green Lanes with Finsbury Park on your left.
C: Uhuh.
J: So you go past the park and there's a bridge in front of you, so keep going toward the bridge, and take the street on the left just before you get to the bridge. That's Lothair Road.
C: OK, turn left before the bridge ...
J: Yeah, actually it's opposite a big supermarket.
C: OK.
J: OK? Then my street's two blocks after on the left, Venetia Road.
C: Excuse me?
J: Venetia, V-E-N-E-T-I-A.
C: Uhuh. OK, got that.

J: Fine, well, my house is at the beginning of the street. It's number four, the second house on your right.

C: Fine, I think I'll find it OK. It sounds far ...

J: No, no, not at all. It takes about ten minutes, honestly!

C: All right then, see you on Saturday. What time?

J: Oh, about 1:30, I guess ...

C: OK, bye.

J: Bye.

Recording 4

Sandra One of my favorite rooms when I was little was my grandmother's living room, her "back room" she called it. It was a small room, very, very full of old-fashioned wooden furniture that she'd gotten as wedding presents forty or so years earlier. She didn't have heating, so in the winter there was always a real fire in the fireplace, and when it was cold we used to spend all our time sitting in big armchairs in front of the fire drinking cups of hot coffee and talking and talking.
The room was full of little ornaments that my grandmother had collected, things that children love, lots of little china animals and people. There were also lots and lots of books in the room because my grandmother was a great reader, and cabinets full of interesting things, and old-fashioned toys that she had kept from when my mother was a little girl, china things with flowers and roses on them. My sister and I thought they were more beautiful than the modern things my mother had. I think I spent some of the happiest days of my childhood in that room talking to Grandma and playing with those old toys.

Tom Well, one of my favorite rooms is actually a coffee shop, which I often go to with friends for lunch on weekends, or just for a cup of coffee. I sometimes stay for ages just reading the newspaper there. It's on a fairly quiet street, near some stores, and the whole of the front is one big window, so you can sit and watch the people go by if you want. The kitchen and bar are at the back and there are only about twelve tables. The room's not very big, and it's got bare wooden floors and a mixture of second-hand wooden furniture, so it doesn't look too neat and clean. And the lighting's just right, not too bright. It's decorated in light blue and a nice bright yellow color, and there are always lots of paintings on the walls by local artists. I love the atmosphere there. It's very friendly, and they play the kind of music I like, jazz or soul, but not too loud. I like it because I always feel really relaxed there when everyone's rushing past outside. I just sit back and enjoy my coffee and my newspaper, with the music and the noise of the coffee machine in the background ...

Module 15

Recording 1

A young couple were having a romantic dinner at an expensive restaurant. They saw an old lady sitting alone, looking at them. They smiled politely, but were a little surprised when the old lady came over to their table. The old lady told the young woman that she looked just like her daughter who she said had died a year ago. She said it would make her very happy if they said, "Goodbye, Mom" when she left the restaurant. How could they refuse? A few minutes later, the old lady stood up to leave. The two diners waved, as she had asked them, and said goodbye as the old lady walked out. When the couple received their check, however, they saw that it included the cost of the old lady's meal. They called over the manager and asked him what had happened. "The check includes the charge for your mother's meal," he explained. "She said you would pay."

Recording 3

EC = Edward Carson IN = Interviewer

EC: And so I think it's time I gave my side of the story. A number of the things that appeared in the newspapers are simply not true. I don't feel that I stole the money, more that I borrowed it. I didn't

- actually think I was stealing it, but the newspapers said it was £60,000 ... which really is not true ...
- IN: What, it was less than that, or ...
- EC: Yes, it was much less, much, much less.
- IN: How much did you in fact steal?
- EC: Well, I borrowed probably about £20,000.
- IN: Well that's quite a lot, isn't it?
- EC: Twenty-two maybe, certainly not more than that.
- IN: And what happened then ... after you'd taken the money?
- EC: I had this idea, perhaps it was a crazy idea, but I believed it at the time, that I could win back the money I owed, at the roulette tables, I just wanted to do it all quickly so I could pay everyone back and get on with my life. So I got in my car and spent three days driving to the south of France. I drove to Monte Carlo.
- IN: And what did you do there?
- EC: I tried to get into the casino, but they refused to let me in. They refused to accept my bet. So I had to go back to England and I still wanted to win the money back somehow, so I went to the races and made a bet, I think it was about £5,000 in fact, on a horse called Lucky Six.
- IN: What made you choose that horse?
- EC: Well, it was just the name really. And six is my lucky number.
- IN: And what happened?
- EC: It finished sixth. There were seven horses in the race.
- IN: Oh dear.
- EC: So I decided after that, I'd been unlucky in Monte Carlo, I'd been unlucky at the racetrack ... I thought, third time lucky, I'll invest it. So I invested some money, the rest of my money in fact, in an airline. It was an independent airline. A few days later, it collapsed, so I lost almost all the money I'd invested. I had only about £1,000 left, I was really in despair ...
- IN: So what did you do?
- EC: Well, I didn't know what to do. I borrowed a car, it was my brother's car, in fact, and went for a drive. I just wanted to drive down to the cliffs, near where I lived and think about things. Think about what to do next, and, well, a policeman stopped me because I was driving too fast. I knew the police were looking for me, so when I stopped, I told the policeman what had happened. At first he didn't believe me ...
- IN: But in the end, you went to prison.
- EC: Yes, I spent a year in prison. I think that taught me a lesson.

Recording 4

- The newspaper article said that Carson stole the money. Carson said he'd only borrowed it.
- In the newspaper article it was £60,000. Carson said it was only £20,000 or £22,000.
- Carson didn't fly to Monte Carlo, he drove there.
- According to Carson, he only bet £5,000 on a horse, not £10,000.
- The horse's name was Lucky Six, not Lucky Seven.
- It finished sixth, not last.
- He invested his money in an airline, not a travel company.
- He didn't buy a car, he borrowed one from his brother.
- He didn't plan to kill himself.
- He went to prison for a year, not a month.

Recording 5

- a A: Is there somewhere I can change some money?
B: Sure, we can change it for you or there's a bank across the square.
A: What's the exchange rate for US dollars?
B: It's marked up there. It's exactly one peso to the dollar.
A: OK, I'd like to change this into pesos, please. It's 200 American dollars.
B: Certainly, madam. That's two hundred pesos.
A: Thank you.

- b A: Oh look, it says "Exact money only." I don't have any change. Do you have change for £5?
B: Let's see. What do you need?
A: It's £1.50 so I need a pound coin, and a fifty-pence coin, or three fifties.
B: That's one, two, three, four pounds ...
A: OK.
B: And two fifties. There you go.
A: Great, thanks.
- c A: Excuse me. How much are these earrings?
B: Which ones?
A: These ones here.
B: They're £20.
A: Oh, that's a little expensive. How about these smaller ones?
B: They're £12.
A: OK, I'll take this pair, the smaller ones, these. Can I pay by credit card?
B: Well, I prefer cash.
- d A: Hello, I come from Italy, and I'm staying in England for a year. I'd like to open a bank account here. What documents do I need, please?
B: We need to see your passport, of course.
A: Yes.
B: A letter from your employer or your school, if you're a student.
A: And that's all?
B: That's all, yes.
A: OK. And one other thing. Can I ...
- e A: Excuse me, can we have the check, please?
B: Together?
c: Yes, please.
B: OK. That's one glass of white wine, one mineral water ...
c: One club sandwich ...
B: All right. There you are.
A: Thanks. Is the service charge included?
B: No.
A: OK, thank you.
A: Do you think we should leave a tip?
B: How much is it?
A: Nine pounds fifty!
B: Oh, leave him £10. He has been very nice.

Recording 6

- a What's the exchange rate for US dollars?
b I'd like to change this money into pesos, please. It's 200 American dollars.
c Do you have change for £5?
d Excuse me. How much are these earrings?
e OK, I'll take this pair.
f Can I pay by credit card?
g What documents do I need?
h Can we have the check, please?
i Is the service charge included?
j Do you think we should leave a tip?

Module 16

Recording 1

peace peaceful violence violent
power powerful freedom free
religion religious tragedy tragic
strength strong

Recording 3 (missing words/phrases only)

1 'll 2 'll 3 'd 4 'll 5 'd 6 'd 7 'll 8 'd

B: Well, all my jewelry, I'm sure from the bedroom, and some antique silver from a cabinet.

A: Were all these things insured, ma'am?

B: Well, I think so ...

e A: Ah, Anita. Is the design for the conference center ready?

B: Er, no. I was ...

A: But you know I need it for tomorrow morning and I asked you to stop work on everything else until you finished it.

B: I know, I've been working on it all day, but I haven't finished it yet. I'm sorry.

A: Well, you'll just have to stay here until you finish it, then.

B: Yes, of course. It'll be on your desk by nine o'clock.

Consolidation modules 12–16

Recording 1

a A: Excuse me!

B: Yes, ma'am.

A: I want to know, er, was my bedroom cleaned this morning?

B: Yes, all the rooms are cleaned every morning, ma'am.

A: Well. I have a problem, then.

B: Oh dear, is your room not satisfactory?

A: No, it's not that. It's just that I can't find some earrings I left on the table by the bed ...

b A: Tina, what's the matter?

B: Oh, nothing really. It's just Jake.

A: Oh no, what's he done now?

B: Well, he said he saw me with another boy outside the movie theater.

A: Is that true? Did you go to the movies with someone else?

B: Yes, but it was just my friend Tom.

A: So, did you tell Jake that?

B: Yes, of course I did, but he said he didn't believe me and then he said he never wanted to see me again!

A: Oh dear, come on, let's go and have some coffee and talk about it.

c A: Hi, Paul. How was your vacation?

B: Oh, don't talk about it. It was really terrible!

A: Oh no. Why? What happened?

B: Well, the hotel was nothing like the picture in the brochure. The rooms were really small, the food was horrible, all the staff were rude ...

A: How awful! But the other people were nice?

B: Well, they were nice, yes, but I don't think that any of them were under fifty.

A: Oh dear. So you won't go there next year, then?

B: You're right. I wouldn't go there again if you gave me £10,000! I'm going to stay here next year!

d A: OK, ma'am, could you tell me exactly what happened?

B: Well, I got home at about nine o'clock, and I went straight into the kitchen, to make a cup of coffee ...

A: And you didn't notice anything unusual?

B: No. I was very tired, and I was thinking about work, but when I went to the cupboard I stepped on some broken glass and then I saw that someone had broken the kitchen window. I was so shocked.

A: Yes, a very unpleasant experience for you. So what exactly was taken, do you think?

A M E R I C A N **CUTTING EDGE**

MINIDictionary



LEVEL 3

deborah tempest

Welcome to the *American Cutting Edge Minidictionary*!

The *Minidictionary* has been written using the same principles we use to produce standard general dictionaries like the *Longman Active Study Dictionary*. Just as in a full-size dictionary, there is all the information you need about pronunciation, grammar, style, and meaning, with clear example sentences to show the words in context.

The big difference is that the *Minidictionary* only includes words and meanings that appear somewhere in *American Cutting Edge Students' Book*. This makes it a quick and easy way of finding out more about the words you meet in the book. And it also gives you practice in how to use a monolingual English dictionary.

• What information does the *Minidictionary* provide?

- definitions written in a simple, strictly controlled defining vocabulary
- pronunciations in the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA)
- full information about grammar and the way words combine with each other, using a very simple system
- guidance on style, showing which words are formal, technical, informal, etc.
- information about words with similar and opposite meanings
- example sentences showing words in real contexts – many of them based on material in *American Cutting Edge* itself

• Which words and meanings does the *Minidictionary* include?

The *Minidictionary* explains all the vocabulary used in *American Cutting Edge Students' Book*, with the following exceptions:

- it does not include very simple words in English, which you are sure to know already. So you will not find entries for words like *house*, *small*, *car*, or *want* in the *Minidictionary*.
- it does not include meanings that are not used in *American Cutting Edge Students' Book*. For example, if you look up the word *arrange* in the *Longman Active Study Dictionary*, you will see that it has two different meanings. But if you look it up in the *Minidictionary*, you will find just one meaning – and that is the meaning that is used in the *Students' Book*.
- it does not include words used in the *Workbook*, *Teacher's Resource Book*, or in instructions to exercises in the *Students' Book*.

• How does the *Minidictionary* deal with grammar?

- every word in the *Minidictionary* is given a “word-class label” to show whether it is a noun, an adjective, etc. These are the labels we use:

<i>adjective</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>modal verb</i>
<i>adverb</i>	<i>preposition</i>	<i>prefix</i>
<i>noun</i>	<i>determiner</i>	

- every noun and verb gets an extra “code” to show whether it is countable or uncountable, transitive or intransitive:

<i>noun C</i>	countable noun (e.g. computer game)
<i>noun U</i>	uncountable noun (e.g. violence)
<i>verb T</i>	transitive verb (e.g. protect)
<i>verb I</i>	intransitive verb (e.g. fall)

- common grammar patterns are also shown in **bold type** in the example sentences:

demonstrate /dɪˈmɒnstreɪt/ *verb I* to march somewhere in a large group to protest against something:
*Thousands of people **demonstrated against** the war.*

A

about /ə'baʊt/ *adverb* a little more or a little less than a particular number or amount: *Her house is about 10 kilometers from here.* • *a young man aged about 20*

above /ə'biːv/ *preposition, adverb* **1** in a place that is higher than something else: *You can put your bag above your seat.* **2** in an earlier place on a page that you are reading: *Look at the pictures above and match them with the words in the box.*

⇨ The opposite of **above** is **below**.

abroad /ə'brɔ:d/ *adverb* when you **go abroad**, you go to another country: *Are you going abroad for your vacation?*

absolutely /əbsə'lʊtli, æbsə'lʊtli/ *adverb* completely: *I absolutely hate beer.*

accessory /ək'sesəri/ *noun* **C accessories** are things like shoes, bags, and hats that you wear or carry to help make your clothes look attractive

accident /'æksɪdənt/ *noun* **C** a bad event that causes damage, injury, or death, for example when something gets broken or when a car hits another car: *How did the accident happen?* • *There's been an accident.*

accidentally /'æksɪdəntəli/ *adverb* when something happens **accidentally**, you did not plan it or try to make it happen: *Tom kicked his ball over the wall and accidentally broke a window.*

accommodations /ə'kɑ:mə'deɪʃnz/ *noun* **U** a place to live or a place to stay; a room, apartment, or house: *expensive accommodations*

according to /ə'kɔ:rdɪŋ tu:/ *preposition* **1** this is what someone says: *According to one news report, the actress is getting married.* **2** when one thing changes because of something else: *The cost of houses can be very different according to which part of the country you live in.*

account /ə'kaʊnt/ *noun* **C** **1** when you have an **account** with a bank, or a **bank account**, you keep your money there and can use it when you need it: *Every student needs to open a bank account.* **2** the **accounts department** in a business or organization is the place where the records are kept of the money that the organization spends and receives

accountant /ə'kaʊntənt/ *noun* **C** someone whose job is to keep records of the money that a business or organization spends and receives: *Your accountant can explain the new tax forms.*

accurate /'ækjʊrət/ *adjective* completely correct, with no mistakes: *Check that your grammar and spelling is accurate before you hand in your homework.*

achieve /ə'tʃi:v/ *verb* **T** to do something special or difficult by trying very hard: *Mozart achieved success at a very young age.*

across /ə'krɔ:s/ *preposition* from one side to the other: *She drove across Australia.* • *There are lots of bridges across the River Thames.*

acting /'æktɪŋ/ *noun* **U** the work of being an actor: *an acting career* • *She stopped acting and became a politician.*

⇨ The verb is to **act**.

active /'æktɪv/ *adjective* **1** always busy and doing different things, especially physical activities: *A lot of kids are not very active – they prefer watching TV to playing sports.* **2** an **active** volcano is a mountain that can explode and pour out fire and hot rocks

actor /'æktər/ *noun* **C** someone who performs in a movie, play, or on television: *a famous actor like Tom Cruise*

⇨ A woman who does this can be called an **actor** or an **actress**.

addict /'ædɪkt/ *noun* **C** **1** someone who spends a lot of time doing something, and does not seem able to stop doing it: *Chris is a real computer games addict.* **2** someone who takes harmful drugs and cannot stop taking them: *help for heroin addicts*

addiction /ə'dɪkʃn/ *noun* **1 C** something that someone cannot stop doing: *Drinking coffee is one of my addictions.* **2 U** when someone cannot stop doing something: *Jan has an addiction to cigarettes.*

address book /ə'dres bʊk/ *noun* **C** a small book for writing people's addresses and telephone numbers in

adjective /'ædʒektɪv/ *noun* **C** a word that describes a noun or a pronoun. It tells you what something is like. *Green, new, and asleep* are adjectives in these sentences: *She's wearing a green dress.* • *I have a new bike.* • *The baby is asleep.*

admire /əd'maɪr/ *verb* **T** to like and respect someone, for example because they have done something very special: *People admire her as an artist and as a writer.*

admit /əd'mɪt/ *verb* **T** to agree that something is true, even though you would prefer not to say this: *Do you admit that you were wrong?* • *He admitted killing his wife.*

A

about /ə'baʊt/ *adverb* a little more or a little less than a particular number or amount: *Her house is about 10 kilometers from here.* • *a young man aged about 20*

above /ə'bʌv/ *preposition, adverb* **1** in a place that is higher than something else: *You can put your bag above your seat.* **2** in an earlier place on a page that you are reading: *Look at the pictures above and match them with the words in the box.*

⇨ The opposite of **above** is **below**.

abroad /ə'brɔ:d/ *adverb* when you **go abroad**, you go to another country: *Are you going abroad for your vacation?*

absolutely /'æbsəlu:tli, æbsə'lu:tli/ *adverb* completely: *I absolutely hate beer.*

accessory /ək'sesəri/ *noun* **C** **accessories** are things like shoes, bags, and hats that you wear or carry to help make your clothes look attractive

accident /'æksɪdənt/ *noun* **C** a bad event that causes damage, injury, or death, for example when something gets broken or when a car hits another car: *How did the accident happen?* • *There's been an accident.*

accidentally /'æksɪdəntəli/ *adverb* when something happens **accidentally**, you did not plan it or try to make it happen: *Tom kicked his ball over the wall and accidentally broke a window.*

accommodations /ə'kɒ:mə'deɪʃnz/ *noun* **U** a place to live or a place to stay; a room, apartment, or house: *expensive accommodations*

according to /ə'kɔ:rdɪŋ tu:/ *preposition* **1** this is what someone says: *According to one news report, the actress is getting married.* **2** when one thing changes because of something else: *The cost of houses can be very different according to which part of the country you live in.*

account /ə'kaʊnt/ *noun* **C** **1** when you have an **account** with a bank, or a **bank account**, you keep your money there and can use it when you need it: *Every student needs to open a bank account.* **2** the **accounts department** in a business or organization is the place where the records are kept of the money that the organization spends and receives

accountant /ə'kaʊntənt/ *noun* **C** someone whose job is to keep records of the money that a business or organization spends and receives: *Your accountant can explain the new tax forms.*

accurate /'ækjʊrət/ *adjective* completely correct, with no mistakes: *Check that your grammar and spelling is accurate before you hand in your homework.*

achieve /ə'tʃi:v/ *verb* **T** to do something special or difficult by trying very hard: *Mozart achieved success at a very young age.*

across /ə'krɒs/ *preposition* from one side to the other: *She drove across Australia.* • *There are lots of bridges across the River Thames.*

acting /'æktɪŋ/ *noun* **U** the work of being an actor: *an acting career* • *She stopped acting and became a politician.*

⇨ The verb is **to act**.

active /'æktɪv/ *adjective* **1** always busy and doing different things, especially physical activities: *A lot of kids are not very active – they prefer watching TV to playing sports.* **2** an **active** volcano is a mountain that can explode and pour out fire and hot rocks

actor /'æktər/ *noun* **C** someone who performs in a movie, play, or on television: *a famous actor like Tom Cruise*

⇨ A woman who does this can be called an **actor** or an **actress**.

addict /'ædɪkt/ *noun* **C** **1** someone who spends a lot of time doing something, and does not seem able to stop doing it: *Chris is a real computer games addict.* **2** someone who takes harmful drugs and cannot stop taking them: *help for heroin addicts*

addiction /ə'dɪkʃn/ *noun* **1** **C** something that someone cannot stop doing: *Drinking coffee is one of my addictions.* **2** **U** when someone cannot stop doing something: *Jan has an addiction to cigarettes.*

address book /ə'dres bʊk/ *noun* **C** a small book for writing people's addresses and telephone numbers in

adjective /'ædʒəktɪv/ *noun* **C** a word that describes a noun or a pronoun. It tells you what something is like. *Green, new, and asleep* are adjectives in these sentences: *She's wearing a green dress.* • *I have a new bike.* • *The baby is asleep.*

admire /əd'maɪr/ *verb* **T** to like and respect someone, for example because they have done something very special: *People admire her as an artist and as a writer.*

admit /əd'mɪt/ *verb* **T** to agree that something is true, even though you would prefer not to say this: *Do you admit that you were wrong?* • *He admitted killing his wife.*

annoyed /ə'nɔɪd/ *adjective* feeling rather angry: *I was **annoyed with** Steve because he didn't phone.* • *You look a bit annoyed – what's wrong?*

answer /'ænsər/ **1** *verb* I, T to say or write something when someone asks you a question: *Did you answer all the questions on the exam?* **2** **answer the phone** to pick up the telephone when it rings and speak **3** *noun* C what you say or write when someone asks you a question: *Which is the correct answer to question 1?*

answering machine /'ænsərɪŋ məʃiːn/ *noun* C a machine that answers the telephone and records messages for you while you are out

ant /ænt/ *noun* C a small black or red insect that lives in large groups

antibiotics /æntɪbɪə'ɒtɪks/ *noun* U a drug that can cure illnesses caused by bacteria: *She's taking antibiotics for the infection.*

antique dealer /æntɪk 'dɪlər/ *noun* C someone whose job is buying and selling furniture, jewelry, etc., that is old and valuable

apart from /ə'pɑːrt frəm/ *preposition* **1** as well as or in addition to something else: *Do you speak any other languages apart from English?* **2** except for: *There's no food in the fridge apart from some cheese and eggs.*

apartment /ə'pɑːrtmənt/ *noun* C a set of rooms on one floor of a building where someone lives: *They live in a beautiful old apartment building in the center of Paris.*

⇨ In British English you can also say **flat**: a block of flats.

appear /ə'pɪr/ *verb* I **1** to be on television, in a play or movie, etc.: *She first **appeared on** television as a child actor.* **2** if something **appears** somewhere, you see it or notice it there: *The story first **appeared in** the newspapers yesterday.* • *A face appeared in the window.*

appearance /ə'pɪrəns/ *noun* U the way someone or something looks: *Cindy Crawford is very beautiful; she doesn't have to worry about her appearance.*

application /æplɪ'keɪʃn/ *noun* C a letter or form that you send when you apply for a job: *a letter of application* • *Please **complete/fill out** the application form and send or fax it back.*

apply for /ə'plai fɔːr/ *verb* T to send a letter or form in order to ask formally for something such as a job, a document, or a chance to

study somewhere: *Are you going to apply for that job?*

approximately /ə'prɑːksɪmətli/ *adverb* about but not exactly: *The airport is approximately 20 kilometers from the city.*

arcade /ɑːrkeɪd/ *noun* C a place where people can go to play games on machines or video screens. They put money into the machine to start the game: *a video arcade*

architect /ɑːrkɪtekt/ *noun* C someone whose job is to design buildings

area /'eriə/ *noun* C **1** part of a city, country, or place: *Which area of London do you live in?* • *There is a big play area for children in the park.* **2** a subject or particular part of a subject: *Which area of the job are you most interested in?*

argue /ɑːrgjuː/ *verb* I to talk angrily with someone because you do not agree: *Jane and her sister are always arguing.* • *Do you ever **argue with** your parents?*

arithmetic /ə'rɪθmətɪk/ *noun* U working with numbers to find the answer to something: *Adding and subtracting are forms of arithmetic.*

armor /ɑːrmər/ *noun* U a type of metal clothing that soldiers used to wear in the past to protect their bodies while they were fighting

army /ɑːrmi/ *noun* C a large group of soldiers who are trained to fight on land: *Phil is in the army.*

arrange /ə'reɪndʒ/ *verb* I, T to make plans so that something can happen, for example a meeting or a party: *What have you arranged to do this weekend?* • *She's **arranged to go out with** Maya.* • *I need to arrange a babysitter for this evening.*

arrangement /ə'reɪndʒmənt/ *noun* C **arrangements** all the things that you have to organize so that something can happen: *I don't have any **arrangements for** my vacation yet.*

arrest /ə'rest/ *verb* T the police **arrest** someone by catching them and taking them to a police station, if they think that person has done something illegal: *The police arrested Mr. Archer yesterday.* • *He was arrested at the airport.*

art gallery /ɑːrt 'gæləri/ *noun* C a building or large room where people can go and look at paintings and other works of art

article /ɑːrtɪkl/ *noun* C a report in a newspaper or magazine: *It's true – read what it says in this article!*

ashtray /ˈæʃtreɪ/ *noun* C a flat container you use to put the ash in when you are smoking a cigarette

ask /æsk/ *verb* I, T **1** to get an answer from someone using a question: "What's your telephone number?" asked Jo. • I'd like to **ask you** a few questions **about** what you did in your last job. **2** to say that you want someone to give you something, or do something for you: Katie **asked for** some ice cream.

aspirin /ˈæsprɪn/ *noun* C, U a common medicine for reducing pain, which people take when they have a headache, a pain in their back, etc.

assassination /əˌsæsɪˈneɪʃn/ *noun* C, U when someone kills a famous or powerful person: the assassination of John Lennon
⇨ The verb is **assassinate**: Martin Luther King was assassinated.

assistant /əˈsɪstənt/ *noun* C someone whose job is to work with a more important person and help them do their job: If I'm not here, you can leave a message with my **personal assistant**. • Paul is the **assistant chef** of a restaurant in London.

associate /əˈsəʊʃɪət, əˈsəʊsi-/ *verb* T if one person is **associated** with another, they are connected in some way, for example by working together or being friends: She has been associated with the company for nearly 20 years.

at /æt/ *preposition* **1** use **at** to show where someone or something is: Jan is at work. **2** use **at** to show when something happens: I get up at seven o'clock. **3** towards someone or something: Look at the camera, please! **4** **at all** in any way: She didn't help at all. • "Is it far?" "No, not at all."

ate /et, eɪt/ the past tense of **eat**

athletic /æθˈletɪk/ *adjective* with a strong and healthy-looking body

atmosphere /ˈætməsfiə/ *noun* C the way that a place makes you feel when you are there, for example whether it makes you happy or unhappy: The school has a really friendly atmosphere.

attract /əˈtrækt/ *verb* T to make people go to a place because they are interested to see what is there: The hotel tries to attract young families by offering activities for children. • The museum attracts thousands of visitors every year.

attractive /əˈtræktɪv/ *adjective* **1** good-looking: an attractive man **2** pleasant and interesting to look at: She has made the room look very attractive.

automatic /ˌɒtəˈmætɪk/ *adjective* an **automatic** machine can work by itself, without a person to control it: I don't know much about photography – I have an automatic camera.

available /əˈvəɪləbl/ *adjective* **1** not busy, and therefore able to see someone or do something for them: I'd like to talk to Dr. Walker. Is she available? **2** ready for someone to have or use: The movie is now available on video.

average /ˈævərɪdʒ/ *adjective* **1** the **average person/child**, etc. most typical people, children, etc.: How long does the average person live in this country? **2** **on average** what is most typical: Most people sleep for seven hours a night on average.

awake /əˈweɪk/ *adjective* not asleep: Is the baby still awake?

award /əˈwɔːrd/ *noun* C a special prize for something you have achieved: He received an award for his bravery during the war.

awful /ˈɔːfl/ *adjective* very bad or unpleasant: What an awful color! • The weather's awful, isn't it?

B

back /bæk/ **1** *adjective* behind or at the back of something: the back door (=at the back of a house) **2** *noun* C the part of something that is opposite the front: The index is at the **back of the book**. **3** *noun* C the long flat part of your body between the shoulders and the bottom: Babies should sleep on their backs.
⇨ The opposite of these meanings of **back** is **front**.

4 *adverb* where someone or something was before: Sue's going back to college next week. • I'll be back at about 3 o'clock. • The teacher will give back the homework tomorrow.

backache /ˈbækeɪk/ *noun* C, U pain in your back

backpack /ˈbækpæk/ *noun* C a large bag that you can carry on your back, especially for walking or camping

back seat /bæk ˈsi:t/ *noun* C the seat behind the front seat in a car

bad /bəd/ *adjective* **1** not good or nice: bad weather **2** serious or severe: I have a bad

headache. **3 bad for you** something that is **bad for you**, is harmful for your health: *Smoking is bad for you.* **4 bad for** something that is **bad for** a place, situation, etc., can damage it: *Cars are bad for the environment.*

⇨The opposite of **bad for** is **good for**.

badly /'bædli/ *adverb* **1** in a bad way: *I did badly in the exam.* **2** seriously or very much: *He hurt himself badly when he fell off his bike.*

bagel /'beɪgl/ *noun* C a type of small round bread with a hole in the middle

baker /'beɪkər/ *noun* C someone whose job is making bread and pastries

balcony /'bælkəni/ *noun* C an area built outside a window on an upstairs floor of a building where you can stand or sit

bandage /'bændɪdʒ/ *noun* C a soft white piece of material that you put around an injured part of the body

Band-Aid /'bændeɪd/ (*trademark*) name for a piece of sticky material that you put over a cut on your skin

bang /bæŋ/ *verb* I to make a loud noise by hitting something: *The door was banging in the wind.*

bank account /'bæŋk əkaʊnt/ *noun* C when you have a **bank account**, or an **account** with a bank, you keep your money there and can use it when you need it: *Every student needs to open a bank account.*

bar /bɑːr/ *noun* C **1** a place where you can drink alcoholic drinks: *a cocktail bar* **2** a long wooden table in a restaurant, pub, etc., where drinks are served: *I went to the bar to get some drinks.*

barbeque /'bɑːrbɪkjʊː/ *noun* C a party where you cook and eat food on a fire outside

bartender /'bɑːrtendər/ *noun* C a man whose job is to serve drinks in a bar, pub, or restaurant

⇨A woman who does this job is called a **barmaid** in British English. You can also say **barman**, for a man in British English.

baseball /'beɪsbɔːl/ *noun* U a game with two teams (=groups of players) that you play on a field. The players try to get points by hitting a ball with a bat and running around four points called **bases**

bathrobe /'bæθrəʊb/ a piece of clothing like a loose coat for men or women that you wear before or after a bath, or when you get up from bed.

bathtub /'bæθtʌb/ *noun* C the large container in a **bathroom** that you fill with hot water and lie or sit in to wash yourself: *a long bath* (=when you are in a bathtub for a long time)

• *I want to **take a bath**.* • *Can we have a room with a bath?* (=with a bathroom)

beach /bi:tʃ/ *noun* C an area between the sea and the land, where people often go to relax, swim in the sea, etc.: *The island has some beautiful white sandy beaches.* • *Is the hotel near **the beach**?*

beard /bɜːd/ *noun* C hair that a man grows on his face and chin

beat /bi:t/ [**beat, have beaten**] *verb* T to win a game or competition against another person or group: *The other team played very well and beat us easily.* • *No one can beat Mary, she's the champion.*

beautiful /'bjʊ:tɪfl/ *adjective* **1** a person, especially a woman, who is **beautiful** is very nice to look at: *Do you think Julia Roberts is beautiful?* **2** something that is **beautiful** is very nice to look at, feel, or hear: *The weather was beautiful.* • *Italy is a very beautiful country.*

beauty /'bjʊ:ti/ *noun* U when someone or something is beautiful: *Everyone admires her beauty.* • *Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.* (=every person has their own idea about what is beautiful)

become /bɪ'kʌm/ [**became, have become**] *verb* T to change or grow and start to be something else: *She hopes to become a doctor.* • *Do you want to become famous?*

behind /bɪ'hænd/ *preposition* at the back of someone or something: *I was driving behind a bus.* • *Behind the house there is a large yard.*

⇨The opposite of **behind** is **in front of**.

beholder /bɪ'həʊldər/ *noun* C the person who is looking at something [FORMAL]

believe /bɪ'li:v/ *verb* T to think that something is true, or that someone is telling you the truth: *The police did not believe Jones's story.* • *People used to **believe that** the world was flat.* • *Tim says he doesn't like Sophie, but I don't believe him.*

believe in /bɪ'li:v ɪn/ *verb* T **1** to be sure that something exists: *Do you believe in God?* **2** to support something because you are sure that it is right or good: *Martin Luther King believed in peace and equal rights for black people.*

bellhop

bellhop /'belhu:p/ *noun* C a man whose job is to open doors and carry bags for people in a hotel

belong /br'lɒŋ/ *verb* T if something **belongs in/to/at**, etc., a place, that is the correct place for it: *The map belongs in the car, I always keep it there.*

below /br'ləʊ/ *preposition, adverb* in a lower position or place: *Sandra lives below us, on the second floor.* • *Read the passage and answer the questions below.*

⇨The opposite of **below** is **above**.

best friend /best 'frend/ *noun* C the friend that you like most: *Kate and I have been best friends since we were at school.*

bet /bet/ **1** *verb* T to try to win money by paying some money and saying what you think the result of a race, a game, etc., will be. If you are right, you win more money, but if you are wrong you lose the money you paid: *He bet \$50 on a horse called Moonlight.* **2** *noun* C money that you pay to say what you think the result of a race, a game, etc., will be: *Oscar put a bet on Italy to win the game.*

better off /betər 'ɒf/ *adjective* richer, happier, or more successful than you were before: *Are we better off with the new government?*

between /br'twi:n/ *preposition* **1** in the space in the middle of two things or people: *There's a bookcase between the window and table.* **2** more than one number, amount, distance, or time, and less than another: *We'll arrive sometime between 10 and 11 in the evening.* • *The rooms cost between \$20 and \$50 a night.* • *You can choose between a motel or bed and breakfast accommodations.* **3** to and from two places: *There's a small sea between the two islands.* **4** say this when you want to compare two people, places, or things: *What's the difference between these two cars?*

beverage /'bevərɪdʒ/ *noun* C a drink [FORMAL]: *A sign on the wall said "Hot and Cold Beverages."*

bicycle /'baɪsɪkl/ *noun* C a vehicle with two wheels. You sit on it and make the wheels turn by pushing the pedals around with your feet: *I learned to ride a bicycle when I was a child.*

⇨The short form of **bicycle** is **bike**.

big /bɪg/ *adjective* **1** large; not small: *London is a very big city.* • *How big is your car?* **2** important or great: *This is a big game for our soccer club.*

billfold /bɪlfəʊld/ *noun* C a small flat case for carrying paper money

bin /bɪn/ *noun* C a container for storing things in, especially a large amount

black /blæk/ *adjective* **1** of the color black; of the darkest color: *a black dress* **2** someone who is **black** has dark skin, for example someone from a country in Africa, or an American person whose family came from Africa a long time ago

⇨Black people in Britain are often called **Afro-Caribbean**. Black people in the US are often called **African-American**.

bleed /bli:d/ [bled, have bled] *verb* **1** I to have blood coming out of your body because of a cut or injury: *I cut my foot on some glass and it started bleeding.* **2** T to cut a person or animal so that blood comes out: *Doctors used to bleed patients as a cure for some illnesses.*

board game /'bɔ:rd geɪm/ *noun* C a game such as chess that two or more people play indoors on a board (=a flat piece of wood)

boiling /'bɔɪlɪŋ/ *adjective* very hot: *The weather in Greece was boiling hot.* • *It was boiling in the car.*

book /bʊk/ *verb* T to arrange to have a ticket, hotel room, tour, etc., by asking for it to be kept for you: *I've booked a table for 7:30.* • *You can book your tickets over the Internet.*

border /'bɔ:rdər/ *noun* C the line that separates two countries: *the border between France and Spain*

bored /bɔ:rd/ *adjective* feeling tired and unhappy because you have nothing interesting to do: *If you lived in New York, you'd never get bored, there's so much to do.* • *I'm bored – let's go out somewhere.*

boring /'bɔ:ɪrɪŋ/ *adjective* something that is **boring** makes you feel tired and unhappy because it is not interesting at all: *a boring job* • *I find sitting on a beach all day incredibly boring.*

⇨The opposite of **boring** is **interesting**.

borrow /'bɔ:rou/ *verb* T to take or use something that belongs to someone else, when you agree to give it back to them later: *Can I borrow your pen?* • *I borrowed £2000 from the bank.*

⇨When you **borrow** something from another person, they **lend** it to you.

boss /bɒ:s/ *noun* C the person who is in charge of you at work: *Do you like your new boss?*

bottom /'bɒ:təm/ *noun* the lowest part of something: *The house is at the bottom of a hill.* • *Please sign your name there, at the bottom of the page.*

⇨The opposite of **bottom** is **top**.

bought /bɔ:t/ the past tense and past participle of **buy**

bowl /boul/ *noun* C a round deep dish for putting food in: *a bowl of lettuce* • *a salad bowl*

bowler hat /'boulər 'hæt/ *noun* C a hard round black hat that businessmen sometimes wear. Bowler hats are very old-fashioned nowadays

boxing /'bɔ:ksɪŋ/ *noun* U a sport in which two people fight wearing very big thick gloves

boyfriend /'bɔɪfreɪnd/ *noun* C a boy or man that someone has a special, romantic relationship with: *Have you met Debbie's new boyfriend?*

brake /breɪk/ *noun* C a thing in a vehicle that you press with your foot or hand to make it go slower or stop: *The brakes work more slowly in wet weather.* • *I quickly put my foot on the brake.*

brave /breɪv/ *adjective* not afraid to do something dangerous or frightening: *a brave soldier*

bravery /'breɪvəri/ *noun* U when someone is not afraid to do something dangerous or frightening: *She won an award for bravery after she rescued her brother from a fire.*

break /breɪk/ [**broke**, **have broken**] **1 verb** I, T if you **break** something, you drop or hit it and it separates into two or more pieces: *I dropped a glass but fortunately it didn't break.* • *The kitchen window's broken.* • *Julie fell on the ice and broke her arm.* **2 noun** C a period of time when you stop working or studying in order to rest: *I'm tired – let's have a break.* • *a coffee break*

break down /breɪk 'daʊn/ *verb* I if a car or machine **breaks down**, it stops working

breakfast cereal /'brekfəst 'sɪriəl/ *noun* C a food made from a grain like wheat or corn that you eat with milk for breakfast

breakfast show /'brekfəst ʃəʊ/ *noun* C a radio program that you can listen to early in the morning

break into /breɪk 'ɪntu:/ *verb* T to go into a place using force in order to steal something: *Someone broke into my house last night.*

briefcase /'bri:fkeɪs/ *noun* C a hard bag you use when you are going to work or school for carrying papers and books

bright /braɪt/ *adjective* **1** something that is **bright** shines with a lot of light: *This lamp is not very bright.* **2** a **bright** color is strong and not at all pale: *a bright red hat*

brilliant /'brɪljənt/ *adjective* **1** very good or enjoyable [INFORMAL]: *The party was just brilliant!* **2** very clever: *Sue was a brilliant student.* • *What a brilliant idea!*

bring /brɪŋ/ [**brought**, **have brought**] *verb* T **1** go somewhere with something or someone: *Can I bring a friend to the party?* **2** to make something happen: *Does money always bring people happiness?*

bring back /brɪŋ 'bæk/ [**brought back**, **have brought back**] *verb* T to return something to a place: *You can bring it back if it doesn't fit.*

bring down /brɪŋ 'daʊn/ [**brought down**, **have brought down**] *verb* T to make something lower: *Aspirin will bring your temperature down.* (=make you less hot)

brochure /'brɒʃʃər/ *noun* C a magazine or book containing information and pictures about something: *a travel brochure*

broke /brɒk/ the past tense of **break**

broken /'brɒkən/ the past participle of **break**

brotherhood /'brʌðərhu:d/ *noun* C friendship and understanding between people

brought /brɔ:t/ the past tense and past participle of **bring**. See **bring**, **bring back**, **bring down**

bruise /bru:z/ *noun* C a blue or purple mark that you get on your skin after something hits it: *"How did you get that bruise on your leg?" "I fell off my bike."*

build /bɪld/ [**built**, **have built**] **1 verb** T to make something by putting the parts of it together: *They are going to build a new hospital over there.* • *The town is famous for shipbuilding.* **2 noun** C the shape and size of a person's body: *a man of average build*

building /'bɪldɪŋ/ *noun* C a place made of stone, wood, etc., with walls and a roof: *a tall modern building*

building site /'bɪldɪŋ saɪt/ *noun* C an area of land where people are building a house, school, etc.

built /bɪlt/ the past tense and past participle of **build**

bump /bʌmp/ *verb* T to hit something or someone with a hard knock: *The baby bumped his*

bungee jump

head on the corner of the table. • A careless bike rider **bumped into** me while I was crossing the road.

bungee jump /ˈbʌndʒi dʒʌmp/ *noun* C an activity that people do for pleasure. You are attached to an elastic rope and you jump from a very high place and snap back up again.

burn /bɜːn/ **1 verb** T if you **burn** a part of your body, fire or heat hurts and damages it: *I burned my hand on the stove.* • *That pan's hot! Don't burn yourself.* **2 verb** T if you **burn** something, you destroy it in a fire: *I am going to burn all this garbage in the yard.* **3 verb** I if something is **burning**, fire or heat is destroying it: *I can smell something burning in the kitchen.* **4 noun** C a place on your body that has been hurt and damaged by fire or heat: *Put cold water on a burn.*

business /ˈbiznɪs/ *noun* **1 C** a shop, factory, or organization that makes money by buying and selling things: *Bill Gates started his computer business when he was 19 years old.* **2 U** the amount of activity that a shop, factory, or organization does: *Small stores will lose business if they build the new supermarket here.* **3 U** work that is part of your job: *She's going to Spain on business.* (=because of her work) **4 C** a **dangerous/strange, etc.**, **business** a dangerous, strange, etc., situation or thing that happens: *Having a baby used to be a dangerous business for women.*

business lunch /ˈbiznɪs ˌlʌntʃ/ *noun* C when you have lunch with someone to talk about work that is part of your job

businessman /ˈbiznɪsmən/ *noun* C a man who works at a high level in a business: *Mr. Monroe is a successful businessman.*

⇨ A woman who does this is called a **businesswoman**.

busy /ˈbɪzi/ *adjective* **1** if you are **busy**, you have a lot of things to do: *Is the doctor busy this morning?* • *Women nowadays have very busy lives.* • *Tom always keeps busy on weekends.* • *I'm busy helping Nathalie move to her new apartment.* **2** a **busy** place is full of people, cars, or activity: *The diner is always busy at lunch time.*

buy /baɪ/ [**bought, have bought**] *verb* T to get something by paying money: *I need to buy a new suit.* • *Let me buy you a drink.*

by /baɪ/ *preposition* **1** near to a place: *a house by the river* **2** use **by** after a passive verb to

show who or what does something: *a dress designed by Armani* • *Thousands of people were killed by the hurricane.* **3** use **by** to say how you do something, how you travel, etc.: *Can I pay by credit card?* • *I prefer to travel by train.* **4** before a particular time: *She wants to be a millionaire by the time she's 25.*

C

cabin /ˈkæbɪn/ *noun* C a small room on a boat, for sleeping in

cake /keɪk/ *noun* C a sweet food that is made from flour, eggs, butter, and sugar and is cooked in an oven: *I'm making a birthday cake for Rose.*

calculate /ˈkælkjuleɪt/ *verb* T to find the answer to a sum by adding numbers together, multiplying them, etc.: *The travel agent will calculate the cost of your flights for you.*

calculator /ˈkælkjuleɪtər/ *noun* C a small electronic machine that can do mathematical calculations, such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division

call /kɔːl/ **1 verb** I, T to telephone someone: *I'll call you this evening.* **2 verb** T to give someone or something a name: *What do you call this in English?* • *The hotel was called Ocean Paradise.* **3 noun** C when you telephone someone: *Can I make a telephone call from here?*

calm /kɑːm/ *adjective* quiet and not afraid, worried, or angry: *You must stay calm and phone for a doctor.*

calm down /kɑːm ˈdaʊn/ *verb* T to make someone start feeling calm again after they have been frightened, worried, or angry: *The driver tried to calm the passengers down.*

camera /ˈkæmrə/ *noun* C a thing for taking photographs

campaign /kæmˈpeɪn/ *noun* C an organized plan designed to change people's opinions or get changes in the law: *an election campaign* (=when politicians try to persuade people to vote for them)

campground /ˈkæmpgraʊnd/ *noun* C a place where people can stay in their tents (=small houses made of cloth) on vacation. There are often toilets, showers, etc., at a campground: *We're staying on a campground near the beach.*

camping /kæmpɪŋ/ *noun* **U** when you live and sleep outside in a tent (=a small house made of cloth), especially for a vacation: *We're going camping in France this year.*

camp out /kæmp 'aʊt/ *verb* **I** to live and sleep outside for a short time: *We camped out under the stars.*

can /kæn/ *verb* **I** **1** to know how to do something: *Sara can speak German quite well.* **2** to be allowed to do something: *You can take photos in the castle.* **3** to be possible: *It's a nice day – we can have lunch outside.* **4** say this to ask questions: *Can I help you?* **5** say this with verbs like “hear,” “see,” and “smell”: *I can see the sea from the hotel window.* **6** *noun* **C** a round metal container that food and drinks are sold in: *a can of tomatoes*

can opener /kæn ɒpənər/ *noun* **C** a thing with a sharp edge that you can use for opening cans of food

canal /kə'næl/ *noun* **C** a long straight passage in the ground that is filled with water for boats to travel on: *Amsterdam is famous for its canals.* • *the Suez canal*

cancer /kænsər/ *noun* **C** a serious illness in which lumps grow in the body and destroy parts that are healthy: *He died of cancer.* • *lung cancer* (=cancer affecting the lungs)

candidate /kændɪdət/ *noun* **C** one of the people who have applied for a job, or who want to get elected in an election: *Anna was the best candidate for the job.* • *How many candidates are there for mayor?*

capital /kæpɪtl/ *noun* **C** the most important city in a country, usually where the government is: *What is the capital city of Spain?* • *the fashion capital of the world*

captive /kæptɪv/ *adjective* not able to escape; kept as a prisoner: *a captive animal*

card /kɑ:rd/ *noun* **cards** a set of 52 pieces of stiff paper with numbers and pictures that you use to play games: *a deck of cards* • *He won some money playing cards.*

car dealer /kɑ:r ,di:lər/ *noun* **C** a person whose job is to buy and sell cars

care /ker/ *verb* **I** to feel that something is important and so feel that you should worry about it: *The only thing Joe cares about is money.* • *It doesn't matter if you're old or young, nobody cares – we're all just here to have fun.*

career /kə'rɪr/ *noun* **C** the type of job you do for a large part of your life: *a singing career* (=a

career as a singer) • *Roberto is learning English to help his career.*

careful /'kerfl/ *adjective* **1** thinking a lot about what you are doing so that you do not make a mistake or have an accident: *Please be careful or you'll hurt yourself!* **2** **careful with money** not spending money on things that are unimportant

Caribbean /kæ'rɪ'bi:ən/ *noun* **the Caribbean** the sea near Central America where a group of islands called the West Indies are: *Caribbean food* • *Mike comes from the Caribbean.*

carnival /'kɑ:mɪvl/ *noun* **C** a big public event when people walk through the streets wearing colorful clothes, and there is a lot of music and dancing

carpenter /'kɑ:rpɪntər/ *noun* **C** a person whose job is to make/construct things out of wood

carry /'kæri/ *verb* **T** to hold something and take it with you somewhere: *He carried my bags upstairs to my room.* • *I can't carry this backpack, it's too heavy.*

cartoon /kɑ:tu:n/ *noun* **C** a movie that uses drawings or computer-generated images that gradually change so that they seem to be moving

cash /kæʃ/ *noun* **U** money, especially money that you carry with you in bills and coins

casino /kə'si:nou/ *noun* **C** a place where people go to gamble (=try and win money by playing games with cards, etc.)

cassette /kə'set/ *noun* **C** a small plastic box with audiotape inside that stores music and sound: *a cassette player* (=a machine that you use to play and record cassettes)

castle /kæsl/ *noun* **C** a large strong building that was built to keep the people inside safe from their enemies

catch /kætʃ/ [**caught, have caught**] *verb* **T** to be somewhere at the right time so you can get on a bus, train, or plane: *I catch the 8:30 train every morning.* • *We caught the last bus home.*

cathedral /kəθi:drəl/ *noun* **C** a large and important Christian church: *St. Paul's cathedral*

Catholic /kæθlɪk/ **1** *noun* **C** someone who follows the religion of the Roman Catholic church: *Andrew is a Catholic.* **2** *adjective* connected with the Roman Catholic religion and church: *a Catholic priest*

cattle /kætl/ *noun* **U** cows and bulls that are kept on a farm for their milk or meat

caught

caught /kɒ:t/ the past tense and past participle of **catch**

cause /kɒ:z/ **1** verb T to make something happen: *The fire caused a lot of damage.* • *Smoking causes lung cancer.* **2** 'cause write this as a short form of **because**

CD /si: 'di:/ noun C a thin, round flat disk made of plastic with music or sound recorded on it: *Paul has hundreds of CDs.* • a *CD player* (=a machine that you can listen to CDs on)

⇒CD means **Compact Disk**

CD-ROM /,si: di: 'rɒ:m/ noun C a CD you use with a computer with a lot of information stored on it

⇒CD-ROM means **Compact Disk Read-Only Memory**

ceiling /'si:lɪŋ/ noun C the flat surface in a room that is above your head: *a high ceiling*

celebrate /'seləbreɪt/ verb I,T to do something special and enjoyable on an important, happy occasion: *How would you like to celebrate your birthday?*

celebration /,seləbreɪʃn/ noun C an important, happy occasion or party, when something special has happened

celebrity /sɪ'lebrɪti/ noun C a famous person, for example an actor or someone who entertains people on television

cellphone /'selfəʊn/ a telephone that you can take with you wherever you go

century /'sentʃəri/ noun C a period of one hundred years

certainly /'sɜ:rtɪnli/ adverb say this when you are sure that something is true: *You're certainly very lucky to win a trip to Disney World!* • *My English has certainly improved since I've been in Mr. Ford's class.*

champion /'tʃæmpiən/ noun C a person who wins at a sport or game: *a tennis champion* • a *champion shopper* (=someone who does more shopping than anyone else)

change /tʃeɪndʒ/ **1** verb I to become different: *The sky suddenly changed from blue to gray.* **2** verb T to make something different: *They changed the law to give black people more rights.* **3** verb T to stop using or doing one thing and start using or doing another: *I changed seats with Jake so I could sit by the window.* • *She's much happier since she changed her job.* • *I change into some different clothes when I come home from school.* **4** verb T to exchange money from

one country for money from another: *You can change your money at the bank.* **5** **change your mind** to change a plan or decision, so that you decide to do something else: *Please change your mind and come swimming with us!* **6** noun U money in the form of coins: *Do you have any change for the coffee machine?* **7** noun U money you get back when you have paid more than something actually costs: *Here's your receipt and your change.*

chaos /'keɪɔ:s/ noun U a very disorganized situation in which a lot of different things are happening and no one is in control: *When the computers broke down at the bank there was chaos.*

chat /tʃæt/ **1** verb I to have a conversation with a friend: *I chatted to Cindy at the bus stop.* **2** noun C a conversation between friends: *Steve phoned me for a chat.*

cheap /tʃi:p/ adjective not expensive: *The hotel was quite cheap.*

check /tʃek/ verb **1** T to look at something to make sure that it is correct or is what you expect: *Check the meaning of words you don't know in a dictionary.* **2** noun C a piece of paper you are given in a restaurant that says how much you owe

cheerful /tʃɪrfl/ adjective happy and friendly

chef /ʃef/ noun C someone whose job is to cook in a restaurant or hotel

chess /tʃes/ noun U a game for two people on a board covered with black and white squares. Each player has an army of different pieces and tries to capture their opponent's king

chest /tʃest/ noun U the front part of your body where your lungs and heart are

chewing gum /tʃu:ɪŋ ɡʌm/ noun U a type of candy that you can chew for a long time, but you do not swallow

childbirth /tʃaɪldbɜ:θ/ noun U when a woman gives birth to a baby: *Women often died in childbirth in those days.*

choose /tʃu:z/ [**chose, have chosen**] verb T to decide to do or have the thing you like best: *I chose the chocolate ice cream.* • *At our school you can choose between lots of different sports and activities.* • *Kim chose to go to college after finishing high school.*

chose /tʃəʊz/ the past tense of **choose**

chosen /tʃəʊzn/ the past participle of **choose**

Christian /ˈkrɪstʃən/ **1 noun** C someone whose religion is Christianity: *They became Christians.* **2 adjective** connected with Christianity: *a Christian minister*

circus /ˈsɜːrkəs/ **noun** C an exciting show in a big round tent where you watch people performing clever tricks, clowns, and sometimes trained animals

civil rights /ˌsɪvəl ˈraɪts/ **noun plural** the rights of men and women of every religion and race to vote and to be treated equally by the law: *the American civil rights leader, Martin Luther King*

clean /kliːn/ **1 adjective** not dirty: *clean clothes* **2 verb** T to take away the dirt from something and make it clean: *Matt is cleaning his room.*

click /kɪk/ **verb** T **click on** to press a button on a mouse (=a thing you use to move a pointer around a computer screen) in order to do something on a computer: *Just click on the File menu to open a document.*

client /ˈklaɪənt/ **noun** C someone who pays a professional person, like a lawyer or an accountant, for their advice or services: *He stole some of his clients' money.* • *She has a lot of famous clients.*

cliff /klɪf/ **noun** C a very high rock with steep sides, especially near the edge of the sea

climate /ˈklaɪmət/ **noun** C the kind of weather that is typical of a place or area: *What's the climate like in Canada?* • *a hot climate* (=when the weather is usually hot all the time)

climbing /ˈklaɪmɪŋ/ **noun** U the sport of climbing mountains or rocks

close-up /ˈkloʊs ʌp/ **noun** C a photograph or piece of film that is taken very near to something so that you can see a lot of detail: *a close-up of the actor's face*

clothes /kloʊðz, kloʊz/ **noun plural** the things you wear such as pants, dresses, shirts, T-shirts, etc.: *I need some new clothes.*

club /klʌb/ **noun** C **1** an organization for people who share an activity or an interest: *I've decided to join a sports club and get fit.* **2** a professional sports organization which has players and members who support it: *Manchester United Football Club*

↪ Someone who pays to be part of a **club** is a **member** of it.

club sandwich /klʌb ˈsænwɪtʃ/ **noun** C a sandwich made from three pieces of bread with two layers of food between them

coach /kəʊtʃ/ **noun** C a person who teaches a sport: *Jon is a tennis coach.*

coal /kəʊl/ **noun** U a black rock that is found deep under the ground and is used as a form of heating

coal-mining /ˈkəʊl ˌmaɪnɪŋ/ **noun** U the work of digging coal out of the ground from a **coal mine** (=a large deep hole in the ground where coal is found)

coast /kəʊst/ **noun** C the area of a country that is close to the sea: *the south coast of England*

coffee maker /ˈkɒfi ˌmeɪkər/ **noun** C a machine for making coffee

coin /kɔɪn/ **noun** C a unit of money that is made from a round piece of metal

coincidence /kəʊɪnsɪdəns/ **noun** C when two similar things happen without being planned, and this surprises you: *What a coincidence that we both have the same birthday!*

cold /kəʊld/ **1 adjective** not warm; having a low temperature: *The room felt cold.* • *a cold shower* **2 noun** C a mild illness that you get in your nose and throat: *I have a bad cold.*

collapse /kəˈlæps/ **verb** I if a business or company **collapses**, it fails suddenly and completely, usually because of money problems: *The travel agency col-lapsed and thousands of people lost their money.*

collect /kəˈlekt/ **verb** T **1** to find or buy things that are similar and keep them because you are interested in them: *The kids are collecting dolls from cereal boxes at the moment.* **2** to get things from different people or places and bring them together: *Can you collect all the books at the end of the class please?* **3** to go somewhere in order to take someone or something away: *You can collect your tickets at the airport.* • *I collect my children from school at 3 o'clock.*

collection /kəˈlektʃn/ **noun** C the things that someone has collected: *Ben has a big collection of toy cars.*

collector /kəˈlektər/ **noun** C a person who collects things as a hobby: *a stamp collector*

colony /ˈkɔːləni/ **noun** C a community of people who go to live in a new country: *Do you think there will ever be a colony on the moon?*

colorful /ˈkɒlərfʊl/ **adjective** full of color or with lots of different colors: *a colorful garden*

comb /kəʊm/ **1 noun** C a flat plastic or metal thing you use to make your hair tidy **2 verb** T to make your hair tidy using a comb: *Ellie likes combing her dolls' hair.*

combination /kɑ:mbrɪneɪʃn/ *noun* C two different things that you do or use at the same time: *You need a combination of red and yellow to make orange.*

combine /kəm'baɪn/ *verb* T **1** to join two or more things together: *They are going to combine two smaller schools into one large one.* **2** to do two different things at the same time: *You should combine a low fat diet with more exercise if you want to lose weight.*

come /kʌm/ *verb* I **1** to arrive at or move towards a place: *People from all over the country came to hear Martin Luther King speak.* **2** to happen: *Success came in 1988 with the movie Moonstruck.* **3 come in useful** to be useful: *A dictionary comes in useful when you're learning a language.*

comedienne /kə'mɪdi:ən/ *noun* C a woman whose job is to tell jokes and make people laugh

⇒ A man who does this is called a **comedian**.

comedy /kɑ:mədi/ *noun* C a movie or play that is funny

comfort /'kʌmfərt/ *noun* C a thing that makes your life easier and more pleasant: *You have to live without all the usual comforts when you go camping.*

comfortable /'kʌmfətəbl/ *adjective* **comfortable** clothes, shoes, chairs, etc. feel nice to wear, sit on, or be in: *The hotel was clean and comfortable.* • *a very comfortable bed*

command /kə'mænd/ **at my command** if something or someone is **at your command**, you can control them or make them do what you want

commercial /kə'mɜ:ʃl/ *noun* C an advertisement on television or radio: *a TV commercial for breakfast cereal*

communicate /kə'mju:nikeɪt/ *verb* I to exchange information with another person, for example by speaking, writing, telephoning, etc.: *You can communicate with people quickly and easily by email.* • *Her husband is Spanish but they usually communicate in English.*

communication /kə'mju:nɪkeɪʃn/ *noun* U the process of exchanging information with other people: *Speaking is the quickest method of communication between people.*

communism /kə'mju:nɪzəm/ *noun* U a political system based on the idea that business should be controlled by the state and should not be privately owned and that society should treat people equally

company /'kʌmpəni/ *noun* C a group of people in a business that makes things to sell or gives people a service: *She works for a big computer company.*

compare /kəm'per/ *verb* T to look at two or more things, people, ideas, etc. in order to see how different or similar they are: *Compare the two pictures and say which you like best.* • *There is much better health care now compared to 50 years ago.* (=when you compare it to 50 years ago)

compete /kəm'pi:t/ *verb* I to play in a competition or sports event and try to win: *How many people are competing in the race this year?*

competition /kə'mpə'tɪʃn/ *noun* C a game or test that people try to win in order to get a prize: *Jill entered a competition in the newspaper and won a new car.* • *The first prize in the "Teacher of the Year" competition is a vacation in Europe.*

complain /kəm'pleɪn/ *verb* I to say that you are fed up or not satisfied about something, for example because it is annoying, unfair, or not good enough: *Local people are complaining about the amount of traffic downtown.*

complete /kəm'pli:t/ **1 verb** T to finish doing something, or to do everything that needs doing: *You can complete this exercise for homework.* • *Please complete the form and sign it.* **2 adjective** in every way: *Your room is a complete mess!* • *The party was a complete surprise to me.*

completely /kəm'pli:tli/ *adverb* totally and in every way: *Do you think cellphones will replace ordinary phones completely?* • *Leo and his brother are completely different.*

computer game /kəm'pjʊ:tər 'geɪm/ *noun* C a game you can play on a computer

computer programing /kəm'pjʊ:tər 'prəʊgræmɪŋ/ *noun* U the work of writing instructions for a computer to make it do a particular task

concentrate /kə'nsəntreɪt/ *verb* I to think carefully about what you are doing and give all your attention to it: *The accident happened because the driver wasn't concentrating.*

concert /'kɔ:nsərt/ *noun* C a performance of music played for lots of people

confident /kə'nfɪdənt/ *adjective* **1** sure that something will happen and will be successful: *The team are confident that they will win the game.* **2** sure that you can do some-

thing well so you do not feel shy or worry about failing: *She is a happy, confident child.*
confidently /kən'fɪdəntli/ *adverb* in a way that shows you are confident about doing something: *Ella speaks French very confidently.*

confirm /kən'fɜ:rm/ *verb* T to tell someone that something is definitely going to happen: *Please telephone the travel agent to confirm your plane reservations.*

connected with /kə'nektɪd wɪð/ having some connection with: *I love all the customs connected with Christmas.*

connection /kə'nekʃn/ *noun* C, U 1 a way in which two people, facts, or situations are related or similar, so that one affects or influences the other: *What is the connection between these words?* 2 a person that you know and who you can ask to help you: *He had connections with the local mafia.*

consider /kən'sɪdər/ *verb* T to think or believe that something is true: *Do you consider Cindy Crawford beautiful?* (=Do you think that she is beautiful?)

contact /'kɑ:ntækt/ 1 *verb* T to communicate with someone, by writing, telephoning, etc.: *If you need more information you can contact me on this number.* 2 *noun* U when people communicate with each other: *The manager still has a lot of personal contact with the customers.* (=he often talks to them himself)

contact lens /'kɑ:ntækt 'lenz/ *noun* C a small, round piece of very thin plastic that you put on your eye to help you to see better

continue /kən'tɪnju:/ *verb* I to go on doing something and not stop: *I will continue to study English until I pass my exams.* • *Cher's success continued with hit songs and movies in the 1980s.*

contract /'kɑ:ntɹækt/ *noun* C a legal agreement between people or companies that says what work someone will do, and how much they will be paid: *The athlete signed a contract to advertise sports clothing.* • *a 10 million dollar contract* (=a contract that will pay 10 million dollars for something)

control /kən'trəʊl/ 1 *verb* T to make a machine or piece of equipment do what you want it to do: *This button controls the car radio.* • *The spaceship is controlled by computers.* 2 *out of control* impossible to stop: *By the time the fire truck arrived, the fire was out of control.*

controlled /kən'trəʊld/ *adjective* done in a very careful and exact way

cook /kʊk/ *verb* I,T to make food ready to eat by preparing it and heating it in different ways: *Do you know how to cook?* • *I really enjoy cooking.* • *You can cook potatoes by boiling, baking, or frying them.*

cool /ku:l/ *adjective* 1 quite cold but not too cold: *a cool drink* • *cool clothes* (=clothes that you wear to keep cool in warm weather) 2 say this to show you like something a lot [INFORMAL]: *These are really cool running shoes.*

corkscrew /'kɔ:kskru:/ *noun* C a thing you use to pull the cork (=piece of soft wood) out of a bottle of wine

corner /'kɔ:mər/ *noun* C 1 the part of something where two lines or edges meet: *the corner of the table* 2 an area of a country, especially one that is difficult to get to: *She has traveled to every corner of the world.* (=to a lot of different, far away places)

corner store /'kɔ:mər stɔ:r/ *noun* C a small store that sells food, newspapers, etc. that is near where people live, for example on the corner of a street

correct /kə'rekt/ 1 *adjective* not wrong; without any mistakes: *Is this the correct answer?* 2 *verb* T to change something that was wrong and make it right: *Give your homework to the teacher and she will correct it for you.* • *I try to correct myself if I make mistakes.*

corruption /kə'rʌpʃn/ *noun* U dishonest and illegal behavior in business, politics, etc.: *Our party aims to get rid of corruption in local government.*

cosmetics /kɔ:zmetɪks/ *noun plural* creams and powders that you can put on your skin to make you look more attractive

⇒ Another word for this is **makeup**.

cost /kɒst/ [cost, have cost] 1 *verb* T to be the amount of money that you must pay to buy something: *How much does this bag cost?* • *The earrings cost \$25.* 2 *noun* C, U the amount of money you must pay to buy something: *The price includes the cost of the accommodations and meals.*

couch potato /'kaʊtʃ pə'tetəʊ/ *noun* C someone who spends a lot of time sitting and watching television

could /kʊd/ *modal verb* 1 used to ask if something is possible or if you can do something: *Could you speak more slowly, please?* 2 **could** is the past tense of **can**: *I used to get up early so I could take my dog for a walk.*

country

country /'kʌntri/ *noun* **the country** the land that is away from towns and cities: *We went for a walk in the country.*

⇒ You can also say: *We went for a walk in the countryside.*

country lane /'kʌntri 'leɪn/ *noun* **C** a small quiet road in the country

countryside /'kʌntrisaɪd/ *noun* **U** land that is away from towns and cities and has areas of trees, hills, and farms in it: *Scotland has some lovely countryside.*

couple /'kʌpl/ *noun* **C** **1** two people who are married or in a relationship: *Sonny and Cher were a successful couple in the music business in the 1960s.* **2** a couple of two [INFORMAL]: *I'm going out with a couple of friends tonight.*

courtyard /'kɔ:rtjɑ:rd/ *noun* **C** an open space with walls around it that is part of a building

cover /'kʌvər/ *verb* **T** **1** to put one thing over another thing in order to hide or protect it: *She covered her face with her hands.* **2** to lie all over the surface of something: *Snow covered the mountains.* • *snow-covered mountains* **3** to spread a layer of a substance all over something: *She covered herself in sunscreen.*

crash /kræʃ/ *1 verb* **T** to hit something very hard, causing a lot of damage: *The car crashed into a tree.* • *I heard the trees crashing outside in the storm.* (=making a lot of noise by falling or hitting something) **2 noun** **C** an accident in which planes, cars, trains, etc. crash into something: *a plane crash*

crazy /'kreɪzi/ *adjective* **1** mad or mentally ill: *The man who killed John Lennon was crazy.* **2** very strange and not very sensible: *That's a crazy idea!* **3** be crazy about to like someone or something very much [INFORMAL]: *He's crazy about animals.*

cream /kri:m/ *noun* **U** **1** a thick white liquid that comes from milk **2** a thick liquid you put on your skin to make it soft or as a medicine: *Here's some cream to put on your burn.*

create /kri'eɪt/ *verb* **T** to make something that did not exist before: *Who created the perfume Chanel No. 5?* • *Mickey Mouse was created by Walt Disney.* • *The shopping center will create hundreds of jobs for local people.*

credit card /'kredit ˌkɑ:rd/ *noun* **C** a plastic card provided by a bank which you can use to buy things and pay for them later

cried /kraɪd/ the past tense and the past participle of **cry**

criminal /'krɪmɪnəl/ *noun* **C** a person who is guilty of committing a crime (=doing something that is illegal)

cross /krɒs/ *verb* **T** **1** to go from one side of a road, river, bridge, etc. to the other: *Cross the road at the traffic lights.* **2** **cross out** to draw a line through something written because it is wrong: *Cross out the wrong word in the sentence.*

crowded /'kraʊdɪd/ *adjective* full of people: *The city is very crowded in the summer.*

cruise /kru:z/ *1 noun* **C** a vacation on a large ship: *We are going on a cruise to the Caribbean.* **2 verb** **I** to travel slowly on a large ship as a vacation: *We spent a week cruising around the Greek islands.*

cry /kraɪ/ [**cried, have cried**] *verb* **I** to produce tears from your eyes because you are sad or hurt: *Why are you crying?*

culture /'kʌltʃər/ *noun* **C, U** a country's **culture** is its general way of life, and its art, music, customs, and traditions

cure /kjʊr/ *1 noun* **C** a medicine or medical treatment that makes a sickness disappear: *There isn't a cure for this disease.* **2 verb** **T** to make a sick person better, or make a sickness disappear

curly /'kɜ:rlɪ/ *adjective* **curly** hair is not straight. It has **curls** in it (=hair that grows in a rounded, curving way)

custom /'kʌstəm/ *noun* **C** a traditional activity or way of doing things which the people in a particular country or area have done for a long time: *It is a Chinese custom to wear new clothes at New Year.*

cut /kʌt/ [**cut, have cut**] *verb* **T** **1** to injure a part of your body when something sharp breaks the skin so that you bleed: *I cut my hand on a piece of broken glass.* • *Oh look, you've cut yourself!* (=cut a part of your body) **2** **cut up** to divide something into pieces using a knife: *She cut up the banana for the baby.* **3** **cut open** to cut part of a person's body in order to perform a medical operation

cutting edge /'kʌtɪŋ 'edʒ/ *noun* **U** the **cutting edge** of something is the most advanced form of it, and uses the newest and most exciting methods, technology, or developments: *Companies using the Internet for business are at the cutting edge of the electronic revolution.*

D

daily /ˈdeɪli/ *adjective* happening, done, or made every day: *a daily newspaper*

⇨ **Daily** only comes before a noun. So you say: *I get up at 7 o'clock every day.*

damage /ˈdæmɪdʒ/ **1 verb** T to harm something, for example by breaking part of it or spoiling the way it looks: *Too much sun can damage the skin.* **2 noun** U harm that is caused to something, for example by breaking part of it or spoiling the way it looks: *The crash caused a lot of damage to the car.*

dance /dæns/ **1 verb** I to move your feet and other parts of your body around to music: *Everyone loves to dance at the carnival.* • *People in Brazil love dancing.* **2 go dancing** to go somewhere where there is music you can dance to: *I'm going dancing tonight.* **3 noun** C a particular set of steps and movements you make to a type of music: *The Samba is a very popular Brazilian dance.*

danger /ˈdeɪndʒər/ *noun* U **in danger** when there is a possibility that something bad will happen, or that someone will be injured or killed: *Children's lives are in danger when people drive too fast.*

dangerous /ˈdeɪndʒərəs/ *adjective* if something is **dangerous**, it can make something bad happen, or it can injure or kill someone: *A tiger is a dangerous animal.* • *The sea here can be dangerous if you are not a good swimmer.* • *Having a baby was a dangerous business in those days.* (=it was a dangerous thing to do)

dark /dɑːrk/ *adjective* **1 dark** hair or eyes are brown or black in color: *Sally has dark hair.* • *a tall, dark, handsome man* (=with dark hair or eyes)

⇨ The opposite of this meaning of **dark** is **fair**. **2 a dark** color is nearer black than white: *dark blue* **3 a dark** place does not have much light: *The room was dark.* • *the dark sky* (=when the sky is a dark color and does not have much light) **4 noun** **the dark** when there is no light or it is night: *Cats can see in the dark.*

⇨ The opposite of these meanings of **dark** is **light**.

date /deɪt/ *noun* C **1** the day of the month that it is: *What's the date today?* **2** an arrangement to go out with someone, especially a boyfriend or girlfriend: *I have a date with*

Tim tonight. • *How old were you when you went on your first date?* (=the first time you went out with a boyfriend or girlfriend)

datebook /deɪtbʊk/ *noun* C a book in which you write details of things you have to do, for example meetings or classes you have to go to

day /deɪ/ *noun* C **1** a period of 24 hours. There are seven days in a week: *We have to do homework every day.* • *I'm having lunch with Sue on Friday – the day after tomorrow.* • *I had a letter from Kate the other day.* (=a few days ago) • *She's coming back in two days' time.* (=in two days after today) **2 one day** at some time in the future but you do not know when: *Rob hopes to be a famous actor one day.* • *One day computers might replace teachers.* **3 one day** on a particular day in the past: *One day, I just left my job and started my own business.* **4 these days** used when you are talking about what happens now, especially when it is different from what happened in the past: *These days a lot of people have a cellphone.*

day off /deɪ ˈɒf/ *noun* C a day when you do not go to work: *Saturday is my day off.* • *How are you going to spend your days off?* • *I'm taking a day off tomorrow.*

day out /deɪ ˈaʊt/ *noun* C a day when you go somewhere interesting or special: *We're going for a day out to the zoo.*

decade /ˈdekeɪd, deˈkeɪd/ *noun* C a period of ten years, for example 1990 to 1999

decide /dɪˈsaɪd/ *verb* I to think carefully about the different things you can do or have and choose one of them: *We decided to go on a camping vacation.* • *I can't decide which pair of shoes to buy.* • *Carol can't decide what to do after she finishes high school.*

decision /dɪˈsɪʒn/ *noun* C something you decide to do, especially after thinking about it or discussing it: *Which flavor of ice cream do you want? Hurry up and make a decision.* (=decide)

decorate /ˈdekəreɪt/ *verb* T to make something look more attractive by putting nice things on it or in it: *It's time to decorate the Christmas tree.*

definitely /ˈdefɪnətli/ *adverb* say this to emphasize that something is certainly true: *I think Manchester United will definitely win the game.* • *That was definitely the happiest day of my career.*

degree

degree /dɪ'ɡri:/ *noun* C a high-level qualification you get by going to a college and successfully finishing a course: *At the end of his college course, he will be awarded a degree.*

• a **degree** in history

delay /dɪ'leɪ/ *verb* T to make someone or something slow or late: *The plane was delayed by two hours because of bad weather.*

deliver /dɪ'lɪvər/ *verb* T to take letters, goods, etc. to the person or place they have been sent to: *The company will deliver your order within two days.*

demand /dɪ'mænd/ *verb* T to say in a very determined way that you must have something: *Two men walked into the bank and demanded money.* • *People from all over the country were demanding equal rights for black people.*

demonstrate /dɪ'mɒnstreɪt/ *verb* I to march somewhere in a large group to protest against something: *Thousands of people demonstrated against the war.*

demonstration /dɪ'mɒn'streɪʃn/ *noun* C a public event in which a large group of people march somewhere to protest against something: *a large peaceful demonstration*

dentist /'dentɪst/ *noun* C someone whose job is to look after people's teeth

depend /dɪ'pend/ *verb* I **1** if one thing **depends** on another, it can change, or be decided by the second thing: *There are lots of clothes to choose from, depending on how much money you have to spend.* **2** **it depends** say this when you are not sure whether to say "yes" or "no," because your answer may change according to the situation: *"I want to play tennis tomorrow but it depends on the weather."* • *"Are you going to watch that movie tonight?" "It depends if I have time."*

deputy /'depjuti/ *noun* C the person who has the second most important job below a manager, a leader, etc. and who does that person's job when they are away: *the deputy mayor*

describe /dɪ'skraɪb/ *verb* T to say what something is like or what happened by giving details: *Can you describe your house?* • *It's difficult to describe what someone looks like.* • *I can't describe my feelings – it was wonderful!*

description /dɪ'skrɪpʃn/ *noun* C what you say or write when you describe something: *Two*

people gave the police a description of the suspect.

desert /'dezət/ *noun* C an area of land where it is very dry and there are not many plants because it does not rain there very often

design /dɪ'zain/ **1** *verb* T to make drawings to show how something will be made or what it will look like: *Clare designed and built her own house.* • a dress designed by Armani **2** *noun* C, U the way something is made and the way it looks: *He studied fashion design at college.* • *They change the design of cars every year.*

designer /dɪ'zamər/ **1** *noun* C someone whose job is to make drawings to show how something will be made **2** *adjective* **designer** products, clothes, etc. are expensive and fashionable because they are created by a famous designer: *designer goods* (=things you buy that have been created by a famous designer) • *jeans with a designer label* (=with a famous designer's name on the label)

desperate /'despəɪt/ *adjective* when you want something very much and you will do anything to get it: *Bill was desperate to get the band's new CD.* • *I'm desperate for a cup of coffee.*

destination /destɪ'neɪʃn/ *noun* C the place someone is going to: *London is a popular destination for tourists.*

destroy /dɪ'strɔɪ/ *verb* T to break or damage something so badly that it no longer exists: *The whole town was destroyed when the volcano erupted.*

detail /dɪ'teɪl/ *noun* C **details** small pieces of information or facts about something: *To find out more details phone this number.* • *Please put details of your experience on the form.* • *She couldn't remember any details about the accident.*

detailed /dɪ'teɪld/ *adjective* including a lot of details and information: *While I listened I made detailed notes.*

detective /dɪ'tektɪv/ *noun* C someone, especially a police officer, whose job is to find out who committed a crime: *detective stories* (=stories about detectives)

detergent /dɪ'tɜrdʒənt/ *noun* C a liquid or powder used for washing clothes or dishes.

develop /dɪ'veləp/ *verb* T to start to have a skill or ability that grows into something stronger and better: *You need to develop an ear for the language.* (=develop the ability to listen and copy sounds well)

devise /dɪ'vaɪz/ *verb* T to make a plan of how to do something: *Children love to devise their own games.*

diarrhea /ˌdaɪə'riə/ *noun* U an illness that makes you go to the toilet very often

die /daɪ/ *verb* I to stop being alive: *How did Kennedy die?* • *Her mother died of cancer.*

diet /ˈdaɪət/ *noun* C **1** the sort of food that you usually eat: *She has a very healthy diet.* (=she eats food that is healthy) • *a diet of rice and vegetables* • *Mark is an athlete and is on a special diet.* (=he only eats certain types of food) **2 go on a diet** to eat only some types of food, or less food than usual because you want to get thinner

difference /ˈdɪfrəns/ *noun* C the way that one thing or person is not the same as another: *What is the difference between soccer and rugby?* • *Look at the two photographs. What are the differences?*

different /ˈdɪfrənt/ *adjective* not the same as another person or thing: *The students in my class all come from different countries.* • *Cherie looks very different from her sister.*

diner /ˈdaɪnər/ *noun* C a small restaurant

dinosaur /ˈdaɪnəsɔːr/ *noun* C an extremely large animal that lived many thousands of years ago before people existed

directions /ˈdɪrekʃnz, daɪ-/ *noun plural* instructions that tell you how to get to a place: *Can you give me directions to the station?* • *Pat sent me a map and some directions.*

disadvantage /ˌdɪsəd'væntɪdʒ/ *noun* C the disadvantages of a person, place, method, etc. are bad things about it that make it less good than others of the same type: *What are the disadvantages of living in the country?*

disappear /ˌdɪsə'pɪr/ *verb* I to stop existing: *A lot of old customs may disappear completely in the future.*

disappointed /ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/ *adjective* feeling a little upset because things did not happen the way you hoped they would: *If I don't pass my driver's test I will be disappointed.*

disco /ˈdɪskəʊ/ *noun* C a place where people go to dance to pop music

discover /dɪ'skʌvər/ *verb* T to find or learn about something for the first time: *When did Europeans discover America?* • *What did you discover about your teacher when you interviewed her?*

discuss /dɪ'skʌs/ *verb* T to talk about something with other people so that everyone can say

what their thoughts and ideas are: *I need to discuss this with my parents before I decide.*

• *The teacher told us to discuss the answers in groups.*

disease /dɪ'ziːz/ *noun* C a medical condition that makes you sick: *Cancer is a serious disease.*

disgusting /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/ *adjective* extremely unpleasant: *The food on the plane was disgusting.*

dish /dɪʃ/ *noun* C food prepared and cooked in a particular way, especially in a style that is typical of a particular place: *an Italian dish*

divorced /dɪ'vɔːrst/ *adjective* no longer married because your marriage has been legally ended: *Andy and Louise got divorced in 1995.*

do /duː/ *verb* T to perform an action: *Jane is doing the cooking tonight.* • *I don't feel like doing my homework today.* • *What did you do last night?*

doctor /ˈdɔːktər/ *noun* C someone who has been trained in medicine and whose job is to make people well again when they are sick

doctorate /ˈdɔːktərət/ *noun* C the highest degree you can get from a college

document /ˈdɔːkjʊmənt/ *noun* C an official piece of paper or book such as a driver's license or a passport: *Keep all your important documents in a safe place.*

dog /dɔːg/ *noun* C an animal that people often keep as a pet or train to work on a farm

dolphin /ˈdɔːlfɪn/ *noun* C an intelligent animal that lives in the sea and looks like a very large fish

dominate /ˈdɔːmɪneɪt/ *verb* T to be the biggest or highest thing you can see in a place: *The castle dominates the city.*

down /daʊn/ **1** *adverb, preposition* towards a lower place, or towards the ground: *We walked down the hill.* • *Let's go down to the beach.* **2** *adverb* from a standing position or upright position to a sitting or horizontal one: *They're cutting all these trees down.* • *Would you like to sit down?* **3** *adverb* on paper: *I wrote her telephone number down on a piece of paper.* **4** *adverb* to a lower amount, number, or level: *Your temperature has come down.* **5** *preposition* along; towards the other end of something: *a two-hour drive to the country*

➡The opposite of down is up.

downtown /ˈdaʊntaʊn/ *noun*, the part of a city or town where it is busiest

draft /dræft/ *noun* C a piece of writing that you will probably change and improve later: *This is only a rough draft of the letter, it's not the final version.*

dramatic /drə'mætɪk/ *adjective* very exciting or surprising: *The beginning of the book is very dramatic.*

dream /dri:m/ **1** *noun* C pictures and stories that happen in your mind while you are asleep: *I had a lovely dream last night.* **2** *noun* C something that you imagine and hope very much will happen, especially something that seems difficult to get: *I have a dream that one day there will be peace in the world.* • *I can't really buy that house – it's just a dream.* **3** *verb* I to imagine and hope very much that something will happen, especially something that seems difficult to get: *When she was young, Vicki dreamed of money and fame.* **4** *adjective* a **dream house, vacation, man, etc.** a house, vacation, man, etc. that you think is perfect and that you would like very much to have: *Brad Pitt is her dream boyfriend.*

dreamer /dri:mər/ *noun* C someone who thinks about ideas and plans that are not possible in the real world

dress up /dres 'ʌp/ *verb* I, T to put on special clothes for a party or special event: *Sacha did not dress up for her wedding, she wore jeans.*

drive /draɪv/ [**drove, have driven**] **1** *verb* I, T to go somewhere in a car: *We drove to the south of France.* **2** *verb* I, T to operate a car and make it move: *When did you learn to drive?* **3** *noun* C a **ten-minute/three-hour, etc. drive** a ten-minute, three-hour, etc. trip by car: *The school is a ten-minute drive/ten-minutes' drive from here.* **4** **go for a drive** to go for a ride in a car, especially for pleasure: *I got in the car and went for a drive to the sea.*

driven /'drɪvən/ the past participle of **drive**

driver's license /'draɪvəz 'laɪsəns/ *noun* C an official document that says you have the legal right to drive because you have passed a driver's test, etc.

driver's test /'draɪvəz 'test/ *noun* C an official test that you have to pass before you are allowed to drive a car

driving instructor /'draɪvɪŋ ɪn'strʌktər/ *noun* C someone whose job is to teach people how to drive

drop /drɒp/ *verb* T to let something fall to the ground by accident: *I dropped a glass of wine on the floor.*

drove /draʊv/ the past tense of **drive**

drown /draʊn/ *verb* I to die by being under water for a long time

dry season /'draɪ 'si:zn/ *noun* C a period of time in hot countries when it does not rain

E

ear /ɪr/ *noun* **have an ear for** if you have an ear for music or a language, you have the ability to listen and copy sounds well: *She has a good ear for music.* • *After a few months in a country you will develop an ear for the language.*

earn /ɜ:m/ *verb* T to be paid money for the work that you do: *Wendy enjoys her job but she doesn't earn very much money.* • *He earns about £2,000 a month.*

earring /'ɪrɪŋ/ *noun* C a piece of jewelry that you put in your ear: *a pair of earrings*

earth or **Earth** /ɜ:rθ/ *noun* singular the world; the planet we live on: *The Earth goes around the sun.* • *The spaceship returned to Earth safely.*

east /i:st/ **1** *noun* one of the four points that tell you the direction of something. **East** is the way you look to see the sun rise: *The house faces east.* • *Melbourne is in the east of Australia.* **2** *adjective* in or towards the east: *We live on the east coast of America.* • *south-east London* (=between the south and the east)

⇒ The opposite direction from **east** is **west**.

eat /i:t/ [**ate, have eaten**] **1** *verb* I, T to put food in your mouth, chew it, and swallow it: *What do you eat for breakfast?* • *He doesn't eat meat.* **2** *verb* I to have a meal: *We ate in the hotel restaurant every day.*

ecologist /'i:kɔ:lədʒɪst/ *noun* C someone who studies the way that people, animals, and plants live together with the natural world around them

economics /,i:kə'nɒ:mɪks, 'ekə-/ *noun* U the study of how a country or area manages business and money

economy /'i:kə'nəmi/ *noun* C the way that a country or area manages business and money: *Tourism is good for the local economy.* (=it brings money into the local area)

editor /'edɪtər/ *noun* C the person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine and decides what will go in it: *the editor of The Times* • *Rosie is a magazine editor.*

election /ɪˈleɪʃn/ *noun* C an occasion when people vote in order to choose a leader or a government: *The election for mayor is on May 5th.*

electrical /ɪˈlektrɪkl/ *adjective* using electricity: *electrical equipment*

electrician /ˌelɪkˈtriʃn, ɪˈlek-/ *noun* C someone whose job is to connect and repair electrical equipment

electronic /ˌelɪkˈtrɒnɪk, ɪˈlek-/ *adjective* using the kind of technology that is in a computer

electronic organizer /ˌelɪkˈtrɒnɪk ˈɔːrgənəɪzər/ *noun* C a piece of equipment like a small computer that you use to keep the details of things you have to do, for example meetings or classes you have to go to and names, addresses, telephone numbers, etc.

elegant /ˈelɪɡənt/ *adjective* **1** an **elegant** person wears clothes that have a beautiful style and are well made: *Anna looked very elegant in a long black dress.* **2** **elegant** clothes, places, or things have a beautiful style and are well made: *a street of elegant houses*

elementary school /eləˈment(ə)ri skuːl/ *noun* C in the US, a school for children between the ages of five and eleven, grade school

elephant /ˈelɪfənt/ *noun* C a very large gray animal with a very long nose called a trunk

elevator /ˈeləveɪtər/ *noun* C a machine that carries people up and down in a large building

email /iː meɪl/ **1** *noun* C, U a message that you send to or receive from someone using a computer: *an email address* • *I want to check my email.* (=use the computer to find out if I have any email messages) **2** *verb* T to send someone a message using a computer: *I often email my friends in Australia.*

embarrassed /ɪmˈbærəst/ *adjective* feeling shy or uncomfortable, for example in a difficult social situation: *Do you get embarrassed if you have to speak in front of a lot of people?*

empty /ˈempti/ *adjective* with no people or things inside it: *an empty glass* • *The house was empty.*

enclose /ɪnˈkloʊz/ *verb* T to put something inside an envelope with a letter: *I enclosed a photo with the letter.*

encyclopedia /ɪnˌsaɪkləˈpiːdiə/ *noun* C a book or set of books with a lot of information about many different subjects, all arranged from A to Z

end /end/ **1** *noun* C the last or final part of something; where something stops: *the end*

of the lesson • *My birthday is at the end of May.* **2** *verb* I to finish or stop: *Past tenses usually end in -ed.*

ending /ˈendɪŋ/ *noun* C the last part of a word: *The plural ending for most nouns is -s.*

endless /ˈendləs/ *adjective* something that is **endless** continues forever and never stops

energetic /ˌenərˈdʒetɪk/ *adjective* someone who is **energetic** has plenty of energy

engagement /ɪnˈɡeɪdʒmənt/ *noun* C when two people have agreed to get married to each other: *Karen and Mike are having a party to celebrate their engagement.*

engineer /ˌendʒɪˈnɪr/ *noun* C someone whose job is to design, make, or repair things such as machines, roads, or bridges

enjoy /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ *verb* T to get pleasure from something: *Did you enjoy the movie?* • *I really enjoy spending vacations with my family.*

enjoyable /ɪnˈdʒɔɪəbl/ *adjective* something that is **enjoyable** makes you happy: *Is your job enjoyable?*

enormous /ɪˈnɔːrməs/ *adjective* extremely large: *She was wearing an enormous hat.*

enter /ˈentər/ *verb* T **1** to start working in a particular type of job or start studying somewhere: *He entered politics 20 years ago.* • *You have to take an exam before you can enter the college.* **2** to put your name on a list of people who are trying to win a competition, game, or race: *To enter the competition, answer the questions below.*

entertain /ˌentərˈteɪn/ *verb* T to invite people to your house and give them food and drinks: *Carla is entertaining some friends this evening.*

entertainment /ˌentərˈteɪnmənt/ *noun* U things that people can watch or go to in order to enjoy themselves, such as concerts, movies, plays, or TV shows: *There isn't a lot of entertainment for young people on this kind of tour.*

envelope /ˈenvəloʊp/ *noun* C a paper thing that covers a letter: *I put the money in a white envelope.*

environment /ɪnˈvaɪrənmənt/ *noun* C the situation and conditions in which you live or work: *It's important to study in a comfortable, warm environment.*

equally /ˈiːkwəli/ *adverb* if two things are **equally** good, true, etc., they are each as good or true as the other: *The two radios are equally good but one is more expensive.*

equipment

equipment /'ɪkwɪpmənt/ *noun* **U** all the machines, tools, clothes, or other things you need for a job or activity: *Do you have any camping equipment?* • *new office equipment*

eraser /'eɪsər/ *noun* **C** a thing you use to remove pencil marks from a piece of paper

erupt /ɪ'rʌpt/ *verb* **I** when a volcano (=a mountain with a large hole at the top) **erupts**, it sends smoke and hot rocks out into the sky

escape /ɪ'skeɪp/ *verb* **I** if a liquid, gas, etc. **escapes** from somewhere, it gets out from a closed place through a hole or a crack: *Chemicals escaped from the pipe into the river.*

eventually /ɪ'ventʃuəli/ *adverb* after a long time: *The train was two hours late – it came eventually at 12 o'clock.* • *Eventually, John's Dad agreed to buy him a car.*

everyday /'evrɪdeɪ/ *adjective* very ordinary and happening as part of your normal life: *everyday health problems like colds and coughs* • *Computers are now part of everyday life.*

exact /ɪg'zækt/ *adjective* correct in all the details: *The exact time is 4:19.* • *You must have the exact money for the bus.* (=only the correct coins or bills, you cannot get change)

exactly /ɪg'zæktli/ *adverb* **1** say this to give exact information, or a completely correct number or amount: *You have exactly one hour to answer all the exam questions.* • *When did the accident happen exactly?* **2** say this when you want to emphasize something: *Thanks for the present – a camera is exactly what I want!*

excellent /'eksələnt/ *adjective* very good or very good quality: *an excellent movie* • *The queen's health is excellent.*

exchange rate /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ ,reɪt/ *noun* **C** how much it costs to buy money from one country with money from another country: *What's the exchange rate for the US dollar?*

excited /ɪk'saɪtɪd/ *adjective* feeling happy and full of interest or expectation: *The kids are very excited about the party.*

exciting /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/ *adjective* making you feel excited: *Los Angeles is an exciting city.* • *Martin Luther King was exciting to listen to.*

excursion /ɪk'skɜːrʃn/ *noun* **C** a short trip made for pleasure, especially in a group: *We're going on an excursion to a wildlife park tomorrow.*

exercise /'eksəsaɪz/ **1** *noun* **U** physical activity like running, swimming, etc. that you do to

make your body healthy: *The doctor told Ken to take more regular exercise.* (=do exercise often) • *She never does any exercise.* • *Walking is good exercise.* **2** *verb* **T** to make a part of the body healthy: *Tai Chi exercises both the mind and the body.*

exist /ɪg'zɪst/ *verb* **I** to really happen or really be there: *Does life exist on any other planets?*

expand /ɪk'spænd/ *verb* **I, T** to become bigger or to make something bigger: *The company is going to expand by opening more stores.* • *You could expand the story into a play or movie.*

expect /ɪk'spekt/ *verb* **T** to think that something will probably happen: *I'm expecting a visitor this afternoon.* • *We expect to have good weather here in July.*

expensive /ɪk'spensɪv/ *adjective* costing a lot of money: *an expensive dress* • *That restaurant is a bit too expensive.* • *an expensive mistake* (=a mistake that cost you a lot of money)

experience /ɪk'spɪəriəns/ *noun* **1** **U** all the knowledge and skills that you have gained in your work and education: *Does she have any experience of working with children?* • *He doesn't have a lot of experience for the job.* **2** **C** something that happens to you, especially something exciting or unusual: *Going to Florida was a fantastic experience.* • *It was a useful experience to work as a waiter.*

experienced /ɪk'spɪəriənst/ *adjective* someone who is **experienced** has a lot of experience in a job or activity, because they have done it for a long time: *an experienced teacher/doctor/driver*

explain /ɪk'spleɪn/ *verb* **T** to tell someone about something, so that they can understand it or see the reasons for it: *We listened while the teacher explained the instructions.* • *Can you explain why this is the wrong answer?* • *He explained to me exactly where the house is.*

explanation /ˌeksplə'neɪʃn/ *noun* **C** what you say when you explain something or explain why something happened: *Matthew's explanation was very funny but I didn't believe it.*

express /ɪk'spres/ *verb* **T** to say or show what you think and feel: *It's not always easy to express your ideas in a foreign language.*

extremely /ɪk'striːmli/ *adverb* in a very great way: *It's extremely important to learn another language.*

eye /aɪ/ *noun* C 1 your **eyes** are what you use to see with: *The baby has blue eyes.* 2 **in the eye/eyes of someone** in the opinion of someone: *Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.* (=everyone has their own idea of what beauty is)

F

fabulous /ˈfæbjʊləs/ *adjective* very good: *We had a fabulous vacation in India.*

face /feɪs/ *noun* C the front part of your head where your eyes, nose, and mouth are: *Nina has a beautiful face.*

facelift /ˈfeɪslɪft/ *noun* C when you make something look better or newer by cleaning it, repairing it, painting it, etc.: *We're going to give the office a facelift.*

facilities /ˈfæsɪlətɪz/ *noun plural* all the equipment, buildings, and other things that are provided for a particular purpose: *Our school has excellent sports facilities.*

fair /fer/ 1 *adjective* light in color: *Both their children have fair hair.*

⇨The opposite of **fair** is **dark**.

2 *noun* C a **fair** is a form of entertainment that happens outside in a field or a park. At a fair there are large machines to ride on, and games to play for prizes

faith /feɪθ/ *noun* U a strong belief and trust in someone or something: *Do you have faith in God?*

fall /fɔ:l/ [**fell, have fallen**] *verb* I 1 to suddenly move or drop towards the ground: *Grandpa fell down the stairs and broke his arm.* • *The money fell out of my pocket.* 2 **fall down** if something **falls down**, it moves down quickly towards the ground: *Why don't you wear a belt? It will stop your pants falling down.* 3 **fall over** if someone **falls over**, they go down onto the ground from a standing position: *Robin fell over on the ice.* 4 **fall from power** if a leader, politician, etc. **falls from power**, they lose the control they have over a place and are no longer in charge of the government 5 **fall in love** to start to love someone or something: *I fell in love with the puppy as soon as I saw it!* 2 *noun* C the season between summer and winter

fame /feɪm/ *noun* U when a lot of people know about or recognize someone because of something they have done: *Some pop stars use their fame to help raise money for charity.*

famous /ˈfeɪməs/ *adjective* if someone or something is **famous**, a lot of people know about them or recognize them: *a famous actor* • *Would you like to be famous?* • *France is famous for its wine.*

fan /fæn/ *noun* C someone who likes an activity or a famous person very much: *a soccer fan* • *Pop stars get lots of fan letters.* (=letters from fans)

fanatic /ˈfænætɪk/ *noun* C someone who likes an activity so much that they want to spend all their time doing it: *Rick is a swimming fanatic.*

fantastic /ˈfænˈtæstɪk/ *adjective* very good; wonderful: *We had a fantastic weekend.* • *The beaches in Bali are fantastic.*

far /fɑ:r/ *adverb* 1 a long distance away: *My house is not far from the station.* • *How far away is the airport?* (=what distance away is it?) 2 **so far** until now: *It's been a lovely day so far.* 3 **not get very far** to not be very successful: *Without confidence you won't get very far.* 4 **as far as ... is concerned** used to talk about a particular subject: *As far as money is concerned, there is no problem.* 5 **go as far as** to do something that seems surprising or too extreme: *Lots of people collect cars but not many people go as far as Mark – he's got nearly 100.*

farmer /ˈfɑ:rmər/ *noun* C someone whose job is on a **farm**. A farmer grows food on the land and keeps animals.

farming /ˈfɑ:rmɪŋ/ *noun* U working on a farm by growing food and keeping animals

farmland /ˈfɑ:rlænd, -lənd/ *noun* U land that is used to grow food

fascinating /ˈfæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ *adjective* very interesting: *Amsterdam is a fascinating city.*

fashion /ˈfæʃn/ *noun* U the new and different styles of clothes that people like to wear: *Fay is studying fashion design.* • *a fashion magazine* (=a magazine showing new styles of clothes)

fashionable /ˈfæʃnəbl/ *adjective* a **fashionable** person likes to wear the newest styles of clothes, hair, etc.

fast /fæst/ *adverb* quickly: *Don't drive so fast!*

fast food /fæstˈfu:d/ *noun* U food that a restaurant cooks and serves quickly, such as hamburgers, French fries, etc.

fat /fæt/ 1 *adjective* someone who is **fat** has a large round body

⇨The opposite of **fat** is **thin**.

2 *noun* U food such as butter, cream, or oil:
You should eat less fat and sugar.

faucet /fəʊsɪt/ *noun* C a thing that is connected to a pipe in a kitchen or bathroom and that water comes out of when you turn it: *The faucet for hot water isn't working.*

fault /fəʊlt/ *noun* C if a mistake or problem is someone's **fault**, they are responsible for it or can be blamed for it: *The accident wasn't my fault.*

favorite /'feɪvərɪt/ **1** *adjective* your **favorite** person or thing is the one you like more than any other: *Green is my favorite color.* **2** *noun* C the person or thing you like more than any other: *Which cheese is your favorite?*

fax machine /'fæks məʃiːn/ *noun* C a machine that can send and receive copies of letters or pictures using the telephone system

feature /'fi:tʃər/ *noun* C **1** a part of your face such as your eyes, nose, or mouth **2** one of the important or typical parts of something: *What are the main geographical features of New Zealand?*

feature film /'fi:tʃər ˌfɪlm/ *noun* C a long movie that is performed by actors and tells a story

fed up /fed 'ʌp/ *adjective* bored and annoyed, especially because something bad has continued for a long time [INFORMAL]: *It's raining and there's nothing to do – I'm really fed up.*

feel /fi:l/[felt, have felt] *verb* T to have a particular feeling in your body or your mind: *My hands feel cold.* • *She felt tired.* • *How do you feel about your new job?* • *James does not feel well.*

fell /fel/ the past tense of **fall**

female /'fi:meɪl/ *adjective* about a woman or a girl: *What is their idea of female beauty?*

fight /faɪt/ [fought, have fought] *verb* I **1** to try to hurt someone using physical strength or weapons: *Eddie and Harry were fighting.* **2** **fight for** to try very hard to get something: *Martin Luther King fought for equal rights for black people.*

figure /'fɪgər/ *noun* C a small model or statue of a person or animal: *plastic figures of American presidents*

file /faɪl/ *noun* C information about something that is collected on paper and kept in a cover or box: *His files were all over the floor.* • *a fact file* (=a collection of facts)

final /'faɪnl/ *noun* C the last game in a series or the last part in a competition to decide who the winner is: *the World Cup final*

finalist /'faɪnəlɪst/ *noun* C someone who is in the final of a competition

find /faɪnd/ [found, have found] *verb* T **1** to get something you want after looking for it: *I can't find my keys.* • *We found a nice hotel near the sea.* **2** **find it easy, difficult, impossible, etc.** to think that something is easy, difficult, impossible, etc.: *I find it boring sitting on a beach all day.* • *Which place did you find most interesting on your vacation?*

find out /faɪnd 'aʊt/ [found out, have found out] *verb* T to get some information about something or someone: *I went to the library to find out more.*

finish /'fɪnɪʃ/ *verb* I, T **1** to stop or to stop doing something: *The lesson finishes at 1 o'clock.* • *Did you finish your homework?* **2** to eat, drink, or use the last part of something: *You should always finish your prescription for antibiotics.*

fiord or **fjord** /'fi:ɔ:rd, fjɔ:rd/ *noun* C a long area of sea between cliffs: *Norway is famous for its fiords.*

firecracker /'faɪrkrækər/ *noun* C a small firework that makes a loud noise

fireplace /'faɪrpleɪs/ *noun* C an open place inside a room where you can make a fire

fireworks /'faɪrwɜ:rk/ *noun* C (usually plural) things containing chemicals that burn brightly and explode with a loud noise when lit. Fireworks are used during celebrations and special public occasions.

first aid /'fɜ:rst 'eɪd/ *noun* U medical help that you give immediately to someone who is hurt, before a doctor arrives

first class /'fɜ:rst 'klæs/ *adjective* very good quality; excellent: *a first class restaurant*

fit /fɪt/ *adjective* when your body is in a healthy and strong condition: *What do you do to keep fit?* • *Will plays a lot of tennis – he's very fit.*

five-star /'faɪv stɑ:ɪ/ see **star**

fix /fɪks/ *verb* T to repair something that is not working: *Can you fix my bike?*

flash /flæʃ/ *noun* C a special light on a camera for taking pictures inside a building

flashlight /flæʃ laɪt/ *noun* C a small electric lamp that you can carry in your hand: *I keep a flashlight in the car.*

flat /flæt/ *adjective* something that is **flat** has a smooth, level surface: *People used to think the Earth was flat.*

flew /flu:/ the past tense of **fly**

flight /flaɪt/ *noun* C a journey by plane: *It was a long flight.* • *When is the next flight to Paris?*

flirt /flɜːrt/ *verb* I to talk to someone in a way that shows you like them sexually: *Jo flirted with me at the party.*

floor /flɔːr/ *noun* C 1 the flat surface in a room that you walk on: *Don't leave your clothes on the floor.* • a wooden floor (=a floor made of wood) 2 the room or rooms on a particular level of a building: *Anne's apartment is on the fifth floor of a lovely old building.* • *You get a good view from the top floor.*

flow /fləʊ/ *verb* I when a river or water flows, it moves continuously towards or through somewhere: *The river Thames flows through London.*

flower /'flaʊər/ *noun* C the pretty colored part of a plant: *I'm going to buy some flowers for my mother.*

flown /fləʊn/ the past participle of fly

fluently /'fluːəntli/ *adverb* speaking a language you have learned well and correctly: *Angela speaks English fluently.*

fly /flaɪ/ [flew, have flown] *verb* I to travel in a plane: *We're flying to Greece on Sunday.* • *Which airport are you flying from?*

flying /'flaɪɪŋ/ *noun* U traveling in a plane: *Do you like flying?*

foggy /'fɒɡi/ *adjective* when the weather is foggy, there is a lot of fog (=thick cloudy air) so that it is difficult to see where you are going

follow /'fɒləʊ/ 1 *verb* I,T to go or come after someone or something: *Follow me. I know the way.* • *You go first and I'll follow in a few minutes.* • *Is "enjoy" followed by an infinitive or a gerund?* 2 if you follow someone's advice or instructions, you do what they said you should do: *It's easy, just follow the instructions.* 3 to understand: *The guidelines should be easy to follow.*

fool /fuːl/ *noun* C make a fool of yourself to do something or make a mistake that makes you look and feel stupid

force /fɔːrs/ *verb* T to make someone do something that they do not want to do: *Maria's mother forces her to eat breakfast every day.*

forecast /'fɔːrkæst/ *noun* C what someone says is going to happen: *What's the weather forecast for today?* (=what will the weather be today?)

forehead /'fɔːrɪd, 'fɔːrhed/ *noun* C the top part of your face, above your eyes

foreign /'fɔːrɪn/ *adjective* from a different country: *a foreign language*

foreigner /'fɔːrɪnər/ *noun* C someone from a different country

forest /'fɔːrɪst/ *noun* C an area of land where there are a lot of trees

Formula One /'fɔːrmjʊlə 'wʌn/ *noun* U a type of auto racing using cars with large engines

fortunately /'fɔːrtʃənətli/ *adverb* say this to show you are pleased, because something bad did not happen: *Fortunately, nobody was hurt in the car crash.*

fortune /'fɔːrtʃən, -tjuːn/ *noun* U a large amount of money: *Hollywood success brought him fame and fortune.*

fought /fɔːt/ the past tense and past participle of fight

found /faʊnd/ the past tense and past participle of found

four-star /'fɔːr stɑːr/ see star

free /friː/ 1 *adjective* not costing anything: *Repairs to your computer are free for the first year.* • *The hotel has free entertainment in the evenings.* 2 *adjective* allowed to live in the way you want to without being controlled: *One day everyone, black and white, will be free.* 3 *adjective* not busy so you can do what you want: *Are you free tonight?* • *Tim spends his free time playing soccer.* 4 *verb* T to let someone out of jail: *Nelson Mandela was freed from jail in 1990.*

freedom /'friːdəm/ *noun* U the right to do what you want, without being controlled by unfair rules: *political freedom* • *We don't have much freedom at our school.*

free gift /friː 'ɡɪft/ *noun* C a small present you get when you buy something

freely /'friːli/ *adverb* without being controlled or limited: *a freely elected government*

freeway /'friːweɪ/ *noun* C a wide road where you can drive fast for long distances: *You must not stop on the freeway.*

French fries /frentʃ fraɪz/ *noun plural* long thin pieces of fried potato. French fries are often called fries

frequently /'friːkwəntli/ *adverb* very often: *The president is frequently seen on television.*

friend: see best friend

friendly /'frendli/ *adjective* someone who is friendly is kind, helpful, and nice to other people: *My doctor's very friendly.*

frightened

frightened /'fraɪnd/ *adjective* feeling worried and afraid about something: *Jack is frightened of dogs.* • *The passengers were frightened when they heard a loud bang in the plane.*

frightening /'fraɪnɪŋ/ *adjective* making you feel worried and afraid: *This movie is too frightening for young children.* • *a frightening experience*

frog /frɒg/ *noun* C a small green animal that can jump easily and lives in or near water

front /frʌnt/ 1 *noun* C the part of something that you see first and that is opposite the back: *the front door* 2 *in front of* further forward or facing something: *The dog is asleep in front of the fire.* • *I don't like speaking in front of a lot of people.* 3 *in front of* near the entrance to a building: *John Lennon was shot in front of his apartment building.*

frozen /'frouzn/ 1 the past participle of **freeze** 2 *adjective* something that is **frozen** has changed into ice 3 *adjective* **frozen** food is food that is kept very cold so that it stays fresh

frustrated /frʌ'streɪtɪd/ *adjective* feeling annoyed and impatient because something is stopping you from doing what you wanted to do: *I get frustrated when I feel I am not learning very quickly.*

full-length /fʊl 'leŋθ/ *adjective* a **full-length** movie is not shorter than the usual length of most movies

fun /fʌn/ *noun* U something that makes you happy and that you enjoy doing: *Dancing is fun and it keeps you fit.* • *Camping is not my idea of fun.*

funny /'fʌni/ *adjective* 1 a **funny** person, story, situation, etc. is amusing and makes you laugh: *Dad told me a very funny joke.* 2 strange or surprising, and making you a little worried: *That's funny – we went to Japan last year too!*

furious /'fjʊəriəs/ *adjective* very angry: *I was furious when Sue told me the truth.*

furniture /'fɜːnɪtʃər/ *noun* U things in a room or house such as tables, chairs, beds, and cupboards

furry /'fɜːri/ *adjective* covered in **fur** (=the soft thick hair on an animal): *a furry cat*

G

gamble /'gæmbl/ *verb* I,T to try to win money by guessing the result of a horse race, a card game, etc.: *He gambled all his money on a horse – and lost.* • *Oscar loves gambling in Las Vegas.*

gambler /'gæmblər/ *noun* C someone who gambles

gang /gæŋ/ *noun* C a group of criminals who work together

gangster /'gæŋstər/ *noun* C someone who belongs to a gang (=a group of criminals)

garbage /'gɑːrbɪdʒ/ *noun* C food, bottles, papers, etc. that you don't want anymore and throw away. *Put the garbage in the garbage can.* • *The garbage truck visits our street every other day.*

garbage dump /'gɑːrbɪdʒ dʌmp/ *noun* C a place where all the garbage in a town is brought

gardening /'gɑːdnɪŋ/ *noun* U doing work in your garden, for example planting things, cutting grass, or removing weeds: *Tony really enjoys gardening.*

gas /gæs/ *noun* C, U 1 a substance that is not a solid or a liquid, such as air or some chemicals such as oxygen or hydrogen 2 a liquid that is used to make cars move

gave /geɪv/ the past tense of **give**

GCSE /dʒiː siː es 'iː/ *noun* C a school exam that students in the UK do when they are about 16

generation /dʒenə'reɪʃn/ *noun* C a group of people who are all about the same age: *the next generation of school children*

gentleman /dʒentlmən/ *noun* C a rich, educated man with a high social position and polite behavior [FORMAL]

geographical /dʒiːə'græfɪkl/ *adjective* connected with geography: *The volcano is one of the most interesting geographical features of the island.*

geography /dʒiːə'græfi/ *noun* U the study of the countries of the world and their natural features such as rivers, mountains, forests, and weather: *the geography of Britain* (=the natural features Britain has)

gerund /'dʒerənd/ *noun* C a noun that ends in **-ing** that comes from a verb. *Shopping* is a gerund in this sentence: *I like shopping.*

get /get/ [got, have got] *verb* T 1 to become, by changing from one state to another: *I'm*

getting cold. • You'd soon get bored if you didn't go to school. **2** to buy something: I need to get some more milk. **3** to receive something: I got a shock when I saw Rick again.

get off /get 'ɔ:f/ [**got off, have got off**] *verb* T to leave a bus, train, or plane: Get off the train at Finsbury Park station.

get ready /get 'redi/ [**got ready, have gotten ready**] *verb* I to do everything necessary so that you are prepared for going somewhere or doing something: She's helping her daughter get ready for the wedding.

get up /get 'ʌp/ [**got up, have gotten up**] *verb* I to stop sleeping and get out of bed: What time do you get up in the mornings?

gift /ɡɪft/ *noun* C a nice thing that you give someone or that someone gives you; a present: This ring was a gift from my boyfriend. • a free gift (=a small present you get when you buy something)

giraffe /dʒɪ'reɪf/ *noun* C a tall African animal with long legs and a very long neck

girlfriend /'gɜ:rlfrend/ *noun* C a girl or woman that someone has a romantic or sexual relationship with

given /'ɡɪvən/ the past participle of **give**

glacier /'gleɪʃər/ *noun* C a large area of ice that moves slowly down a valley (=the land between two mountains or hills)

glove /glʌv/ *noun* C a thing made of wool or leather that you wear over your hands to keep them warm: a pair of gloves • I've lost one of my gloves.

go /ɡoʊ/ [**went, have gone**] *verb* I **1** to move or travel somewhere in order to do a particular activity, sport, etc.: I'm going shopping now. • He goes for a run every morning. • What time do you go to bed? (=go to your bed and sleep) **2** go gray if your hair goes gray, it changes color and becomes gray

goddess /'ɡɔ:dis/ *noun* C a female god, especially in ancient religions

gold /ɡoʊld/ *adjective* made of gold (=a valuable yellow metal): gold earrings

golf /ɡɔ:lf/ *noun* U a game played in a large area like a park. To play golf, you try and hit small balls into holes with a long stick

good /ɡʊd/ *adjective* **good for you** food or an activity that is good for you will make you well or happy: Regular exercise is good for you.

⇒The opposite of good for you is bad for you.

good-looking /'ɡʊd 'lʊkɪŋ/ *adjective* having an attractive face: a good-looking guy

goods /ɡʊdz/ *noun* plural C things that are produced for stores to sell: All electrical and household goods are on the second floor.

go out /ɡoʊ 'aʊt/ [**went out, have gone out**] *verb* I **1** if a fire or a light goes out, it stops burning or shining: All the lights suddenly went out. **2** go out with someone to have a romantic relationship with someone: Nick has been going out with Fran for six months.

gorgeous /'ɡɔ:rdʒəs/ *adjective* very attractive or beautiful [INFORMAL]: I like Julia Roberts, she's gorgeous! • Who's that gorgeous-looking guy Wendy is going out with?

got /ɡɔ:t/ the past tense of **get**

gotten /'ɡɔ:tɪn/ the past participle of **get**

government /'ɡʌvənmənt/ *noun* C the group of people who are in charge of a city, state, or country and make the laws

graduate /'ɡrædʒuət/ *verb* I to get a degree from a college or a diploma from high school: She graduated from Yale when she was 21.

grandparents /'græn 'perənts/ *noun* plural someone's grandparents (their grandfather and grandmother) are the parents of their mother or father

grand tour /'grænd 'tʊr/ *noun* C an important or impressive journey on which someone visits many different places: a grand tour of southern Africa

greed /ɡri:d/ *noun* U a strong feeling of wanting more food, money, power, etc. than you need

greeting /'ɡri:tɪŋ/ *noun* C the words you say when you speak to someone, write to them, or telephone them: You can write your own greeting inside the card.

ground /ɡraʊnd/ *noun* U the surface of the Earth, that you stand on: The apples on the tree fell to the ground.

grow up /ɡroʊ 'ʌp/ [**grew up, have grown up**] *verb* I to gradually change from being a child to being an adult: My parents grew up during the 1970s. • What does Lana want to be when she grows up? (=when she is an adult)

guard /ɡɑ:rd/ *noun* C someone who walks around a building in order to keep the things and people inside safe: A guard saw the man break into the factory.

guess /ges/ 1 *verb* T to say the answer to a question without being sure that you know it: *Rosa didn't know the answer but she guessed correctly.* • **Guess which** place I'm talking about. 2 *noun* C a chance to say the answer to a question without being sure that you know it: *Go on, have a guess!* • *You have three guesses to get the right answer.*

guidebook /'gaɪdbʊk/ *noun* C a book that gives information for tourists about the places to visit, famous buildings, etc. in a city or country: *a guidebook to India*

guilty /'ɡɪlti/ *adjective* if you feel **guilty**, you feel bad because you have done something wrong: *He felt guilty about not telling her the truth.*

guitar /'ɡɪtɑːr/ *noun* C a musical instrument with strings that you play with your hands

guy /gaɪ/ *noun* C a man [INFORMAL]: *Alan is a really nice guy.*

gym /dʒɪm/ *noun* C a place that has a lot of equipment for doing physical exercise: *Nell goes to the gym twice a week.*

H

habit /'hæbɪt/ *noun* C something that you do regularly: *Smoking is a dangerous habit.* • *We use the present simple tense to talk about habits.*

had to /'hæd tuː/ 1 the past tense and past participle of **have to** 2 the past of **must**

hairstylist /'heɪdresər/ *noun* C someone whose job is to cut and shape hair: *I'm going to the hairstylist.*

hairdryer /'heɪdraɪər/ *noun* C a small machine you use to dry your hair by blowing hot air over it

half-witted /'hæf 'wɪtɪd/ *adjective* rather stupid

handsome /'hænsəm/ *adjective* a **handsome** man is physically attractive; good-looking

happen /'hæpən/ *verb* I to take place: *How did the accident happen?* • *Tell me what happened.*

hard /hɑːrd/ 1 *adjective* not easy to bend or break; not soft: *The bread was hard.* 2 *adjective* difficult to do: *The exam was really hard.* • *It's hard to imagine life in the future.* 3 *adjective* needing a lot of physical or mental effort: *Looking after a baby is hard work.* 4 *adverb* using a lot of physical or mental effort: *Bob works very hard.* • *She's trying hard to learn English.*

hate /heit/ *verb* T to have a strong feeling of not liking someone or something: *I hate beer/flying/my brother.*

have to /'hæv tuː/ [had to, have had to] *verb* I if you **have to** do something, you have no choice, you must do it: *I have to go now.* • *We don't have to go to school on the weekend.*

health /helθ/ 1 *noun* U your **health** is the condition your body is in and how physically well you are: *Do you have any health problems?*

• *The president is in very good health.* 2

Good health! say this to someone when you are having an alcoholic drink with them

health club /'helθ klʌb/ *noun* C a place you can go to play sports and do exercise in order to stay in good physical condition

healthy /'helθi/ *adjective* 1 physically well and not likely to become sick: *Their children are all fit and healthy.* 2 good for your health: *a healthy diet*

hear /hɪr/ [heard, have heard] *verb* T 1 to get sounds coming into your ears: *I heard a knock at the door.* • *Thousands of people came to hear Martin Luther King speak.* 2 **hear from** to get news from someone in a letter or a telephone call: *It was great to hear from you.*

heaven /'hevn/ *noun* U the place where many people believe God lives and where good people go after they die

⇨The opposite of **heaven** is **hell**.

heavy /'hevi/ *adjective* 1 something that is **heavy** is difficult to move or carry because it weighs a lot: *a heavy bag of shopping* 2 a **heavy** smoker is someone who smokes a lot of cigarettes

⇨The opposite of **heavy** is **light**.

height /haɪt/ *noun* C, U how tall someone or something is: *a man of average height* • *Laura and Kate are about the same height.*

hell /hel/ *noun* U 1 the place where many people believe bad people go after they die: *heaven and hell* 2 **from hell** used to describe someone or something that is so bad or unpleasant that you cannot imagine anyone or anything worse [INFORMAL]: *John and Linda were the neighbors from hell.*

hero /'hɪrəʊ/ *noun* C a man that everyone admires because of something very special or brave that he has done

heroine /'herəʊɪn/ *noun* C a woman that everyone admires because of something very special or brave that she has done

hesitate /'hezɪteɪ/ *verb* I to stop or wait for a short time before you do something, for example because you are not sure if you should do it: *Don't hesitate to ask questions if you don't understand.*

hide /haɪd/ [**hid**, **have hidden**] *verb* T to put something in a place where no one can find it: *Where did she hide the money?*

high school /haɪ sku:l/ *noun* C a school for children between 14 and 18 years old. A school for children under 11 is an **elementary school**.

high-speed /haɪ 'spi:d/ *adjective* traveling very fast: *a high-speed train*

hill /hɪl/ *noun* C an area of high land. A hill is not as tall as a mountain: *There's a castle at the top of the hill.* • *We walked up the hill.*

hire /haɪr/ *verb* T to pay money to someone to work for you

Hispanic /hrɪ'spænik/ *adjective* connected with people from Spanish-speaking countries in Central and South America

historic /hrɪ'stɔ:rik/ *adjective* a **historic** place is important and famous because of things that happened there in the past

historical /hrɪ'stɔ:rikəl/ *adjective* connected with the past or happening in the past: *a historical monument* • *a historical romance* (=a romantic story that happens in the past)

history /'hɪstri/ *noun* U 1 the important social and political events that happened in the past: *a city full of history* 2 the study of the important social and political events that happened in the past: *Do you like history?* 3 things that have happened frequently to someone in the past: *He has a history of alcohol problems.*

hit /hɪt/ [**hit**, **have hit**] 1 *verb* T to suddenly crash into someone or something: *The child was hit by a car.* 2 *noun* C a song, movie, etc. that is very successful: *She had a hit record with "Believe" in 1998.*

hobby /'hɔ:bi/ *noun* C something you enjoy doing in your spare time: *Playing the guitar is one of Sam's hobbies.*

holiday /'hɔ:lɪdeɪ, -deɪ/ *noun* C 1 a day when people do not go to work or school, and businesses, stores, and banks are closed because of a national celebration: *May 1st is a national holiday in many countries.* 2 in British English a vacation

homework /'həʊmwɜ:rk/ *noun* U work that your teacher gives you to do at home: *I have*

to do my homework now. • *The math teacher gives us homework every week.*

honest /'ɑ:nɪst/ 1 *adjective* an **honest** person always tells the truth and never steals or cheats: *Jack seems an honest man.* 2 **to be honest** say this to tell someone what you really think about something: *To be honest, I don't really want to go to my parents' party.*

honesty /'ɑ:nɪsti/ *noun* U when someone is honest

honey /'hʌni/ *noun* U a thick sweet substance made by bees (=flying insects with black and yellow bodies). You can put honey on bread or use it in cooking

honeymoon /'hʌnɪmu:n/ *noun* C a holiday that two people take just after they get married: *We spent our honeymoon in Scotland.*

hope /həʊp/ *noun* C usually plural something that you hope or wish for: *What are your hopes for the future?*

horrible /'hɔ:rɪbl/ *adjective* very unpleasant [INFORMAL]: *This pizza is horrible!*

horror /'hɔ:rər/ *noun* U the feeling you have when you are very frightened or shocked: *To my horror, the man pulled out a gun.*

horror movie /'hɔ:rər mu:vi/ *noun* C a type of movie that is made to frighten and shock you

host /həʊst/ *noun* C a person whose job is to introduce a radio or television program

household /'haʊshəʊld/ *adjective* used in a house or connected with keeping a house clean and tidy: *household goods* (=things you buy to use in a house)

huge /hju:dʒ/ *adjective* 1 very big: *a huge house* 2 very popular and successful: *a huge Hollywood movie*

hunger /'hʌŋgər/ *noun* U the feeling you get when you are **hungry** (=when you have not had any food to eat)

hurricane /'hɜ:rɪkən/ *noun* C a violent storm when there is a lot of very strong, fast wind

hurried /'hɜ:rid/ the past tense and past participle of **hurry**

hurt /hɜ:rt/ [**hurt**, **have hurt**] *verb* T to make a part of the body feel pain: *I've hurt my arm.* • *Be careful, don't hurt yourself!*

hygiene /'haɪdʒi:n/ *noun* U how people should keep their bodies and the places they live in clean in order to stop sickness: *Hygiene is very important, especially when you are preparing food.*

hypermarket /ˈhaɪpər,mɑːrkt/ *noun* C a very large store that sells many different kinds of things

I

ice hockey /ˈaɪs ˌhɑːki/ *noun* U a sport that is played on ice between two teams. Players use long sticks to hit a round, flat object (called a **puck**) into the other team's goal

idea /aɪdɪə/ *noun* C **1** a plan or suggestion that you think of: "Let's go out for lunch." "Good idea." • I thought Josh's idea was crazy. **2** a thought or opinion about something: Ideas of beauty have changed over the centuries. • Whose political ideas do you agree with? **3** it's a good idea to say this to advise someone that it would be sensible to do something: It's a good idea to rent a car on vacation.

ideal /aɪdɪəl/ **1** *noun* C an idea that you want to achieve because you believe it is the best possible example of something: John Lennon sang about his ideals in the song "Imagine." **2** *adjective* exactly what you want or need for a particular purpose: Who is your ideal man or woman? • This house will be ideal for kids.

identity card /aɪˈdɛntəti kɑːrd/ *noun* C a card with a person's name, date of birth, and photograph on it that shows who they are

illuminate /ɪˈluːmɪneɪt/ *verb* T to shine a light on something to make it bright: The palace looks beautiful when it is illuminated at night.

imaginary /ɪˈmædʒɪnəri/ *adjective* not real, but existing only in your mind: The movie is not based on fact, it's a completely imaginary story.

imagination /ɪˈmædʒɪˈneɪʃn/ *noun* U the ability to create interesting pictures and ideas in your mind: To be a good teacher you need lots of imagination.

imaginative /ɪˈmædʒɪnətɪv/ *adjective* able to create lots of interesting pictures and ideas in your mind: Elliot is a very imaginative child.

imagine /ɪˈmædʒɪn/ *verb* T to make a picture in your mind of a situation that is not real: Imagine that you had a million dollars – how would you spend the money?

immediately /ɪˈmiːdiətli/ *adverb* at once, and without waiting: The letter was important so I answered it immediately.

importance /ɪmˈpɔːrtəns/ *noun* U being important: the importance of taking regular exercise

important /ɪmˈpɔːrtənt/ *adjective* if a thing is **important**, you need to have it, think about it, or do it because it has a big influence on something: It is **important** to get enough sleep. • Is money more important than happiness? • Learning English is **important** for my job. **2** having a lot of power or influence: Sheila has an important exam today. • It was the most important day of my life!

import-export /ɪmˈpɔːrt ˈeksˌpɔːrt/ *noun* U buying things in one country and selling them in another

improve /ɪmˈpruːv/ *verb* I,T to get better or make something better than it was before: The new library will really improve the school's facilities.

improvement /ɪmˈpruːvmənt/ *noun* C something that makes a situation or place better: improvements to the local economy

in /ɪn/ *preposition* **1** used to show where someone or something is: He is in the next room. • The Nile is a river in Africa. **2** used to show when something is: He was born in 1979. • The wedding is in July. **3** used to show how long: Dinner will be ready in a few minutes. **4** used to show what language, color, material, etc. is being used: Men in Black • They were speaking in French.

include /ɪnˈkluːd/ *verb* T to have as a part of another thing: The tour includes a visit to Disney World. • The rooms are \$50 a night, including breakfast.

independent /ɪnˈdɪpəndənt/ *adjective* **1** someone who is **independent** is able to do things by themselves without needing help from other people: She likes being independent and doesn't want to get married. **2** an **independent** country or organization is not governed or controlled by another country or organization: The country became independent in 1980. • an independent airline

industrial /ɪnˈdʌstriəl/ *adjective* having a lot of factories that produce goods: an industrial city

industry /ɪnˈdʌstri/ *noun* C all the people and work involved in producing a particular product or service: the coal/car/tourist industry

insect /ɪnˈsekt/ *noun* C a very small animal with six legs

installment /ˈɪnstəlmənt/ *noun* C one of a number of payments you make in order to buy something over a period of time: *monthly installments*

instead /ɪnˈsted/ *adverb* in the place of someone or something else: *I couldn't go to the meeting so Jane went instead.* • **Instead of driving** to work, why don't you walk? • *Can I have coffee instead of tea?*

instrument /ˈɪnstɹumənt/ *noun* C a thing such as a piano, a guitar, etc. that you play music on

intend /ɪnˈtend/ *verb* T to have a definite plan in your mind to do something: *What does Sam intend to do when he finishes college?*

intention /ɪnˈtenʃn/ *noun* C something that you intend to do: *She announced her intention to run for mayor.*

interest /ɪnˈtrəst/ *noun* 1 C a hobby or activity that you enjoy doing in your free time: *Photography is Luke's main interest at the moment.* 2 U extra money that you pay when you borrow money, or extra money that you are paid when you put money into a bank: a **high interest** account (=that pays a lot of interest)

interested /ɪnˈtrəstɪd/ *adjective* feeling that you want to do, see, or learn about something, because it seems interesting to you: *Rachel is very interested in art.* • *He's always been interested in working with computers.*

interest-free credit /ɪnˈtrəst frɪːˈkredit/ *noun* U when you can borrow money without having to pay interest

interesting /ɪnˈtrəstɪŋ/ *adjective* something that is interesting attracts your attention and makes you want to do, see, or learn about it: *Kate has an interesting job in television.* • *The lesson wasn't very interesting.*

Internet /ˈɪntənet/ *noun singular* an international computer system that allows people all over the world to find and send information using their computers. People often call the Internet "the net" [INFORMAL]: *You can look up anything on the Internet.* • *Have you tried Internet shopping?*

interrupt /ɪnˈtəʁpt/ *verb* T to stop someone speaking or doing something by speaking to them, making a noise, etc.: *Please don't interrupt me – I'm doing my homework.*

interruption /ɪnˈtəʁpʃn/ *noun* C an occasion when someone interrupts you: *There are so many interruptions in this office; the phone*

is always ringing and people keep going in and out.

interview /ˈɪntərvjuː/ 1 *noun* C a special meeting in which someone who has applied for a job is asked questions in order to find out if they are suitable: *David has a job interview on Friday.* 2 *noun* C a conversation in which someone is asked questions, especially a famous person: *an interview with Tom Cruise* 3 *verb* T to ask someone questions in order to find out if they are suitable for a job 4 *verb* T to ask someone questions in order to find out about their life, their opinions, etc.: *Which famous movie star would you like to interview?*

invest /ɪnˈvest/ *verb* T to use your money to make a profit later, for example by lending it to a business or buying property: *They invested all their money in a new Internet company.*

investigate /ɪnˈvestɪgeɪt/ *verb* T to try and find out the facts about a crime or an accident: *The police are still investigating the murder.*

investment /ɪnˈvestmənt/ *noun* C money that you have invested in a business, buying property, etc.: *a bad investment* (=the money you used did not make a profit)

invisible /ɪnˈvɪzəbl/ *adjective* if something is invisible, you cannot see it because it is completely hidden

invitation /ˌɪnvɪteɪʃn/ *noun* C a special letter you send to someone in order to ask them to come to a party, wedding, etc.

invite /ɪnˈvaɪt/ *verb* T to ask someone to come to a social occasion such as a party, wedding, etc.: *She invited 100 people to the party.* • *Alice's parents have invited us to dinner.*

iron /ˈaɪərn/ *noun* C a piece of equipment you use to make clothes flat and smooth

ironing /ˈaɪərɪŋ/ *noun* U making clothes flat and smooth by using an iron: *I don't like ironing.*

irregular /ɪˈregjələr/ *adjective* an irregular verb, plural, etc. does not have the usual spelling or ending of other words

-ish /ɪʃ/ fairly; approximately. Use **-ish** with an adjective: *She has grayish hair.* (=her hair is fairly gray) • *a man of 30-ish* (=approximately 30)

island /ˈaɪlənd/ *noun* C an area of land that has the sea all round it: *Britain is an island.*

J

Jacuzzi /dʒəˈkuːzi/ (trademark) *noun* C a special bath that moves the water around and makes lots of bubbles to make your body feel relaxed

jail /dʒeɪl/ *noun* C, U a place where people who have been found guilty of a crime are kept as a punishment, a prison: *He was sent to jail for robbery.* • *The judge gave Evans two years in jail.*

jeweler /ˈdʒuːələr/ *noun* C someone who makes and sells jewelry

jewelry /ˈdʒuːəlri/ *noun* U things like rings, necklaces, or bracelets that you wear for decoration

jogging /ˈdʒɔːɡɪŋ/ *noun* U running slowly as a form of exercise: *She goes jogging every morning.*

join /dʒɔɪn/ *verb* T 1 to become a member of a group, or do something with a group of other people: *Ted has joined a tennis club.* • *We're going out for dinner. Will you join us?* • *Thousands of people joined the protest march.* 2 to connect two or more things together: *Everyone joined hands and started singing.* • *Join the two sentences using a word from the box.*

journey /ˈdʒɜːni/ *noun* C traveling from one place to another: *a long journey* • *The journey to school takes 10 minutes.*

joy /dʒɔɪ/ *noun* U a feeling of great happiness

judge /dʒʌdʒ/ *noun* C the person who is in charge of a law court, who decides what punishment a criminal should receive: *The judge gave him three months in jail.*

judo /ˈdʒuːdɒ/ *noun* U a sport in which two people fight and throw each other onto the ground using special movements

just /dʒʌst/ *adverb* 1 only: *Learning English is just a hobby for me.* 2 exactly: *These shoes are just as good as the cheaper ones.* 3 a very short time ago: *She's just had a baby.* 4 used to emphasize something: *I just couldn't believe it!* 5 just after, before, next to, etc. a short distance after, before, etc.: *The rest rooms are just over there, on the right.*

K

keen /kiːn/ *adjective* wanting to do something very much, because you think it will be interesting or enjoyable: *My boyfriend's not very keen on shopping.*

keep /kiːp/ *verb* T 1 to continue to have something and not throw it away, or give it to someone else: *Keep the receipt in case you want to change it for a different color.* 2 to continue doing something: *Cross the road and keep walking until you get to the bridge.* 3 to stay in the same state, or make something stay in the same state: *Gloves keep your hands warm.* • *It's important to keep fit.* • *Put food in the fridge to keep cool and fresh.* 4 **keep in touch** to continue to see, write, or telephone someone, so that you are still friends: *Sarah likes to keep in touch with her old school friends.*

kettle /ˈketl/ *noun* C a metal or plastic pot that you use to heat water. (=make it very hot)

key /kiː/ *noun* C 1 a small metal thing that you use to open or close the lock of a door, etc., or to start a car: *car keys* • *I've lost my keys and can't get into the house.* 2 the answers at the back of a test or set of questions printed in the back of a book 3 **the key to something** is how you can achieve it, or the thing that is necessary to get the result you want: *What is the key to a successful marriage?*

kill /kɪl/ *verb* T to make a person or animal die: *Who killed John Lennon?* • *Thousands of people are killed in accidents every year.*

killer whale /ˈkɪlər weɪl/ *noun* C a very large animal that lives in the sea and looks like a very big black and white fish

kilt /kɪlt/ *noun* C a traditional type of skirt that men in Scotland sometimes wear

kiss /kɪs/ *verb* I, T to touch someone with your lips as a sign of affection or love: *I fell in love the first time I kissed you.*

knew /njuː/ the past tense of **know**

knock /nɔːk/ *verb* T to hit someone or something very hard: *She hit the man and knocked him to the ground.*

knock over /ˌnɔːk ˈoʊvər/ *verb* T to make someone or something fall to the ground, either deliberately or by accident: *He was knocked over by a car as he crossed the road.*

know /nou/ [knew, have known] *verb* 1 I, T to have information in your mind which you are sure is true: *Do you know where he's gone?* • *"What is the answer?" "I don't know."* 2 T to have met a person before: *She's the nicest person I know.* 3 T to have learned and understand about a subject: *Leo knows a lot about cars.*

known /noun/ the past participle of **know**

L

lady /ˈleɪdi/ *noun* C a woman. People often use **lady** because they think it sounds more polite: *an old lady*

lake /leɪk/ *noun* C an area of water with land all round it: *We went sailing on the lake.* • *Lake Como*

lamb /læm/ *noun* U the meat from a **lamb** (=a young sheep)

language laboratory /ˈlæŋɡwɪdʒ læbrətɔːri/ *noun* C a room in a school for students who are learning a foreign language, where they can practice listening to tapes and recording themselves speaking

last /læst/ **1 verb** I to continue for a period of time: *I think designer clothes **last longer** than cheaper ones.* • *Do you expect love to last forever?* • *The game lasted two hours.* **2 last night, week, year, etc.** the most recent night, week, year, etc. before now: *What did you do last weekend?* • *He's been a farmer for the last 20 years.* (=for 20 years until now) **3 adjective** the one that comes at the end: *the last day of the year* **4 adverb** most recently: *When did you last go to the movies?* **5 at last** finally, after a long time: *We've finished our exams at last!*

late /leɪt/ *adjective* near the end of a period of time: *The beach looks beautiful in the late afternoon.* • *She's in her late twenties.* (=about 27–29 years old) • *the late 1960s* (=about 1967–1969)

law /lɔː/ *noun* C,U the rules in a country that say what people may and may not do and that everyone must obey: *What would happen if there were no laws?* • *You must stay at school until the age of 16 by law.* (=there is a law that says you must do it)

lawyer /ˈlɔːjər/ *noun* C someone whose job is to give people advice about the law and speak for them in a court

lead /led/ *noun* U a soft gray metal that is very heavy

leader /ˈliːdər/ *noun* C the head of a group, organization, political party, etc.: *the country's political leaders*

learn /lɜːn/ *verb* I,T **1** to get knowledge or skill, by studying, practicing, going to classes, etc.: *Sally's learning Chinese.* **2** to gradually change the way you think or do something: *You must learn to overcome your fear of flying.*

least /liːst/ *adverb* **1** less than anything or anyone else: *Which tour would you least like to go on?* • *This dress is the least expensive.* **2 at least** not less than: *They have at least two hours homework every week.*

leather /ˈleðər/ *noun* U animal skin that is made into a material and used for making shoes, bags, etc. with: *a leather belt*

leave /liːv/ [**left, have left**] *verb* I,T to go away from a place or person: *We have to leave now, or we'll miss the train.* • *I left the party at midnight.* • *Lee doesn't like his job, he wants to leave.* (=stop working there) **2 T** to put something somewhere, or let something stay somewhere: *Did you leave a tip for the waiter?* **3 T** to give money to a person or organization after you die: *The old lady left all her money to charity.*

left /left/ **1** the past tense of **leave**. **2 be left** to still be there after you have used, taken, or spent all the rest of something: *There isn't any coffee left.* • *When I came back from vacation I had no money left.*

leisure /ˈliːʒər/ *noun* U time when you are not working or studying and you can do things you enjoy

leisure complex /ˈliːʒər ˌkɑːmpleks/ *noun* C a building where you can play sports and do other activities in your free time

lend /lend/ [**lent, have lent**] *verb* T to give something to someone to use, that they agree to give back to you later: *Can you lend me some money until next week?*

↪When you **lend** something to another person, they **borrow** it from you.

lettuce /ˈletɪs/ *noun* U a green vegetable with large thin leaves that you eat raw (=not cooked) in salad

library /ˈlaɪbrəri, ˈlaɪbri/ *noun* C a place where you can go to borrow or read books: *I'm going to the library.*

lie /laɪ/ [**lay, have lain, lying**] *verb* I when you **lie** on something, your body is in a flat position and you are not sitting or standing: *Zak's lying on the sofa watching TV.*

life /laɪf/ *noun* **come to life** if something that is not real **comes to life**, it becomes full of activity or starts to seem real: *Visit the Hollywood studios and see the movies come to life.*

lifeboat /ˈlaɪfbɔʊt/ *noun* C a small boat that is carried on a ship in order to save people if there is an accident

lifestyle /'laɪfstɑːl/ *noun* C the way that someone lives, and their typical behavior and habits: *Liz and I have very different lifestyles. I have a busy job in the city and she lives in the country with her husband and children.*

lifetime /'laɪftaɪm/ *noun* the vacation, experience, etc. of a lifetime a wonderful vacation, experience, etc. that you may never have again: *An African safari will be the experience of a lifetime.*

lift /lɪft/ *1 noun* C **1 give someone a lift** to take someone somewhere in your car: *I can give you a lift to the station, if you like.* **2 verb** T to pick up something and move it to a higher position: *I can't lift this box, it's too heavy.*

light /laɪt/ [lit, have lit] *1 adjective* something that is light does not weigh much and so is easy to carry or move: *I traveled with just a light bag.*

⇨The opposite of this meaning of **light** is **heavy**.

2 noun U **light** comes from the sun and makes it possible to see things: *This room has a lot of light.*

⇨The opposite of this meaning of **light** is **dark**.

3 noun C a thing that makes a place bright using electricity: *Turn on the lights.* **4 noun** C matches or a lighter that you use to make something burn, especially a cigarette: *Do you have a light, please?* **5 verb** T to use matches or a lighter to make something burn: *Paul stopped and lit a cigarette.*

light bulb /'laɪt bʌlb/ *noun* C a round glass thing with a thin wire in it that produces electric light

lighter /'laɪtər/ *noun* C a small object that produces a flame so that you can light a cigarette

like /laɪk/ *1 verb* T to think that someone or something is nice or good: *I don't like coffee very much.* • *Do you like dancing?* **2** used as a more polite way of saying "want": *Would you like another drink?* • *I'd like to go to America.* **3 preposition** the same as or similar to someone or something else: *He looks like his brother.* **4 preposition** such as: *I enjoy water sports like swimming and surfing.* **5 what is ... like?** say this to find out more about someone or something: *What was the weather like?* • *What's Alex's new girlfriend like?*

lion /'laɪən/ *noun* C a wild African animal like a very large cat with yellow fur

lipstick /'lɪpstɪk/ *noun* C, U a thick colored substance that women put on their lips

listen to /'lɪsn tuː/ *verb* T to pay attention to something that you can hear: *I always listen to the radio in the car.*

live /lɪv/ *verb* I **1** to have somewhere as your home: *Mel's been living in Paris for two years.* **2** to spend your life in a particular way: *Why can't we all live in peace?* **3 live for** to think that something is the most important thing in your life: *I don't worry about tomorrow, I just live for today.*

lively /'laɪvli/ *adjective* interesting and exciting: *a lively place for tourists*

live wire /'laɪv 'waɪə/ *noun* C a person who is full of life and energy

living /'lɪvɪŋ/ *noun* **make a living** to earn enough money to pay for the basic things that you need, such as food, electricity, and somewhere to live: *Before she became a famous singer she made a living as a waitress.*

loathe /ləʊð/ *verb* T to hate someone or something very much: *Pete loathes wine.*

local /'ləʊkl/ *adjective* connected with a particular place or with the area that is near to where you live: *I try and use local stores when I can.*

lock /lɒk/ *noun* C **1** a metal thing for keeping a door closed. You open a lock with a key **2** a place on a river with a gate at each end, where the level of the water can go up or down. Boats can move through the lock to a higher or lower part of the river

logical /'ləːdʒɪkl/ *adjective* reasonable or sensible: *Which is the most logical answer?*

long /lɒŋ/ *1 adjective* a great distance when you measure from one end to the other: *She has long brown hair.* • *Which is the longest river in Africa?* **2 adverb** a long time, or for a long time: *Have you been waiting long?* • *How long is the lesson?*

⇨The opposite of **long** is **short**.

look /lʊk/ *verb* I to seem to be something or seem to have a particular appearance: *John looks like his mother.* • *Expensive clothes always look good.* • *Do I look better with short hair?*

look forward to /lʊk 'fɔːrwəd tuː/ *verb* T to think about something exciting or enjoyable that is going to happen: *We're really looking forward to our vacation.* • *I look forward to meeting you.*

look up /lʊk 'ʌp/ *verb* T to try and find a piece of information in a dictionary, book, on a

computer, etc.: *If you don't know what it means, look it up.* • *You can look up anything at all on the Internet.*

lose /lu:z/ [lost, have lost] *verb* T 1 to not be able to find something: *I lost my bag at the airport.* 2 to not have something any more that you had before: *He lost all his money in a game of cards.* • *The local stores will lose business if they build a new supermarket here.* 3 **lose weight** to become less fat: *What's the best way to lose weight?*

lost /lɒst/ *adjective* if you are **lost**, you do not know where you are and cannot find your way to the place you want to go

lot /lɒt/ a **lot of** a large amount or number of something: *Were there a lot of people at the party?* • *There are a lot of things to do in London.* • *They don't have a lot of money.* ⇨ You can also say **lots**. This is more informal than **a lot of**: *Dave has lots of friends.*

lottery /'lɒtəri/ *noun* C a type of game in which people buy tickets with numbers on, and if you have particular numbers you can win a lot of money: *What would you do if you won the lottery?* • *I never buy lottery tickets.*

love /lʌv/ 1 *verb* T to like something very much: *"Do you like beer?" "Yes, I love it."* • *Lucy loves singing.* 2 *verb* T to have a strong feeling of love for someone: *He told her he loves another woman.* 3 *noun* C the man or woman you love: *Yes, my love.* 4 **love from** used at the end of a letter to a friend or someone in your family: *Love from Mom and Dad.* 5 **give someone your love** say this to send friendly greetings to someone: *Give my love to Helen.*

lovely /'lʌvli/ *adjective* very nice or very enjoyable: *It's a lovely day.* • *The meal was lovely, thank you very much.*

luxurious /lʊdʒʊəriəs/ *adjective* expensive and very comfortable

luxury /'lʌkfəri/ *noun* C **luxuries** are expensive things that you buy because you enjoy having them, not because you need them: *Charles likes to buy his girlfriend little luxuries like expensive chocolates and champagne.*

M

mad /mæd/ *adjective* **be mad about** to like something very much [INFORMAL]: *Jamie's mad about soccer.*

mafia /'mæfiə/ *noun* U a secret organization of criminals that works especially in Italy and the USA

magazine /'mægəzi:n/ *noun* C a kind of thin book with a paper cover that you can buy every week, or every month. It has articles, pictures, and stories inside: *a fashion magazine* (=showing pictures of clothes)

magic /'mædʒɪk/ *noun* U a special exciting quality that something has, that is so wonderful it almost seems not to be real: *the magic of the movies*

mail order catalog /'meɪl'ɔ:rdərkætəlog/ *noun* C a book or magazine with pictures of things you can buy from a store or company. You choose what you want from the catalog and they are sent to you by **mail order**.

main /mem/ *adjective* most important: *Where is the main entrance?* • *Tourism is the main industry on the island.*

make /meɪk/ *verb* T 1 **make a mistake** to do something that is not correct or that you realize later was not the right thing to do: *She made a big mistake marrying Jim.* 2 **make a decision** to decide: *There are so many choices, it's hard to make a decision.* 3 to earn [INFORMAL]: *This is an expensive restaurant so I make good tips as a waitress.* • *The movie Titanic made a lot of money.*

makeup /'meɪk ʌp/ *noun* U creams and powders that you can put on your skin to make yourself look more attractive: *I'm just putting on my makeup.*

male /meɪl/ *adjective* about a man or a boy: *a male teacher*

manager /'mænɪdʒər/ *noun* C someone whose job is to be in charge of a business, a bank, a department in a company, etc.: *Can I speak to the manager, please?*

manliness /'mænlines/ *noun* U the qualities or physical features that people expect a man to have: *Ideas of manliness have changed a lot over the centuries.*

manly /'mænli/ *adjective* having the qualities or physical features that people expect a man to have: *Strength and courage are supposed to be manly qualities.*

mansion /'mænfʃn/ *noun* C a very large, expensive house

manufacture /'mænʃʊfæktʃər/ *verb* T to produce goods in large quantities in a factory: *Ford manufactures a lot of cars in Europe.*

manufacturer /ˌmænjuːfæktʃərə/ *noun* C a company or factory that produces goods in large quantities: *a sportswear manufacturer*

map /mæp/ *noun* C a drawing of a country, town, etc., that shows you where places are, such as the towns, rivers, or roads: *a map of France* • *If you don't know the way to my house, I'll draw you a map.*

marathon /ˈmærəθən/ *noun* C a long, running race of about 46 kilometers: *Have you ever run a marathon?*

mark /mɑːrk/ *verb* T 1 to write or draw a sign on something with a pen or pencil: *Listen to the tape and mark the places you hear on the map.* • *Don't open the letters marked "Private."* 2 to read and check a student's work and say how good it is by giving it a score: *Give your work to the teacher and she will mark it.*

market /ˈmɑːkɪt/ *noun* C a place where many different people come to buy and sell goods, usually outside: *a fruit and vegetable market* • *There is a market every Wednesday in the town square.*
 ⇨ Each of the tables that people sell things from in a market is called a **stall**: *a market stall selling jewelry*

marketing /ˈmɑːkɪtɪŋ/ *noun* U the job of making sure that a company's products get sold, for example by deciding how and where to advertize the products: *Bella works in the marketing department.*

marriage /ˈmæɪdʒ/ *noun* C,U the relationship between a man and a woman who are legally married to each other: *They divorced after a ten-year marriage.*

married /ˈmæɪd/ *adjective* someone who is **married** has a husband or wife: *Are you married?* • *Ali and Nick are getting married.*

marry /ˈmæɪ/ *verb* I, T to become someone's husband or wife: *Will you marry me?* • *His first wife died, but he does not want to marry again.*

match /mætʃ/ *noun* C a game of a sport such as tennis or boxing • *Who won the match?*

math /mæθ/ *noun* U the study and science of numbers, shapes, and measurement: *Are you good at math?*

matter /ˈmætər/ 1 *verb* I to be important: *Money doesn't really matter to Jo very much.* • *"I'm sorry I can't come to the meeting." "Oh, it doesn't matter."* 2 **what's the matter?** say this to ask someone why they

are upset or unhappy: *What's the matter? Why are you crying?*

maximum /ˈmæksɪmə/ *noun* singular, *adjective* the largest amount that is allowed or possible: *You can borrow a maximum of four videos a week from the library.* • *The maximum temperature at this time of year is about 30 degrees Centigrade.*

may /meɪ/ [**might, might have**] *modal verb* used to say it is possible that something is true or will happen: *You may say I'm a dreamer, but I'm not the only one.*

mayor /meɪər/ *noun* C a person who is elected to be in charge of the government of a town or city: *the mayor of London*

meal /miːl/ *noun* C food that you eat at a particular time: *three meals a day* • *Let's go out for a meal.*

mean /miːn/ [**meant, have meant**] *verb* 1 T to have a particular meaning: *If you want to know what a word means, look it up in a dictionary.* 2 **I mean** say this when you want to explain more about what you have just said: *I don't buy designer clothes; I mean, look at the price of these jeans!*

medicine /ˈmedsən/ *noun* C,U a special pill or drink you have when you are ill that helps you to get better: *Take the medicine three times a day.*

meditation /ˌmedɪteɪʃn/ *noun* U a way of completely relaxing your mind by staying silent and not thinking about anything, especially as a religious practice

meet /miːt/ [**met, have met**] *verb* T 1 to see and speak to someone for the first time: *Ana works in a club – it's a great way to meet people.* • *Have you met my friend Simon?* 2 to go somewhere and wait for someone: *Can you meet me at the station?* 3 to go somewhere and see and talk to people: *I'm meeting some friends on the beach today.*

membership /ˈmembərʃɪp/ *noun* U when you belong to a club or group: *Membership of the library is free.*

memory /ˈmeməri/ *noun* C your ability to remember things: *Do you have a good memory?*

mend /mend/ *verb* T to repair a hole or a tear in a piece of clothing.

mention /ˈmenʃn/ *verb* T to say something about someone or something: *Did they mention me in the conversation?*

mess /mes/ *noun singular* when a place is very untidy: *Please don't make a mess in the kitchen, I've just cleaned it!*

message /mesɪdʒ/ *noun C* something you say or write and send to another person: *It's easy to send a message using email.* • *An answering machine can take messages for you.* (=it can record messages for you to get later)

metal /metl/ *noun C* a solid hard substance that is found in the ground, such as iron, tin, and gold: *a metal gate*

method /meθəd/ *noun C* the way that something is done: *She is a good doctor who uses all the latest methods.*

microwave /maɪkrəweɪv/ *noun C* a type of oven that heats or cooks food very quickly using special electric waves instead of heat

mid- /mɪd/ *prefix* in the middle of: *the mid-eighties* (=about 1985)

middle-aged /mɪdl 'eɪdʒd/ *adjective* no longer young, but not yet old. People are middle-aged between the ages of about 40 and 60

might /maɪt/ *modal verb 1* if something might happen or might be true, you are not sure about it but it is possible: *We might go to Florida for our vacation this year.* **2** the past tense of **may**: *They said on the news that it might rain.*

military service /mɪlɪteri 'sɜːrvɪs/ *noun U* a system in some countries in which every adult must spend a period of time in the army, the navy, etc.

mind /maɪnd/ **1 verb I, T** **not mind** to be willing to do something or have no strong opinion about doing something: *I don't mind washing up.* • *We had to change planes in Paris but I didn't really mind.* **2 do you mind** if... say this to politely ask someone something: *Do you mind if I sit here?* **3 noun U** the ability to think and understand: *You need to exercise the mind as well as the body.* **4 change your mind** see **change**

miniskirt /mini 'skɜːrt/ *noun C* a very short skirt

miss /mɪs/ *verb T 1* to not do something, see something, or go somewhere: *Hurry up! We don't want to be late and miss the plane.* (=not catch it) • *I'm always hungry in the mornings so I never miss breakfast.* (=not eat it) **2** to feel sad because you cannot be with someone or cannot do something that you like: *I really missed my family when I lived abroad.* • *What do you miss about life in Romania?*

mission /mɪʃn/ *noun C* a journey made by a spacecraft: *a space mission to Mars*

mistake /mɪ'steɪk/ *noun C* something that is not correct or not a good thing to do: *I made a mistake in the driver's test and I failed.* • *Throwing away that bag was an expensive mistake – there was a lot of money in it.*

mixed /mɪkst/ **have mixed feelings** to have different kinds of feelings at the same time, for example happy and sad, positive and negative, etc.: *Cliff had mixed feelings about going away to college.*

mixture /mɪkstʃər/ *noun C* when something contains several things that are all different: *Miami is a mixture of American and Spanish cultures.*

model /mɑːdl/ *noun C* someone whose job is to wear clothes for photographs in magazines, advertisements, etc.: *Claudia Schiffer is a famous model.*

modern /mɑːdəm/ *adjective* something that is **modern** is made or designed using new ideas, styles, or ways of thinking: *modern furniture* • *The city is very modern – all the buildings are new.*

⇨The opposite of **modern** is **old-fashioned**.

monkey /mʌŋki/ *noun C* an animal with a long tail that climbs trees and lives in hot countries

monster /mɑːnstər/ *noun C* a large animal or creature, especially an ugly or frightening one, that does not really exist

monument /mɑːnjumənt/ *noun C* an important old building that is part of a country's history

mood /muːd/ *noun C 1* the way you feel about something **2 in a good/bad mood** feeling happy/ annoyed about something

moon /muːn/ *noun* **the moon** is the shiny white object you see in the sky at night. It goes round the earth once every 28 days

motel /mouːtel/ *noun C* a hotel for people who are traveling by car

motivated /mɒtɪveɪtɪd/ *adjective* really wanting to do something and not needing to be told to do it by someone else: *She wants to live in Germany so she is very motivated to learn the language.*

motivation /mɒtɪ'veɪʃn/ *noun U* the feeling that you really want to do something and do not need to be told to do it by someone else: *He is an intelligent student, but doesn't have the motivation to learn.*

motorcycle

motorcycle /ˈmoutəsaɪkɪ/ *noun* C a vehicle with two wheels that has an engine.

mountain /ˈmaʊntɪn/ *noun* C a very high hill that is difficult to get to the top of: *Which is the highest mountain in the world?*

mountain bike /ˈmaʊntɪn ˌbaɪk/ *noun* C a bicycle with wide tyres on the wheels for riding on rough ground

mountainous /ˈmaʊntɪnəs/ *adjective* having a lot of mountains: *New Zealand is very mountainous.*

mouse /maʊs/ *noun* C a small gray or brown animal with a long tail

move /mu:v/ *verb* T to go and live in a different house, town, or country: *Cathy and Paul are going to move house.* (=go and live in a different house)

movement /ˈmu:vmənt/ *noun* C when you move or change the position of a part of your body: *The dancer's movements were beautiful and controlled.*

movie /ˈmu:vi/ *noun* C a film: *What type of movies do you enjoy?*

movie critic /ˈmu:vi kɪtɪk/ *noun* C someone whose job is to write about new movies in newspapers and magazines and say whether they are good or bad

mugger /ˈmʌgər/ *noun* C someone who attacks another person on the street and tries to steal their money

multi- /ˈmʌlti/ *prefix* more than one; several: *a multi-millionaire is someone with many millions of dollars*

mumble /ˈmʌmbl/ *verb* I to speak quietly and not very clearly: *Stop mumbling, I can't understand what you're saying.*

murderer /ˈmɜ:rdərər/ *noun* C someone who deliberately kills another person

mushroom /ˈmʌʃru:m/ *noun* C a white, gray, or brown plant with a flat top and no leaves that you can eat as a vegetable: *pizza with cheese and mushrooms*

museum /ˈmjʊzi:əm/ *noun* C a place where people can go to look at important objects from the past or works of art: *the British Museum* • *a museum of modern art*

musical /ˈmjuzɪkl/ *adjective* connected with music: *Can you play a musical instrument?* (=a piano, guitar, drums, etc.)

must /mʌst/ [**had to, have had to**] *modal verb* if you **must** do something, you have no choice, you need to do it: *I'm very tired. I*

must go to bed now. • *We must leave at 8 o'clock or we'll be late.*

mustache /ˈmʌstæʃ/ *noun* C hair that a man grows above his mouth

myth /mɪθ/ *noun* C something that many people believe to be true, but which is not true: *It's a myth that men are better drivers than women.*

N

name /neɪm/ *verb* T to give someone or something a name, or say what someone's or something's name is: *They named the baby Joseph.* • *Can you name five famous soccer players?*

national /ˈnæʃnəl/ *adjective* 1 connected with or shared by all the people in a country: *Baseball is the national sport of the USA.* 2 **national holiday** a day when people do not go to work or school, and businesses, stores, and banks are closed because of a national celebration: *July 14th is a national holiday in France.*

nationality /ˈnæʃənəli/ *noun* C your **nationality** is which country you have a legal right to live in: *He has American nationality.* • *What nationality was the first woman in space?*

natural /ˈnætʃərəl/ *adjective* 1 something that is **natural** exists in the world of nature and is not caused or made by human beings: *The national park is an area of natural beauty.* 2 if a person looks **natural**, they are relaxed and are not trying to look different from how they really look: *She doesn't wear makeup or fancy clothes, she's very natural-looking.*

naturally /ˈnætʃərəli/ *adverb* as part of your character or the way you are: *Neil is naturally good with children.*

necessary /ˈnesəseri/ *adjective* if something is **necessary**, you need to have it for a particular reason or purpose: *Water is necessary for all forms of life.* • *Use a dictionary to check the meaning if necessary.*

neck /nek/ *noun* C the part of the body between the head and shoulders

necklace /ˈnekləs/ *noun* C a piece of jewelry that you wear around your neck. A necklace is usually a thin chain with beads or jewels on it

need /ni:d/ 1 *modal verb* if you **need** something, you must have it in order to live or do

something successfully: *I live in the city so I don't need a car.* • *I need to buy some bread.*
2 noun U a situation when something is necessary: *Let's discuss this calmly, there's **no need** for an argument.*

nephew /ˈnefjuː/ **noun** C the son of your sister or brother: *Ron has lots of nephews and nieces.*

⇨ The daughter of your sister or brother is your **niece**. If someone is your **nephew**, you are their **aunt** (female) or **uncle** (male).

nervous /ˈnɜːrvəs/ **adjective** worried or afraid about something you have to do, because you think it will be unpleasant or difficult: *Are you **nervous about** the exam?* • *The waiter looks **nervous** – I think he's new.*

news /njuːz/ **noun** U **1** information about recent events that you see in newspapers or on television, or hear on the radio: *a news report* • *There's always something **in the news** about the royal family.* **2** information that someone tells you about what has happened in their life recently: *I have some **good news** – we're going to have a baby.* • *I'm looking forward to seeing Sheri and hearing all her news.*

newsdealer /ˈnuːzdiːlər/ **noun** C a store where you buy newspapers and magazines

newspaper column /ˈnuːspeɪpər ˌkɔːləm/ **noun** C a piece of writing that appears regularly in a newspaper

next to /ˈnekst tuː/ **preposition** at the side of someone or something: *Who did you sit **next to** in class today?* • *Our hotel was **next to** the beach.*

niece /niːs/ **noun** C the daughter of your sister or brother: *My niece is staying for the weekend.*

⇨ The son of your sister or brother is your **nephew**. If someone is your **niece**, you are their **aunt** (female) or **uncle** (male).

nightclub /ˈnaɪtklʌb/ **noun** C a place where you can drink and dance that is open until late at night

nightlife /ˈnaɪtlaɪf/ **noun** U things you can do to enjoy yourself at night away from home, for example in restaurants, movie theaters, or nightclubs

nightmare /ˈnaɪtmɛər/ **noun** C **1** a frightening dream **2** a very unpleasant experience: *We had to wait for two days at the airport before the plane could leave – it was a **nightmare**!*

night school /ˈnaɪt skuːl/ **noun** C a place where adults who work can study in the evenings

Nobel prize /ˌnəʊbel ˈpraɪz, nɒːbel-/ **noun** C a special award that is given every year to a few people who have done something great for science, peace, etc.

noise /nɔɪz/ **noun** C, U sound that is unpleasant and that disturbs you: *What's all that noise? Are they having a party next door?* • *The computer's making a strange noise – I hope it's not broken.*

noisy /ˈnɔɪzi/ **adjective** making a lot of noise: *It's so noisy in here, I can't get any work done.*

nonviolent /ˌnɒːn ˈvaɪələnt/ **adjective** not using any violence (=fighting, weapons, etc.): *a nonviolent protest*

normally /ˈnɔːrməli/ **adverb** usually, when everything in a situation is ordinary: *I normally get up at 7 o'clock.* • *What do you have for breakfast, normally?*

north /nɔːθ/ **1 noun** one of the four points that tell you the direction of something. **North** is the direction at the top of a map, towards the top of the world: *Which way is north?* • *York is **in the north of** England.* **2 adjective** in or towards the north: *North Africa* • *northwest France* (=between the north and the west)

notes /nəʊts/ **noun plural** words or sentences you write down when you are studying to help you remember things: *You should **make notes** while you are listening to the teacher.* • *I missed the class yesterday – can I read your notes?*

notice /ˈnəʊtɪs/ **verb** T to see or hear something: *Tom noticed smoke coming out of the engine and immediately stopped the car.* • *Did you **notice that** Nadia has lost weight?*

noun /naʊn/ **noun** C a word that gives a name to a person, thing, place, etc.: These words are nouns: *house, child, peace, sentence, piano.*

novel /ˈnɔːvl/ **noun** C a book that tells a story about people and things that are not real

nowadays /ˈnaʊədəɪz/ **adverb** at the present time, when you are comparing it with what happened in the past: *Nowadays, antibiotics can cure a lot of illnesses that used to kill people.*

nuisance /ˈnjuːsəns/ something that makes you annoyed because it causes you a problem: *"This phone doesn't work." "Oh, that's a nuisance."*

O

object /'ɑːbdʒɪkt/ *noun* C a noun that is affected by the action of the verb in a sentence. In the sentence *I love you*, "you" is the object of the verb "love." In the sentence *We're buying a car*, "car" is the object of the verb "buy."

observatory /əb'zɜːrvətɔːri/ *noun* C a high building or room where someone can watch the stars and the moon

obsessed /əb'sest/ *adjective* **be obsessed with** to think about something all the time so that you cannot think about anything else: *Toby is obsessed with soccer at the moment.*

obsession /əb'seɪʃn/ *noun* C something you think about all the time so that you cannot think about anything else: *For Mark collecting cars is an obsession.*

occasion /ə'keɪʃn/ *noun* C a time or day when something happens: *The party was a special occasion, so I wore my best dress.*

occasionally /ə'keɪʒənəli/ *adverb* sometimes, but not very often: "Do you smoke?" "Only occasionally."

occupation /ˌɑːkjə'peɪʃn/ *noun* C your job, or the type of work you usually do: *Write your name, date of birth, and occupation on the form.*

off /ɒf/ *preposition, adverb* **1** down or away from something: *Everyone got off the ship safely.* • *Take your foot off the brake.* **2** if a machine, light, etc. is **off**, it is not being used: *The TV is never off in Pat's house.* **3** not at work or school: *It's my day off today.* • *Lottie is off today, she'll be back tomorrow.*

⇨The opposite of **off** is **on**.

official /ə'fɪʃl/ *adjective* decided or agreed by someone in authority, especially the government: *The official languages in New Zealand are English and Maori.*

old /əʊld/ *adjective* **1** used to say someone's age: *Tilly is four years old.* **2** an **old** person has lived for a long time: *Grandma was very old when she died, almost 100.*

⇨The opposite of this meaning of **old** is **young**. **3** an **old** friend is someone you have known for a long time: *Nina and I are old friends.* **4** used, seen, or done before and no longer new: *It's an old car, but it's still in good condition.* • *I love watching old movies on TV.*

⇨The opposite of these meanings of **old** is **new**.

old-fashioned /əʊld 'fæʃnd/ *adjective* **old-fashioned** opinions, machines, clothes, etc.,

used to be popular in the past, but they are no longer modern or fashionable: *Everything in their house is old-fashioned.*

on /ɒn/ *adverb* if a machine, light, etc. is **on**, it is being used: *I think Susie is at home, the lights are on.* • *When I wake up I turn the radio on.*

⇨The opposite of **on** is **off**.

open /'əʊpən/ **1 verb** T to arrange for something to start so that you can use it: *I'd like to open a bank account here please.* **2 verb** I if a business, store, movie, etc. **opens**, you can start to use it or see it: *When did Disney World open?*

• *The movie opens next week all over the country.* **3 adjective** willing to talk in an honest way: *Politicians should be more open.* **4 open-air** outside somewhere rather than in a building: *The open-air market comes every Wednesday.*

opera singer /'ɑːprə 'sɪŋər/ *noun* C someone who sings in operas (=a story in which actors sing the words to music)

opposite /'ɑːpəzɪt/ **1 preposition** on the other side or across from where someone or something is: *There's a small store opposite the school.* **2 noun** C a word that has a completely different meaning from another word: *Hot is the opposite of cold.*

optional /'ɑːpʃənəl/ *adjective* if something is **optional**, you can choose to do or have it or choose not to do or have it: *The after-school activities are optional, you don't have to go to them.*

orchestra /'ɔːrkɪstrə/ *noun* C a large group of people who play different musical instruments together: *Jack plays the violin in an orchestra.*

ordinary /'ɔːrdənəri/ *adjective* not special, unusual, different, or famous in any way: *ordinary people*

organization /ˌɔːrgənə'zeɪʃn/ *noun* C a group of people who work together to do something: *an organization that helps students find vacation jobs* • *a charity organization*

organized /ˌɔːrgənə'zɪzd/ *adjective* having your activities planned in a sensible way so that you use your time well

ornament /'ɔːnməmənt/ *noun* C a thing someone has in their home because it is attractive, not because it is useful: *an antique shop selling ornaments and pictures*

ostrich /'ɑːstrɪtʃ/ *noun* C a large African bird that has long legs and can run fast but cannot fly

overcome /ˌoʊvərˈkʌm/ *verb* T to control a problem in your life and find an answer to it: *You should try and overcome your fear of making mistakes and just do it!*

overseas /ˌoʊvərˈsiːz/ *adverb* if you travel **overseas** you go to another country, especially one that is far away

overweight /ˌoʊvərˈweɪt/ *adjective* someone who is **overweight** is fat and weighs more than they should

owe /oʊ/ *verb* T to have to pay back money to a person or bank that you have borrowed it from: *I owe the bank about £1000.* • *How is he going to pay back the money he owes?*

own /oʊn/ **1** *verb* T if you **own** something, it legally belongs to you: *I don't own this computer, I borrowed it.* • *Would you like to own a sports car?* **2** *on your own* alone or without any help: *Fred lives on his own.* • *I didn't teach Jess to play the game, she learned it on her own.*

oxygen /ˈɒksɪdʒən/ *noun* U an important gas in the air. All forms of life need oxygen to live

oyster /ˈɔɪstər/ *noun* C a type of seafood (=animals from the sea that you can eat) **Oysters** are soft creatures that live inside a hard shell and some produce pearls (=round white jewels).

P

pack /pæk/ *verb* I, T to collect the clothes and other things you need for a trip, and put them in a bag: *Don't forget to pack your bathing suit.* • *It only takes me a few minutes to pack.*

paid /peɪd/ the past tense and past participle of **pay**

paid back /peɪd ˈbæk/ the past tense and past participle of **pay back**

pain /peɪn/ *noun* C the bad feeling you have when a part of your body hurts: *He has pains in his chest.*

paint /peɪnt/ *verb* T **1** to make a picture using paint (=a thick liquid in different colors): *This was painted by Van Gogh in the south of France.* **2** to put paint on something: *Women used to paint their faces to make them look whiter.*

painting /ˈpeɪntɪŋ/ *noun* C a picture someone has made using paint: *The Sunflowers is a famous painting by Van Gogh.*

pair /per/ *noun* C two things or people of the same type: *a pair of black shoes* • *Which pair do you prefer?*

palace /ˈpæləs/ *noun* C a large and impressive house which is the home of a king, queen, or president: *Buckingham Palace* • *Elvis Presley's house was like a palace.*

pale /peɪl/ *adjective* **pale** skin is very light or white in color

⇨The opposite of **pale** is **dark**.

pan /pæn/ *noun* C a round metal pot that you cook food in

pantyhose /ˈpæntihəʊz/ *noun* plural a piece of clothing that women wear over their legs and feet, usually under a skirt or dress: *I need some new pantyhose.*

papers /ˈpeɪpəz/ *noun* plural important pieces of paper, letters, and documents: *There were books and papers all over the desk.*

park /pɑːrk/ *verb* I, T to leave a car somewhere for a period of time: *There's nowhere to park downtown.*

parking meter /ˈpɑːrkɪŋ ˈmɪtər/ *noun* C a machine next to the road that you put money into when you park your car

parking space /ˈpɑːrkɪŋ ˈspeɪs/ *noun* C, U places where you can leave a car: *The shopping center has plenty of parking space.*

parsley /ˈpɑːrsli/ *noun* U a plant with small green leaves that is used in cooking as a herb and to decorate food

participle /ˈpɑːtɪsɪpl/ *noun* C a word that is formed from a verb and usually ends in **-ing**, **-ed**, or **-en**. Participles are used to make the different tenses of verbs. *Going* is the **present participle**, and *gone* and *went* are the **past participles** of the verb *go*.

particular /ˈpɑːtɪkjələr/ *adjective* **1** relating to one person or thing more than any other: *I don't have any particular plans for tomorrow.* **2** *in particular* especially: *The weather is always very hot, in particular in the south.*

particularly /ˈpɑːtɪkjələrli/ *adverb* especially, more than others: *He was a man of peace and had a particularly violent death.*

partly /ˈpɑːrtli/ *adverb* in some way, but not completely: *The accident was partly Don's fault.*

partner /ˈpɑːtnər/ *noun* C **1** someone that you are married to or living with in a romantic relationship: *Is having a partner more important than having good friends?* **2** someone you are doing a job, game, or activity with: *Do the quiz with a partner.*

pass /pæs/ *verb* T to do well enough to be successful in a test or exam: *I have to pass the English exam before I can continue my studies.* • *Did she pass her driving test?*

passenger /ˈpæsɪndʒər/ *noun* C someone who pays to travel on a boat, train, or plane: *How many passengers were on the ship?*

passion /ˈpæʃn/ *noun* U an activity you like very much and have a very great interest in: *Clare's great passion is gardening.*

past /pæst/ *adverb* further than a particular place or from one side to the other: *Go past the garage and our house is on the right.*

past participle /pæst ˈpɑːrtɪsɪpl/ *noun* C see **participle**

path /pæθ/ *noun* C a hard surface that goes to the door of a house

patience /ˈpeɪʃəns/ *noun* U the ability to wait for something without getting angry: *Kathy doesn't have much patience with children.*

patient /ˈpeɪʃənt/ **1** *noun* C someone who is sick and is visiting a doctor or receiving medical treatment **2** *adjective* someone who is **patient** is able to wait for something without getting angry: *a patient teacher*

pay /peɪ/ *verb* I, T to give someone money when you buy something: *Can I pay by credit card?* • *How much did you pay for the computer?* • *Dad paid for the meal.*

pay back /peɪ ˈbæk/ [**paid back, have paid back**] *verb* T to give someone back the money you have borrowed from them: *I'll lend you the money, but when can you pay it back?*

PE /piː ˈiː/ see **physical education**

peace /piːs/ *noun* U **1** when there is no war or fighting between people or countries: *We want peace not war.* • *Perhaps one day everyone will live in peace.* **2** *in peace* in a calm and quiet way without anyone disturbing you: *I just want to read my newspaper in peace.*

peaceful /ˈpiːsfəl/ *adjective* **1** a place that is **peaceful** is quiet and calm without much activity or many people: *It's lovely and peaceful here on the island.* **2** without any fighting or violence: *a peaceful protest*

peacefully /ˈpiːsfəli/ *adverb* in a peaceful way: *The demonstration passed peacefully.*

peanut /ˈpiːnʌt/ *noun* C a nut that grows under the ground in a soft light brown shell

perfect /ˈpɜːrfɪkt/ *adjective* something that is **perfect** is exactly what you want in every

way with no mistakes or faults and could not be better: *On the day of the wedding the weather was perfect.* • *perfect teeth*

perform /pəˈfɔːm/ *verb* I, T to act, dance, play music, etc. in a play, movie, or concert: *Ewan McGregor performed as a street musician before he became an actor.* • *She is performing in a Shakespeare play at the moment.*

perfume /pɜːˈfjuːm/ *noun* C, U a liquid you put on your skin that smells very pleasant: *a bottle of perfume*

personal /ˈpɜːsnəl/ *adjective* **1** something that is **personal** relates to you, and to your life, feelings, and relationships: *He doesn't want to talk to anyone about his personal problems.* • *You can't read that letter, it's personal.* **2** if you give someone **personal service, attention**, etc., you do it yourself, rather than getting someone else to do it: *We aim to give all our customers the personal service they can't get from large companies.*

personal computer /ˈpɜːsnəl kəmˈpjʊtər/ *noun* C a computer for one person to use

personality /ˈpɜːrsənæləti/ *noun* C the sort of person that someone is, for example the way they think and behave: *Lucy has a very open, friendly personality.*

personally /ˈpɜːsnəli/ *adverb* say this when you are giving your own opinion about something: *Personally I don't like vacations at the beach, I find it boring.*

personal stereo /ˈpɜːsnəl ˈsteriəʊ/ *noun* C a small cassette player with earphones (=things you put in your ears to listen to something) which you can carry around with you to listen to music

pet /pet/ *noun* C an animal that someone keeps and looks after in their house, such as a dog or a cat: *Do you have any pets?*

philosophy /fɪˈləːsəfi/ *noun* U the study of ideas about thinking and the meaning of life

photocopier /ˈfəʊtəˌkɑːpiər/ *noun* C a machine that makes copies of pages of books, papers, etc. by taking a photograph very quickly

photocopying /ˈfəʊtəˌkɑːpiːɪŋ/ *noun* U making copies of pages of books, papers, etc. using a photocopier: *I have some photocopying to do.*

phrasebook /ˈfreɪz bʊk/ *noun* C a small book containing useful sentences in a foreign language. People use phrasebooks when they travel to another country and do not know the language

physical education or **PE** /ˈfɪzɪkl edʒəˈkeɪʃn, piːˈiː/ *noun* U sports and exercise when it is taught as a subject in schools in the UK

pigeon /ˈpɪdʒɪn/ *noun* C a fat gray bird that is often seen in towns

pilot /ˈpaɪlət/ *noun* C a person whose job is to fly a plane

pin /pɪn/ *noun* C a thin piece of metal used to fasten things or for some other purpose: *You can control the equipment with this electronic pin.*

pipe /paɪp/ *noun* C a metal or plastic tube that carries water or gas into houses, under the street, etc.

plan /plæn/ **1** *verb* T to intend to do something, or think about how you will do something that you intend to do: *Celia's parents are planning a trip to Australia/planning to go to Australia.* **2** *noun* C something that you intend to do: *What are your plans for the weekend?*

planet /ˈplæɪnt/ *noun* C a very large round object in space that moves round the sun: *There are nine planets in our solar system.*

plant /plænt/ *noun* C a thing with green leaves that grows in the earth: *houseplants* (=plants that you keep in pots in your house)

play /pleɪ/ *verb* I, T **1** to act the part of a character in a movie or play: *Which actor played Ned Kelly?* **2** to take part in a game: *The boys are outside playing soccer.* • *Do you play any sports regularly?* **3** to make music with a musical instrument: *Chris plays the piano very well.* • *Liz plays in the school band.*

pleasant /ˈplezənt/ *adjective* if something is pleasant, you enjoy it because it is good or nice: *pleasant weather*

pleased /pliːzd/ *adjective* happy about something good that has happened: *Mom wasn't very pleased about the broken window.* • *I'm pleased to hear that you got the job you wanted.* • *We're so pleased that you like the present.*

plumber /ˈplʌmə/ *noun* C someone whose job is to connect or repair water pipes, showers, toilets, etc.

pocket /ˈpɒkɪt/ *noun* C a place on or inside a piece of clothing in which you can carry small things: *I put the money in my pocket.* • *pants pockets*

poem /ˈpəʊəm/ *noun* C a piece of writing arranged in lines, often using words that rhyme (=have the same sound)

poisonous /ˈpɔɪzənəs/ *adjective* full of poison (=a dangerous substance that can kill you): *Some mushrooms are poisonous.* • *Lead is a poisonous metal.*

polite /pəˈlaɪt/ *adjective* behaving in a way that is pleasant towards other people and correct for a particular social situation: *The hotel has nice rooms and polite staff.* • *The children were very polite when they came to visit.* – **politely** /pəˈlaɪtli/ *adverb* “Thank you very much,” she answered politely.

politician /ˈpɒlɪtɪʃn/ *noun* C someone whose job is connected with politics, especially someone who has been elected to a government: *Politicians make decisions that affect ordinary people's lives.*

politics /ˈpɒlɪtiks/ *noun* U the activities and work of people with power in the government of a town or country: *He entered politics because he wanted to help change society.*

polluted /pəˈluːtɪd/ *adjective* full of chemicals, gases, etc. that make land, air, or water dirty or unsafe to use or live in: *a polluted beach* • *You can't swim there, the water is too polluted.*

poor /pʊr/ *adjective* **1** not having very much money or many possessions: *a poor family* **2** say this to show you are sorry about what has happened to someone: *Poor Ken! He looks really sick.*

pop star /ˈpɒp stɑːr/ *noun* C a famous singer or musician who sings or plays modern music that is popular with young people

popular /ˈpɒpjʊlər/ *adjective* liked by a lot of people: *Which is the most popular program on TV?* • *Mrs. Black is very popular with her students.*

population /ˈpɒpjʊleɪʃn/ *noun* U the number of people living in a place: *The population of New Zealand is 3.5 million.*

port /pɔːrt/ *noun* C a town next to the sea where ships arrive and leave from

possession /pəˈzeʃn/ *noun* C your possessions are the things that you own: *I don't have any really valuable possessions.*

potholing /ˈpɒtˌhəʊlɪŋ/ *noun* U the sport or activity of going inside caves (=holes under the ground or in the side of hills)

power /ˈpaʊər/ *noun* U **1** being in charge of the government of a country: *At the last election, the president fell from power.* (=no longer had power) **2** control over people or events:

powerful

The British queen does not have any real power. • black power (=power for black people)

powerful /'paʊəfəl/ adjective someone who is powerful can make people do what they want and can control people and events: a rich and powerful businessman

powerfully /'paʊəfəli/ adverb: a powerfully strong wind

practical /'præktɪkl/ adjective **1** concerned with doing things and real situations rather than ideas or studying: She has the qualifications to be a teacher, but doesn't have much practical experience yet. **2** good at doing things with your hands: Dave is very practical, he can fix anything!

practice /'præktɪs/ noun **1** when you do an activity regularly so that you become better at it: Have you done your piano practice today? **2** verb **1, T** to do an activity regularly so that you become better at it: Musicians have to practice for hours every day. • I like making new friends so I can practice my English.

praise /preɪz/ **1** verb **T** to tell someone that you like and admire something they have done: The teacher praised all the students for their hard work. **2** noun **U** things you say to tell someone that you like and admire something they have done: Parents should give their children lots of praise.

pray /preɪ/ verb **I** to say prayers: Everyone comes to the mosque to pray.

prayer /preɪ/ noun **C, U** special words you say or read to God when giving thanks, asking for help etc.: evening prayers • Ramadan is a time for prayer for Muslims.

prediction /prɪ'dɪkʃn/ noun **C** a statement about what you think will happen in the future: Can you make a prediction about who will win the next World Cup? • How many of our predictions about the future will come true?

prefer /prɪ'fɜːr/ verb **T** to like one thing or person better than another: Which of these dresses do you prefer – the blue one or the green one? • Would you prefer to go to the movies or to a restaurant tonight?

pregnant /'pregnənt/ adjective a woman who is pregnant is going to have a baby: Maria is six months' pregnant. (=has been pregnant for six months)

preposition /ˌprepə'zɪʃn/ noun **C** a word that goes before a noun that tells you where something is, or the time or direction of something. In these sentences to, up, and on are prepositions: Put the book on the shelf please. • Give it to her. • Walk up the road.

prescription /prɪ'skrɪpʃn/ noun **C** medicine that a doctor decides you should have. The doctor writes the prescription on a special piece of paper and you go to a drugstore to collect it: When you are taking antibiotics, you must finish the prescription.

present /'preznt/ **1** at present during the time that is now: At present Katy is studying in Japan. **2** present tense the form of a verb that tells you about an action that is happening now **3** noun **C** a nice thing you give to someone on a special occasion; a gift: I must buy a birthday present for my sister.

present participle /'preznt 'pɑːrtɪsɪpl/ see participle

press /pres/ verb **T** to push a button or key on a machine with your finger in order to make it work

pretty /'prɪti/ adverb say this to mean quite or fairly: The weather was pretty hot today. • That's a pretty good idea.

printer /'prɪntər/ noun **C** a machine connected to a computer that copies documents onto paper

private /'praɪvət/ **1** adjective for use by only one person or group, and not available to anyone else: All the hotel rooms have a private bathroom. **2** not paid for or owned by the government: a private school/hospital **3** noun **C** an ordinary soldier in the army: Private Ryan

prize /praɪz/ noun **C** something special that is given to someone who has won a competition or race, or who has done something very good: First prize is a new car. • the Nobel Prize for Peace

problem /'prɒbləm/ noun **C** something that causes difficulty for you: The president has a few health problems. • If you have a problem with the job I'll phone you. • The Browns are quite rich, money is no problem for them.

produce /prə'duːs/ verb **T** to make or grow things to be sold in stores: Brazil produces a lot of coffee. • What goods are produced in your country?

producer /prə'duːsər/ noun **C** someone whose job is to get the money to make a movie, play,

record, etc. and organize how, where, and when it is made

professional /prəˈfeʃənəl/ *adjective* a **professional** dancer, soccer player, etc. dances, plays soccer, etc. as their job and gets paid for it: *Carl hopes to become a professional athlete.*

profit /ˈprɒfɪt/ *noun* C,U money that a company earns by buying and selling things: *The company made a really big profit last year.*

program /ˈprəʊgræm/ *verb* T to set the controls of a machine in order to make it work: *Do you know how to program the VCR?*

progress /ˈprəʊɡres/ *noun* U **1** the way something develops and improves over a period of time: *Susan has made a lot of progress at school this year.* (=her school work is getting better) **2 in progress** happening or continuing: *You cannot leave the room while the test is in progress.*

promise /ˈprɒmɪs/ *verb* T to tell someone that you will definitely do something that they want you to do: *I promise that I'll give you the money on Friday.* • *We promise to give you your money back if you find the same thing cheaper at another store.*

pronounce /prəˈnaʊns/ *verb* T to say a word using the correct sounds and stress (=how strong a sound is): *How do you pronounce your surname?*

pronunciation /prəˈnʌnsiˈeɪʃn/ *noun* U the way that words in a language are pronounced: *The tape helps you with your pronunciation.*

property tycoon /ˈprɒːpərti taɪkʊn/ *noun* C a successful person in business who makes a lot of money buying and selling land and buildings

prosperity /prɒˈsperəti/ *noun* U when people have enough money and everything they need to enjoy life

protect /prəˈtekt/ *verb* T to keep something safe from being harmed or damaged: *A hat will protect you from the sun.* • *They were traveling in the desert and carried a gun to protect themselves.*

protection /prəˈtekʃn/ *noun* U keeping something safe from being harmed or damaged: *An umbrella gives you protection from the rain.*

protest /ˈprəʊtest/ *noun* C an action or statement complaining strongly about something

that you disapprove of or disagree with: *Thousands joined the protest against the war in Vietnam.* • *a peace protest* (=a protest for peace)

Protestant /ˈprɒːtɪstənt/ *noun* C a person who follows the part of the Christian religion that separated from the Roman Catholic church in the 16th century

psychology /saɪˈkɒːlədʒi/ *noun* U the study of the mind and behavior as a science subject

pub /pʌb/ *noun* C a bar where you can buy alcohol drinks, and sometimes food, especially in Britain: *We're going to the pub tonight for a drink with some friends.*

public /ˈpʌblɪk/ **1** *adjective* known about by a lot of people: *The president's affair with a married woman was a public scandal.* **2 public transportation** transportation services that everyone can use, especially trains and buses: *I don't have a car so I like to be close to public transportation.* **3 in public** in a place where other people can see you or be with you, for example on a street or in a restaurant, not in your own home: *She was very nervous when she performed in public for the first time.*

pull down /pʊl ˈdaʊn/ *verb* T to destroy a building, wall, etc. completely: *The Berlin Wall was pulled down in 1989.*

purse /pɜːrs/ *noun* C a small bag that you use for carrying money in
⇨ A small flat case for carrying paper money is a **billfold**.

push /pʊʃ/ *noun* C when someone uses a lot of effort to achieve something: *With an extra push he might win the contest.*

put /put/ [put, have put] *verb* T **1 put money on something** to pay money as a bet (=when you say what you think the result of a race, a game, etc. will be): *Have you ever put money on a horse?* **2 put on weight** to become heavier and fatter

pyramid /ˈpɪrəˌmɪd/ *noun* C a building with a square base and four sides shaped like triangles that meet at a point at the top

Q

qualified /ˈkwɒːlɪfaɪd/ *adjective* having completed a course of study and passed the exams to do a particular job: *a qualified doctor* • *Both the candidates are well qualified for the job.*

quality /'kwɒləti/ *noun* **1** C something that is typical of someone or something and makes them different from other people or things: *I don't think I have the right qualities to be a teacher, I'm not very patient.* **2** U how good or bad something is when you compare it with other similar things: *She always buys good quality clothes.* • *We use only the best quality ingredients in our food.*

query /'kwɪri/ *noun* C a question that you ask in order to get information or because you are not sure about something: *If you have any queries, phone the help desk.*

quick-thinking /'kwɪk 'θɪŋkɪŋ/ *adjective* able to think and act quickly, especially in a difficult situation: *The quick-thinking boy put a blanket over the fire.*

quiet /'kwəɪət/ *adjective* a **quiet** street does not have very much traffic or noise

R

race /reɪs/ *noun* C a competition to see who can do something fastest: *the 100-metre race* • *Which horse won the race?*

racket /'rækɪt/ *noun* C a thing you use to hit the ball in games such as tennis: *a tennis racket*

raincoat /'reɪnkəʊt/ *noun* C a coat that keeps you dry in the rain

raise /reɪz/ *noun* C an increase in the amount of money someone earns: *The manager gave his secretary a big raise last year.*

rang /ræŋ/ the past tense of **ring**

rat /ræt/ *noun* C an animal that looks like a large mouse with a long tail. Rats often live in towns and eat food that has been thrown away

rather /'ræðər/ *adverb* **1** quite or fairly: *I'm rather hungry.* **2** instead of something else: *I drink tea rather than coffee in the evenings.*

razor /'reɪzər/ *noun* C a thing you use to shave with (=cut off hair from your face or body)

RE /æɪ 'i:/ see **religious education**

reach /ri:tʃ/ *verb* **1** to move your hands towards someone or something in order to touch or hold them or it: *I can't reach the top shelf, it's too high.* **2** to arrive at a place after you have been traveling: *He got in his car and drove until he reached the sea.* **3** to increase to a particular speed, temperature, etc.: *The temperature reaches 40°C in summer.*

realistic /rɪ'ælɪstɪk/ *adjective* if you are **realistic** about a situation, you have a sensible attitude towards it and understand what is possible and what is impossible: *You have to be realistic about learning a language – it takes time.*

reality /rɪ'æləti/ *noun* C,U something that actually exists, instead of just being a plan or idea: *How can you turn your dreams into reality?/How can you make your dreams become a reality?*

realtor /rɪəltər/ (*trademark*) *noun* C a person whose job is to buy and sell houses for other people

receipt /rɪ'si:t/ *noun* C a piece of paper that proves you have bought something or paid money to someone: *If you keep the receipt, you can bring the book back to the store and change it.*

receive /rɪ'si:v/ *verb* T to take or get something that someone gives you: *How many fan letters does she receive every week?* • *Tom Hanks received the prize for best actor.*

recognize /'rekəɡnaɪz/ *verb* T to know who someone is or what something is when you see them or it: *Nike sportswear is recognized all over the world.* • *Is that Laura in the photo? I didn't recognize her.*

recommend /'rekə'mend/ *verb* T to suggest to someone that they should do something, go somewhere, buy something, etc.: *Doctors recommend that you should eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day.* • *Moira recommended Sally for the job.*

recommendation /'rekə'men'deɪʃn/ *noun* C,U when someone tells you that a person or thing is good, suitable, or useful: *I chose my hotel in Greece on the personal recommendation of a friend.*

recover /rɪ'kʌvər/ *verb* I to get well again after being hurt, sick, or having an unpleasant experience: *Jan recovered quickly after the accident.*

reduce /rɪ'du:s/ *verb* T to make something less: *You should reduce the amount of fat and sugar you eat.* • *When are they going to reduce taxes?*

referee /'refəri:/ *noun* C a person whose job is to control a game of soccer, etc. and make sure that it is played correctly

region /'rɪ:dʒən/ *noun* C a large area of a country or the world: *Bordeaux is a wine-making region of France.*

regular /ˈregjʊlə/ *adjective* **1** happening often: *I try and take regular exercise.* **2** a **regular** verb or noun changes its form in the same way as other verbs or nouns: *A regular past tense ending is -ed.*

regularly /ˈregjʊləli/ *adverb* often: *Pete goes swimming regularly, at least three times a week.*

relationship /ˈrɪleɪʃnʃɪp/ *noun* **C** **1** a close friendship between two people, especially a romantic friendship: *David and Kate have a very happy relationship.* **2** the way in which two people or two groups behave towards each other: *the relationship between brothers and sisters*

relatives /ˈrelatɪvz/ *noun plural* members of your family, but not the people who live with you like your parents or brothers and sisters: *Lola is visiting some relatives in Spain.*

relax /rɪˈlæks/ *verb* **I** to rest and become calm, and stop thinking about your work or your problems: *You don't have a lot of time to relax with a young family.* • *We're just relaxing at home this weekend.*

relaxed /rɪˈlækst/ *adjective* **1** feeling calm and rested, and not worried about anything: *They looked very relaxed after their vacation.* **2** a place that is **relaxed** has a pleasant and informal atmosphere, and does not have a lot of strict rules: *Amsterdam is a very relaxed city.*

relaxing /rɪˈlæksɪŋ/ *adjective* something that is **relaxing** makes you feel calm and rested, and not worried about anything: *I find cooking quite relaxing.*

reliable /rɪˈlaɪəbəl/ *adjective* a **reliable** person, machine, method, etc. is one that you can trust to do the right thing: *My babysitter, Eva, is very reliable.* • *There is a reliable bus service from here to the airport.*

religion /rɪˈlɪdʒən/ *noun* **C, U** the belief that there is a God, or gods, who made the world and created rules about how people must behave. There are many different religions, for example Christianity, Islam, and Buddhism

religious /rɪˈlɪdʒəs/ *adjective* someone who is **religious** believes strongly in their religion

religious education or **RE** /rɪˈlɪdʒəs edʒəˈkeɪʃn, ɑːr ˈiː/ *noun* **U** a school subject in the UK which teaches children about different religions and religious beliefs

remember /rɪˈmembər/ *verb* **T** **1** to keep something in your mind, or to bring something

back into your mind and not forget it: *Do you remember your first day of school?* • *I can't remember when Emily's birthday is.* **2** **remember someone** to think about someone who has died and remember the good things they did, or what kind of person they were: *People remember Princess Diana as beautiful and kind, but unhappy.* • *How do you want people to remember you?*

remote control /rɪˈməʊt kənˈtrəʊl/ *noun* **C** a small piece of equipment that you use to operate a television, etc. from a distance

rent /rent/ *verb* **T** to pay money to use something for a short period of time: *Why don't we rent a video tonight?* • *I'm renting a house in the country this summer.*

repair /rɪˈpeər/ **1** *verb* **T** to fix something that is damaged or not working well: *Ben said he can repair the TV for me.* **2** **repairs** work that someone does to repair something: *How much did the repairs cost?*

replace /rɪˈpleɪs/ *verb* **T** to remove something and start using something else instead: *Do you think computers will ever replace teachers?*

reply /rɪˈplaɪ/ *verb* **I** to say or write something as an answer: *I wrote him a letter but he didn't reply.* • *Have you replied to the invitation yet?*

request /rɪˈkwest/ **1** *noun* **C** an act of politely asking for something: *You should say "please" when you make a request.* **2** *verb* **T** to ask for something politely [FORMAL]: *I am sending you our new brochure as requested.* (=this is what you asked me to do)

rescue /ˈreskjʊː/ **1** *verb* **T** to take someone away from a dangerous situation: *The captain rescued all the passengers.* **2** *noun* **C** when someone is taken away from a dangerous situation: *The rescue took four hours.*

reservation /ˌrezərˈveɪʃn/ *noun* **C** an arrangement to have a ticket, hotel room, a restaurant table, etc., by asking for it to be kept for you: *Please confirm your reservation* (=make sure it is correct) *24 hours before the flight.*

reserve /rɪˈzɜːrv/ *verb* **T** to arrange to have a ticket, hotel room, a restaurant table, etc., by asking for it to be kept for you: *I want to reserve a room for tonight please.* • *A parking space has been reserved for you.*

residential /ˌrezɪˈdenʃl/ *adjective* a **residential** area is part of a town where people live and where there are a lot of houses, not stores or offices

resolution

resolution /ˈrezəluːʃn/ *noun* C a firm decision to do something, or not to do something: *I've made a resolution to stop eating chocolate.*

rest /rest/ **1** *verb* I to do nothing except relax or sleep, especially after you have been sick or working a lot: *We rested after the long trip.*

• *The doctor told her to rest.* **2** *the rest* the part of something that is still there when some of it has gone: *What do you want to do for the rest of the day?*

result /rɪˈzʌlt/ *noun* C **1** the information you get after studying something or taking a test: *The results of the survey show that most people watch a lot of television.* **2** what happens because of something else that happened first: *He designed his own house – with some strange results.*

retire /rɪˈtaɪr/ *verb* I to stop working because of old age: *She retired last year at the age of 65.*

retired /rɪˈtaɪrd/ *adjective* someone who is **retired** has stopped working because of old age: *a retired doctor/teacher/actor* (=someone who used to be a doctor, etc., but is now retired)

reunite /ˌriːjuːnaɪt/ *verb* T to join two people, countries, etc. together again after a period when they have been separated: *The family were reunited after the war.*

revolving /rɪˈvɔːlvɪŋ/ *adjective* designed to move round in a circle: *revolving doors*

rhino /ˈraɪnoʊ/ *noun* C a large, heavy animal from Africa with thick skin and a horn on its nose [INFORMAL]. **Rhino** is short for **rhinoceros**

rich /rɪtʃ/ *adjective* having a lot of money: *The queen is a very rich woman.*

ring /rɪŋ/ [**rang, have rung**] **1** *verb* I to make the continuous sound of a bell: *The phone rang but I didn't answer it.* **2** *noun* C a round metal thing you wear as a piece of jewelry on your finger: *a silver ring* • *Women in the tribe wear neck rings.* (=around the neck)

river /ˈrɪvər/ *noun* C a long line of water that flows naturally through a country towards the sea: *the River Nile*

rob /rɒb/ *verb* T to steal money, especially from a bank, and often using violence: *The gang stole horses and robbed banks.*

rock /rɒk/ *noun* **1** U loud modern music: *a famous rock star* (=a musician who plays rock) **2** C, U the hard substance that parts of the Earth such as mountains are made of

rock concert /rɒk kɑːnsərt/ *noun* C a performance of loud modern music

rocket /ˈrɒkɪt/ *noun* U a vegetable with soft green leaves used in salad

role /roʊl/ *noun* C a character that someone pretends to be in a particular situation such as in a job or in a classroom activity: *In his job at the hotel he played the role of bellhop.*

• *Your role is the sales clerk and I'll be the customer.*

romance /ˈroʊməns, ˈruːməns/ *noun* C,U a relationship between two people who are in love with each other, and all the strong and exciting feelings that they experience: *a historical romance* (=a book with a romantic story that happens in the past)

romantic /ˈroʊməntɪk/ *adjective* connected with love and relationships: *a romantic movie* • *We had a romantic evening together.*

rough /rʌf/ *adjective* not exactly correct or without many details and done quickly: *He drew a rough map of the farm.* • *This letter is only a rough draft, not the final version.*

roulette /ruːˈlet/ *noun* U a game in which you drop a ball onto a moving wheel with holes that have numbers on them. People bet money on which number the ball will be on when the wheel stops: *He lost all his money playing roulette in a casino.*

row /raʊ/ *noun* C a short argument with someone: *Alex had a row with her boyfriend last night.*

rude /ruːd/ *adjective* behaving or speaking towards other people in a way that is unpleasant and likely to offend or annoy them: *The waiters in the hotel were all very rude!*

rug /rʌg/ *noun* C a thick piece of material that is used to cover part of the floor in a room
⇒ A **rug** is smaller than a **carpet**, which covers the whole floor.

rugby /ˈrʌɡbi/ *noun* U a game similar to soccer, played by two teams with an oval shaped ball. In rugby you can carry, throw, or kick the ball.

rule /ruːl/ **1** *noun* C an instruction that tells you what you can do or what you must do, for example in a game or in a school: *There are lots of spelling rules in English.* • *Before we start to play, can you explain the rules?* **2** *verb* I, T to control a country or a group of people: *The king ruled for 20 years.*

ruler /ˈruːlər/ *noun* C a flat, straight piece of plastic, wood, or metal that you use for measuring things and drawing straight lines

run /rʌn/ [ran, have run] **1** *verb* I to move very quickly on your legs, going faster than when you walk: *Greg wants to run a marathon.* **2** *verb* T to organize and control a business: *Liz used to run a bookstore in Oxford.* **3** *verb* I when a river **runs** somewhere, it flows through that place **4** *verb* I to pass near or through somewhere: *The road runs along the edge of the park.* • *The mountains run from east to west.* **5** *noun* go for a run to run for a distance or period of time: *He goes for a run every evening.*

rung /rʌŋ/ the past participle of ring

S

sad /sæd/ *adjective* feeling unhappy, or making you feel unhappy: *I'm sad to say goodbye.*

• a sad song

safari /sə'fɑ:ri/ *noun* C a journey in Africa to look at wild animals

safari lodge /sə'fɑ:ri lɒ:dʒ/ *noun* C a simple hotel where you can stay during a safari

safe /seɪf/ *adjective* **1** not harmful or dangerous: *Is this water safe to swim in?* **2** a **safe** place is one where people are not likely to be harmed, and things are not likely to get stolen or lost: *Is it safer in the city or the country?*

safely /'seɪfli/ *adverb* without being harmed or damaged: *The plane landed safely.*

said /sed/ the past tense and past participle of say

sail /seɪl/ *verb* I,T to travel across water in a boat that has sails (=strong cloth sheets that are pushed by the wind to make the boat move): *We sailed round the coast.*

sailing /'seɪlɪŋ/ *noun* U the sport or activity of traveling across water in a boat that has sails: *It's a perfect day for sailing on the lake.*

salary /'sæləri/ *noun* C the money you get paid every month by your employer: *She earns a good salary.*

sales clerk /seɪlz klɜ:rk/ *noun* C someone who sells things in a shop

sandy /'sændi/ *adjective* covered with a lot of sand: *a beautiful sandy beach*

satellite TV /sætəlaɪt ti: 'vi:/ *noun* C a television that receives pictures from a satellite (=a piece of electronic equipment that has been sent into space and goes round the Earth)
⇨ Satellites are used to send information back to Earth, and to broadcast television pictures around the world.

save /seɪv/ *verb* **1** I,T to keep money instead of spending it, especially because you are trying to get enough money to buy something special: *Lewis doesn't spend his allowance (=money his parents give him), he saves it.*

• *I find it impossible to **save money**.* • *Kim is **saving for a new car/saving up for a new car**.* **2** T to help someone to avoid danger, harm, or death: *She saved the little boy by pulling him off the road just in time.* • *Thank you for saving my life.* • *These beautiful animals are in danger – we must try and save them.*

savings /'seɪvɪŋz/ *noun* plural money that you have saved: *They have \$10,000 in savings.*

saw /sɔ:/ the past tense of see

say /seɪ/ [said, have said] *verb* T to use words to tell someone something: *Could you say that again, please?*

scandal /'skændl/ *noun* C a situation in which someone has behaved dishonestly or badly, and everyone knows about it and talks about it: *The minister has never been involved in any embarrassing situations or scandals.*

scarf /skɑ:rf/ *noun* C a piece of material that you wear round your neck, head, or shoulders, usually to keep warm: *a silk/velvet/wool scarf*

scene /si:n/ *noun* C one of the parts of a play, movie, TV story, etc. All the events in a scene happen in one place and at one time: *The first movies were just short scenes.*

scenery /'si:nəri/ *noun* U all the natural things you can see in an area of country, such as fields, mountains, and lakes: *New Zealand has some fantastic scenery.*

scientist /'saɪəntɪst/ *noun* C someone who studies science (=the natural and physical world to explain what things are made of, how they work, etc.)

scissors /'sɪzərz/ *noun* plural a tool for cutting paper, consisting of two sharp blades that are joined in the middle with holes for your fingers: *a pair of scissors*

score /skɔ:r/ *noun* C the number of points that a person or team gets in a game, test, etc.: *Alan got the highest score with 98 points.* • *The score was Brazil 3, Italy 2.*

Scotch tape /'skɔ:tʃ 'teɪp/ (*trademark*) *noun* U clear plastic material on a roll that is sticky on one side and used for sticking things together

screen

screen /skri:n/ *noun* C the flat surface that a movie is shown on in a movie theater

scuba diving /'sku:bə ,daɪvɪŋ/ *noun* U the sport of swimming in deep water in the sea. You breathe through a tube from a container of air that you carry on your back

seafood /'si:fu:d/ *noun* U creatures from the sea that you can eat, such as crabs, shrimp, and lobsters

seaside /'si:said/ *noun singular* the **seaside** in British English, an area that is close to the sea where people go for vacations, or for a day in order to relax: *The kids like going to the seaside.*

season /'si:zən/ *noun* C one of the main periods that the year is divided into

➔A season can be a time when there is a particular type of weather, for example winter or summer. In some countries there is a **dry season** (=when it does not rain) and a **rainy season** (=when there is a lot of rain).

secret /'si:kɹət/ *noun* C 1 something that you do not want to tell anyone else because it is private information: *I'm not telling you who I'm in love with, it's a secret!* 2 the best way to get something or make something happen, or the way that someone is able to achieve something: *What is the secret of long life?* • *She always looks beautiful and calm. What's her secret?*

secretly /'si:kɹətli/ *adverb* without anyone else knowing: *They got married secretly.*

see /si:/ [**saw, have seen**] *verb* 1 I,T to look at and notice things using your eyes: *There's so much to see and do in London.* • *I saw her with another man yesterday.* 2 T to meet or visit someone, or spend some time with them: *When are we going to see each other again?* • *I haven't seen Chris for a few weeks.* 3 T to watch a game, television program, etc.: *I've seen all their games this year.* 4 I to understand: *Do you see how it works?* 5 T to look at something to find information: *See the table on page 10.*

sell /sel/ [**sold, have sold**] *verb* T 1 to have something available for people to buy: *They sell books, CDs, and videos over the Internet.* • *Millions of copies of the game have been sold.* 2 to give something to someone for some money: *I want to sell my car.*

send /send/ [**sent, have sent**] *verb* T 1 to arrange for something to go to another place, usually by mailing it: *Did you get the invita-*

tion I sent you? • *I've a few emails to send.* 2 to arrange for someone to go somewhere: *My firm is sending me to New York for six months.*

sensation /sen'seɪʃn/ *noun* C someone or something that causes a feeling of great excitement, interest, and surprise among a lot of people: *Is this band going to be the next international sensation?*

series /'sɪrɪz/ *noun singular* a number of similar events that happen one after the other: *The company closed after a series of financial mistakes.*

serve /sɜ:rv/ *verb* I,T to spend a period of time working for an organization, the armed forces, the government, etc.: *He served in the army before becoming an actor.*

service /'sɜ:rvɪs/ *noun* 1 U the work that someone such as a waiter or sales clerk does in a restaurant, store, or hotel: *The food was good but the service was very slow.* • *Service is included.* (=you do not have to pay a tip to the waiter) 2 C a business or organization that does useful work for people, or supplies something that all the people in an area need: *local bus services*

set /set/ [**set, have set**] 1 *verb* T to arrange or decide something: *We have finally set a date for the wedding.* 2 *verb* T to put something in a place or position: *The hotel is set in a beautiful garden.* 3 **set fire to something** to make something burn 4 *noun* C a group of things that are all of the same type or used for the same purpose: *a set of questions*

share /ʃer/ *verb* T to have or use something equally with other people: *Carol and I shared a taxi to the airport.* • *The two sides have agreed to share power in the new government.*

shark /ʃɑ:rk/ *noun* C a large fish with very sharp teeth that sometimes attacks people who are swimming

sharp /ʃɑ:rp/ *adjective* something that is sharp has a thin edge or narrow point and can cut things easily: *a sharp knife* • *My pencil isn't sharp enough.*

shave /ʃeɪv/ *verb* I,T to cut off hair from your face or body

shaving cream /'ʃeɪvɪŋ ,kri:m/ *noun* U a type of soft soap that you spread on your face to make it easy to shave with a razor

shiny /'ʃaɪni/ *adjective* something that is shiny has a bright surface that gives out light: *Ava has long shiny hair.*

shipbuilding /ˈʃɪp ˌbɪldɪŋ/ *noun* U the work of building ships

shocked /ʃɒkt/ *adjective* feeling surprised and upset at the same time: *I was shocked when I looked at the bill.*

shoelace /ˈʃuːleɪs/ *noun* C a long thin piece of material like string that goes through the holes of a shoe to tie it

shoot /ʃuːt/ [**shot**, **have shot**] *verb* T 1 to make a movie of something: *Let's shoot the next scene again.* 2 to fire a gun at someone: *John Lennon was shot outside his apartment.*

shopper /ˈʃɔːpər/ *noun* C someone who buys things from stores: *The streets are full of shoppers on Saturdays.*

shopping /ˈʃɔːpɪŋ/ *noun* 1 when you go to different stores to buy things or to look at things that you might buy later, especially clothes: *Do you enjoy shopping?* • *I'm going shopping this afternoon for some new shoes.* 2 do the shopping to go to stores to buy things you need, especially food: *We do our shopping once a week at the supermarket.*

shopping mall /ˈʃɔːpɪŋ mɔːl/ *noun* C a large covered area where there are a lot of different stores

short /ʃɔːrt/ *adjective* not tall or long: *short hair* • *Toby is shorter than the other boys in his class.*

shorts /ʃɔːrts/ *noun plural* 1 male underwear. 2 in British English, short pants that you wear for sports or in hot weather: *a pair of shorts*

shot /ʃɔːt/ the past tense and past participle of **shoot**

should /ʃʊd/ *modal verb* used to give someone advice and say what is the best thing to do: *You should stop smoking.* • *Do you think I should call the doctor?*

shout /ʃaʊt/ 1 *verb* I to say something very loudly, especially when you are angry or when you want to get someone's attention: *Mrs. Ross opened the door and shouted at the driver.* 2 *noun* C a loud cry of anger or to get someone's attention: *I heard shouts coming from the water.*

show business /ˈʃəʊ ˌbɪznəs/ *noun* U the world of actors, dancers, and other performers who entertain people through movies, theater, and television

side /saɪd/ *noun* C one of two parts of an area or an object that is either on the left or the

right: *A rock hit the side of my car.* • *Which side of the road do they drive on in Canada?* • *the eastern side of the island*

sightseeing /ˈsaɪtsiːɪŋ/ *noun* U when you visit famous and interesting places as a tourist: *We spent the day sightseeing in Madrid.*

sign /saɪn/ 1 *noun* C a picture, notice, or board that gives information, for example on a road or in a public place: *A sign on the wall said "No Smoking."* 2 *noun* C something that tells you that another thing exists or may happen: *If a Dinka man is fat, it is a sign that he is rich.* 3 *verb* I, T to write your name on a letter, form, etc.: *We signed the contract today.* 4 **sign off** *verb* I to finish a letter by writing your name at the end of it

silent /ˈsaɪlənt/ *adjective* 1 completely quiet: *The street was silent.* 2 if someone is **silent**, they are not speaking: *Everyone in the theater was silent.* 3 **silent letter** a letter in a word that you do not pronounce: *In the word "psychology" the p is silent.*

silk /sɪlk/ *noun* U fine soft cloth that is made from the thread of a type of insect called a silkworm: *a silk scarf*

silver /ˈsɪlvər/ *adjective* made of silver (=a valuable, shiny metal): *a silver ring*

similar /ˈsɪmɪlər/ *adjective* like someone or something but not exactly the same: *Jane and I came to the party wearing very similar dresses.* • *Max's political ideas are similar to mine.* • *Emma and her sister look very similar / Emma and her sister are very similar in appearance.*

similarity /ˌsɪmɪləˈrɪti/ *noun* C one of the ways in which two people or things are similar to each other: *There are not many similarities between the book and the movie.*

simple /ˈsɪmpl/ *adjective* basic and plain, without anything extra or unnecessary added: *We stayed in a simple but comfortable hotel.*

sincerely /sɪnˈsɪrli/ *adverb* Yours **sincerely** used at the end of a formal letter before you write your name: *Yours sincerely, H. Potter*

singer /ˈsɪŋər/ *noun* C someone whose job is singing, especially in a band, in the theater, etc.: *Cher is both a singer and an actress.*

single /ˈsɪŋɡl/ 1 *adjective* used by one person only: *a single room/bed* 2 *noun* C a record, tape, or CD that has only one song on it: *She had a hit single with the song "Believe."*

site /saɪt/ *noun* C a place where a building is, was, or is going to be built: *Which is the best*

site for the new swimming pool? • There used to be a church on this site.

situated /ˈsɪtʃueɪtɪd/ *adjective* **be situated** to be in a particular place: *It's a charming village, situated near Lake Geneva.*

size /saɪz/ *noun* **C** 1 how big or small something is: *The two countries are roughly the same size.* 2 how big or small clothes, shoes, etc. are, especially according to a set of measurements: *Do you have this dress in a smaller size?* • *What size are your shoes?*

skin /skɪn/ *noun* **U** what covers the outside of your body: *She has very light skin and burns easily in the sun.*

skyline /ˈskaɪlaɪn/ *noun* **C** the shape of buildings, trees, hills, etc. when you see them against the sky: *the New York skyline*

skyscraper /ˈskaɪskreɪpər/ *noun* **C** a very tall building

sleeping bag /ˈsliːpɪŋ bæɡ/ *noun* **C** a thick warm bag that you use to sleep in, for example when you are camping

sleepy /ˈsliːpi/ *adjective* if you are **sleepy**, you feel tired and want to go to sleep

slightly /ˈslɑːtli/ *adverb* a little, but not very: *Adam is slightly older than me.*

slim /slɪm/ *adjective* a **slim** person has a fairly thin body and is not at all fat: *Arlene is tall and slim.*

slip /slɪp/ *verb* **I** to fall or lose your balance by sliding on a wet or shiny surface: *He slipped on the wet floor and hit his head.*

slogan /ˈsləʊɡən/ *noun* **C** a short clever phrase used especially in advertising to make people remember an idea or a product that a company is selling: *political slogans*

slow /sləʊ/ *adjective* not moving or happening quickly: *This train is very slow.*

smell /smel/ *verb* **I, T** to notice what something is by taking in sensations through your nose: *Dinner smells great!* • *I can smell burning.* (=something is burning and I can smell it)

smelly /ˈsmeli/ *adjective* having an unpleasant smell: *a dirty smelly city*

smoke /sməʊk/ *noun* **U** the gray gas in the air that is produced when something is burning: *Smoke was coming out of the engine.*

sneakers /ˈsniːkəz/ *noun plural* shoes designed for running or playing sports, but which many people wear as ordinary shoes: *a pair of Nike sneakers*

socialism /ˈsəʊʃəlɪzəm/ *noun* **U** a political

system that believes people should be treated equally and in which a lot of a country's industries are controlled by the government

social life /ˈsəʊʃl laɪf/ *noun* **C** your friendships and what you do in your free time: *Andrew has a busy social life.*

sock /sɔːk/ *noun* **C** a piece of clothing you wear on your foot inside your shoe: *a pair of socks*

sofa /ˈsəʊfə/ *noun* **C** a large comfortable piece of furniture that two or three people can sit on, a couch

sold /səʊld/ the past tense and the past participle of **sell**

soldier /ˈsəʊldʒər/ *noun* **C** someone who is a member of an army: *He was a soldier in the Vietnam war.*

solo /ˈsəʊləʊ/ *adjective* done alone, without anyone else helping you: *She left the band to follow a solo singing career.*

songwriter /ˈsɔːŋraɪtər/ *noun* **C** someone who writes the words, and sometimes the music, of popular songs

sort out /sɔːt 'aʊt/ *verb* **T** to organize things, for example by putting them in order or by separating them into groups: *I must sort out my desk.*

sound /saʊnd/ 1 *noun* **C, U** something that you hear: *I love the different sounds of the countryside.* • *What was the first movie to have sound?* 2 ... **sounds like** used to say what you think about something you have heard: *It sounds like Jo is very happy in Japan.* • *Coffee sounds like a good idea.*

south /saʊθ/ 1 *noun* one of the four points that tell you the direction of something. **South** is the direction at the bottom of a map, towards the bottom of the world: *The south is warmer than the north.* • *Nice is in the south of France.* 2 *adjective* in or toward the south: *South Africa* • *New Zealand is south-east of Australia.* (=between the south and the east)

souvenir /ˈsuːvəniər/ *noun* **C** something you buy when you go on vacation, to remind you of a place you have visited: *I bought this picture in Italy as a souvenir.*

space /speɪs/ *noun* **U** 1 an amount of an area that is empty or that you can use: *Is there enough space for a desk in your room?* • *parking spaces* 2 the area around the Earth where the stars, the sun, and the planets are: *Who was the first woman in space?* (=to

- travel into space) • a *space colony* (=a community living in space)
- spaceship** /ˈspeɪsʃɪp/ *noun* C a vehicle that can travel in space
- space-tent** /ˈspeɪstent/ *noun* C a tent (=a structure you can sleep in when you go camping) made of special cloth that is suitable to use in space.
- spacious** /ˈspeɪʃəs/ *adjective* a **spacious** room or building has lots of room for people to move around in: *The offices are very modern and spacious.*
- speak** /spi:k/ [**spoke, spoken**] *verb* 1 I to use your voice to talk to someone: *Can I speak to Pam, please?* 2 T to be able to use a particular language: *Nick speaks Spanish very well.*
- special** /ˈspeʃl/ *adjective* 1 better and different from other things, or more important than usual for a reason: *What special food do you eat at Chinese New Year?* • *I only wear this suit on special occasions.* • *Are you doing anything special this weekend?* 2 different and used by one person or group: *She has to eat a special diet.*
- speeding** /ˈspi:dn̩/ *noun* U driving faster than the legal limit
- spell** /spel/ *verb* I,T to write words using the correct letters: *How do you spell your name?*
- spend** /spend/ [**spent, have spent**] *verb* T 1 to use your money to buy and pay for things: *I spent a lot of money going out last night.* • *How much do you spend on clothes?* 2 to use time doing something: *John spends hours playing computer games.* • *How do you spend your free time?*
- spice** /spars/ *noun* C leaves, seeds, or powder from plants that have a strong taste and are used in cooking to add more flavor to food
- spider** /ˈspaɪdər/ *noun* C a small creature that is like an insect but has eight legs
- spill** /spɪl/ *verb* T to accidentally let liquid fall out of a container: *The waiter spilled wine over the table.*
- spoke** /spouk/ the past tense of **speak**
- spoken** /ˈspoukən/ the past participle of **speak**
- sponsor** /ˈspɑːnsər/ *verb* T if a company **sponsors** someone or something, they give money so that they can advertise their products and help to pay for a sports event, television program, etc.: *Sportswear companies like to sponsor tennis players to wear their clothes.*
- sportswear** /ˈspɔːrtswer/ *noun* U clothes you wear to play a sport
- sporty** /ˈspɔːrti/ *adjective* a **sporty** person likes and is good at sports
- spread** /spred/ [**spread, have spread**] *verb* I to move quickly across a larger and larger area: *The fire spread quickly through the house.*
- stand** /stænd/ [**stood, have stood**] 1 *verb* I to be on your feet and not sitting: *Hundreds of people stood and watched the carnival.* • *Josh stood up* (=moved from sitting to standing) *and left the room.* 2 **can't stand** to not like or enjoy something at all, because it is very unpleasant or it makes you very annoyed: *"Do you like dogs?" "No, I can't stand them."*
- star** /stɑːr/ 1 *noun* C a ball of burning gas in space that looks like a bright light in the sky at night: *The sky was clear and full of stars.* 2 *noun* C a mark in the shape of a star that tells you how good a hotel or restaurant is. The more stars there are, the better the quality: *a three/four/five-star hotel.* 3 *noun* C a famous and very good singer, performer, soccer player, etc.: *movie stars* • *the star of Trainspotting* 4 *verb* I to play one of the main parts in a movie, play, TV program, etc.: *Julia Roberts starred in Notting Hill with Hugh Grant.*
- start** /stɑːrt/ *verb* T to begin something or begin to do something: *Who started the Nike company?* • *They started building the new school a few months ago.*
- statement** /ˈsteɪtmənt/ *noun* C something you say or write that gives facts or information: *Which of the statements do you agree with?*
- state-of-the-art** /ˈsteɪt əv ðə ˈɑːrt/ *adjective* using the newest and most modern equipment or methods: *state-of-the-art computer technology*
- statue** /ˈstætʃuː/ *noun* C a model of a person made out of stone, metal, etc., and often put in a public place so that people can look at it
- stay** /steɪ/ 1 *verb* **stay in** to not go out in the evening, but stay at home: *I stayed in last night and watched TV.* 2 *verb* **stay out** to remain out of your house until late at night: *I stayed out late at a party on Saturday night.* 3 *verb* **stay up** to remain awake and not go to bed: *I stayed up till two o'clock in the morning.* 4 *noun* C a period of time that you stay somewhere: *I hope you enjoy your stay in Amsterdam.*
- steal** /sti:l/ [**stole, have stolen**] *verb* T to take something that is not yours: *Someone stole*

stomach ache

my bag at the airport. • About half a million cars are stolen in Britain every year.

stomach ache /'stʌməkeɪk/ *noun* U pain in your stomach (=the part of your body where food goes after you eat it)

stood /stʊd/ the past tense and past participle of **stand**

stop /stɒp/ *verb* 1 T to not do something any more: *The doctor told him to stop smoking.*

• *I stopped reading and went to sleep.* 2 I to finish moving, working, or doing something: *Let's stop for lunch.* • *We stopped to buy some postcards.* (=stopped doing one thing in order to do another)

store /stɔːr/ *noun* C a place that sells things: *They plan to open 20 new stores across the country next year.*

story /'stɔːri/ *noun* C one of the levels in a building: *a twenty-story office block*

stove /stʊv/ *noun* C a piece of equipment in the kitchen that you use to cook food

strange /streɪndʒ/ *adjective* unusual, surprising, or hard to understand: *Sarah's a strange child – she doesn't like chocolate.* • *a strange-looking man*

stranger /'streɪndʒər/ *noun* C someone you have never met before: *Mom told us not to talk to strangers.*

stratosphere /'strætəsfiːr/ *noun* U the layer of atmosphere round the Earth that starts about 10 kilometers above the surface of the Earth

street musician /'stri:t mjuːzɪʃn/ *noun* C someone who earns money by playing music on the street

strength /streŋθ/ *noun* U the amount of power and energy that someone has in their body: *I tried with all my strength, but I could not move the piano.*

stress /stres/ *noun* U the special emphasis you give to a word or part of a word when you pronounce it: *In the word "October," the stress is on the second syllable.*

stressful /'stresfl/ *adjective* a stressful job, life, situation, etc. is one that causes you a lot of worry and problems and makes you unable to relax: *Driving in the city can be very stressful.*

strict /strikt/ *adjective* if someone is strict, they make you obey them and their rules and do not allow much freedom: *Our teacher is very strict.*

strong /strɒŋ/ *adjective* 1 a strong person has a lot of power and energy in their body:

Dancers have to be very strong physically. 2 **strong** food has a lot of taste and flavor: *strongspices*

strongly /'strɒŋli/ *adverb* someone who feels **strongly** about something cares a lot about it and thinks it is very important: *We all believed strongly in peace.*

study /'stʌdi/ *verb* I, T to spend time learning a particular subject, especially at a school or college: *She's studying math at college.* • *Matt studied very hard for his exams.*

stuff /stʌf/ *noun* U things, substances, information, etc. [INFORMAL]: *I need to buy some stuff to clean the bathtub with.* • *Who left this stuff on the table?*

stupid /'stuːpɪd/ *adjective* not very sensible or clever: *The movie was a bit stupid but I enjoyed it.* • *It's stupid to spend so much money on clothes.*

style /stɑɪl/ *noun* C a way of doing something that is typical of a particular person, country, or period of history: *American-style pop music.* • *Their house is decorated in a very modern, simple style.*

subject /'sʌbdʒɪkt/ *noun* C 1 an area of knowledge that you study: *History was my favorite subject at school.* 2 a noun or pronoun (I, she, they, etc.) that performs the action of a verb. "I" and "The tree" are **subjects** in these sentences: *I love you.* • *The tree is very old.*

suburb /'sʌbɜːrb/ *noun* C part of a city away from the center. The **suburbs** are the area where a lot of people live, and they do not usually have many factories, offices, etc.: *We live in the suburbs and work in the center of town.*

success /sək'ses/ *noun* C, U when you get or achieve what you want and do not fail: *The movie was a big success.* • *The key to success is hard work and believing in yourself.*

successful /sək'sesfl/ *adjective* when you are **successful**, you get or achieve what you want and do not fail: *She is a very successful TV host.* • *Do you think this business idea will be successful?*

suddenly /'sʌdnli/ *adverb* quickly and when you are not expecting it: *She suddenly noticed smoke coming out of the engine and stopped the car.* • *Suddenly, the sky went dark and it began to rain.*

suffer /'sʌfər/ *verb* I, T to experience pain, sickness, or difficult problems: *Leo is not happy*

- at school and his work is suffering. • Children can suffer when their parents divorce.
- suggest** /sə'dʒest/ verb T to tell people your ideas about what they should do or about what you should all do together: *Mia suggested going by train./Mia suggested that we go by train.*
- suggestion** /sə'dʒestʃən/ noun C a plan or idea that you suggest: *I don't know what to buy David for his birthday – do you have any suggestions? (=can you give me any ideas about what to buy?)* • *She made a few suggestions for vacations but they were all too expensive.*
- suit** /su:t/ noun C a set of clothes for a man or woman, with a jacket and a skirt or pants made from the same material: *He was wearing a blue suit and a white shirt.*
- summarize** /sə'məraɪz/ verb T to give a summary of something (= a short description of the main facts or ideas): *Can you summarize what he said in just a few words?*
- sun** /sʌn/ noun **the sun** the white ball of fire in the sky where light and heat come from: *The sun rises in the east.* • *You should wear a hat to protect yourself from the sun.*
- sunbathing** /'sʌnbæðɪŋ/ noun U sitting or lying outside in the sun so that your skin can get darker: *Too much sunbathing gives me a headache.*
- sung** /sʌŋ/ the past participle of **sing**
- sunglasses** /'sʌŋɡləsɪz/ noun plural dark glasses that you wear to protect your eyes in the sun: *a pair of sunglasses*
- sunny** /'sʌni/ adjective with plenty of light and sun: *It's lovely and sunny in this room.* • *a sunny day*
- sunshine** /'sʌnʃaɪn/ noun U when the sun shines: *How many hours of sunshine are there on an average July day?*
- suntan** /'sʌntæn/ noun U when your skin goes brown in the sun: *In the past suntans were not fashionable.*
- supermodel** /'su:pərmɔ:dl/ noun C a very rich and famous model (=someone whose job is to wear clothes for photographs in magazines, advertisements, etc.)
- support** /sə'pɔ:rt/ verb T **1** to like a particular team or player in a sport and want them to win when they play: *Which soccer team do you support?* **2** to give someone enough money to buy what they need to live: *He supported his young family by working as a taxi driver.*
- surf** /sɜ:rʃ/ verb T **surf the Internet** to use the Internet to look for information, to buy things, etc.: *We were surfing the Internet to find a cheap flight.*
- surfing** /'sɜ:rʃɪŋ/ noun U the sport of standing on a special board to ride on large waves in the ocean: *Surfing is Australia's national passion.* • *Mick is crazy about surfing.*
⇒ The verb is **to surf**.
- surprised** /sə'praɪzd/ adjective how you feel when something happens which you did not expect: *I was surprised to win the competition.* • *They were very surprised when they found out they were going to have another baby.*
- surround** /sə'raʊnd/ verb **be surrounded by** to have something spread all around or on every side: *An island is a piece of land surrounded by water.* • *She was sitting in bed surrounded by flowers and cards.*
- survive** /sə'vaɪv/ verb I **1** to stay alive in a dangerous situation, for example after an accident or a serious illness: *She had 10 children. One died and nine survived.* **2** to stay in business: *It's hard for small stores to survive because of the cheap prices in supermarkets.*
- suspect** /'sʌspekt/ noun C someone that the police believe has committed a crime: *a murder suspect* (=someone who the police believe killed another person)
- suspicious** /sə'spɪʃəs/ adjective making you think that something bad or dishonest is happening: *If you see anything suspicious, call the police.*
- sweater** /'swetər/ noun C a piece of warm clothing with long sleeves that you wear over the top half of your body
- sweet** /swi:t/ adjective **1** **sweet** food tastes of sugar or has a lot of sugar in it: *I don't like sweet wine.* • *These cakes are very sweet.* **2** attractive and nice: *What a sweet little dog!* • *How can you say spiders are sweet?*
- swimming** /'swɪmɪŋ/ noun U **go swimming** to spend time swimming as a sport and for pleasure: *We're going swimming this afternoon.*
- swimming trunks** /'swɪmɪŋ ˌtrʌŋks/ noun plural shorts that men wear for swimming
- swimsuit** /'swɪmsu:t/ noun C a piece of clothing you wear in the water when you go swimming

sympathetic

sympathetic /ˌsɪmpəˈθetɪk/ *adjective* showing that you understand other people's feelings or problems: *My doctor is friendly and sympathetic.* • *a sympathetic friend*

sympathetically /ˌsɪmpəˈθetɪkli/ *adverb* in a way that shows you understand other people's feelings or problems: *Martha listened sympathetically, but there was nothing she could do to help.*

sympathy /ˈsɪmpəθi/ *noun* U showing that you feel sorry for someone and understand their feelings and problems: *Everyone showed a lot of sympathy to the family when their mother died.*

systematically /ˌsɪstəˈmætɪkli/ *adverb* in an organized way, according to a system or plan: *I searched the house systematically, but I still couldn't find my passport.*

T

take /teɪk/ [took, have taken] *verb* T **1 take a bath** to get into a bath of water and wash yourself **2 take an exam** to do an exam: *We're taking our exams in June.* **3 take a photograph** to use a camera to photograph someone or something: *Did you take any photos on your vacation?* **4 it takes** a particular amount of time is needed to do something: *How long will it take to fly to India?* • *It takes about ten minutes to walk to our house from the station.* • *It takes hours to get across London by bus.*

tall /tɔ:l/ *adjective* **tall** people, trees, or buildings have a greater height than most other people or things: *Lea is tall for her age.* • *He's 1m 80cm tall.* (=his height is 1m 80cm) • *What is the tallest building in the world?*

tanned /tænd/ *adjective* if a white person is **tanned**, their skin has gone a light brown or gold color because they have been in the sun: *She came back from her vacation looking tanned and relaxed.*

task /tæsk/ *noun* C a piece of work that you must do in order to achieve something: *Do the next task in the book for homework.*

tasty /ˈteɪsti/ *adjective* very nice to eat; delicious: *The food at the hotel was really tasty.*

taught /tɔ:t/ the past tense and past participle of **teach**

tax /tæks/ *noun* C money that people have to pay to the government to pay for services

such as education, hospitals, roads, and police: *Everyone wants the mayor to reduce taxes.* • *a tax on gas*

taxi driver /ˈtæksi ˌdraɪvər/ *noun* C someone whose job is driving a taxi

teach /ti:tʃ/ [taught, have taught] *verb* T to give lessons to children in a school or to students at a college or university: *Jan teaches English in a high school.*

team /ti:m/ *noun* C **1** a group of people who play a game together: *a soccer team* **2** a small group of people who work together to do a particular job: *The teacher divided the class into teams of six people.*

teapot /ˈti:pɔ:t/ *noun* C a round pot that you make tea in. It has a handle to hold it with, and a tube called a spout for pouring out the tea into cups

telegram /ˈteləgræm/ *noun* C a message that is sent very quickly over a long distance using wires that carry electronic signals and is then printed onto a piece of paper. Telegrams were sent a lot in the past

tell /tel/ [told, have told] *verb* T **1** to speak to someone and give them some information: *Can you tell me how to get to the park from here?* • *Liz told me that she's leaving her job.* • *Carson told the police everything he knew.* **2** to give someone some advice: *What did the doctor tell you to do?* **3** to give information: *Look at the TV page, it tells you what programs are on television tonight.* • *The movie tells the true story of Ned Kelly and his gang.*

temperature /ˈtemprɪtʃər/ *noun* C how hot or cold a person or place is: *The temperature can reach about 40 degrees in the summer.* **2 have a temperature** to feel very hot because you are sick: *Jay has a temperature and a sore throat.* • *Aspirin can help to bring your temperature down* (=make you less hot).

temporary /ˈtempəreri/ *adjective* lasting for only a short time or a limited time: *I have a temporary job for the summer, working in a coffee shop.*

⇔ The opposite of **temporary** is **permanent**.

tennis player /ˈtenɪs ˌpleɪər/ *noun* C someone who plays tennis as their job: *Sampras is one of the best tennis players in the world.*

terrified /ˈterəfaɪd/ *adjective* feeling very frightened: *The storm was so violent that the building started to shake and we felt terrified.*

test /test/ **1 noun** C questions or exercises to find out what someone knows or if they can do something: *When did they introduce driving tests?* **2 verb** T to ask questions or set exercises to find out what someone knows or if they can do something: *Ms. Gee is testing us on these verbs tomorrow.*

theater /'θi:ətər/ **noun** C a building where plays and other kinds of entertainment are performed on a stage: *I'm going to the theater tonight.*

theme park /'θi:m pɑ:k/ **noun** C a large park where there are lots of enjoyable things to do, see, ride on, etc. that are all based around one subject or idea: *a Wild West theme park*

thief /θi:f/ **thieves** /θi:vz/ **noun** C someone who steals something: *Thieves broke into the gallery and stole a painting by Picasso.*

think /θɪŋk/ [**thought, have thought**] **verb** **1** T to believe something or have an idea in your mind: *Do you think it's going to rain?* • *He didn't think the movie would be a success.* **2 think of** to use your mind to decide or remember something or to get an idea: *Can you think of a good present for Grandma?* • *They couldn't think of a name for the baby that they both liked.* **3 think of** to have an opinion about someone or something: *"What do you think of your new boss?" "Oh, she's really nice."*

threaten /θreɪn/ **verb** T to tell someone you will do something unpleasant or hurt them if they do not do what you want: *The man threatened Mrs. Brown with a knife.* (=he threatened to hurt her with a knife)

throw away /θrou ə'wei/ **verb** T to put something in a wastebasket or garbage can or get rid of it because you do not want it any more: *She threw away a lot of things when she moved to a new house.* • *I don't want these old shoes, I'm going to throw them away.*

ticket /'tɪkɪt/ **noun** C a piece of paper that says you have paid to do something, for example travel on a plane or go to a movie: *Don't forget the tickets!* • *I have never bought a lottery ticket.* (=a ticket for a type of game in which you can win a lot of money)

tidy /'taɪdi/ **1 verb** T to make a house, room, etc. neat, by putting everything in the right place and removing anything that should not be there: *I must tidy my desk, I can't find anything!* **2 adjective** neat and clean with everything in the right place: *Is your bed-*

room tidy? • *Stella is a very tidy person.* (=she keeps things tidy)

⇒The opposite of **tidy** is **untidy** or **messy**.

tie /taɪ/ **noun** C a long thin piece of cloth that men wear round their neck with a shirt, especially in order to look smart

time /taɪm/ **noun** **1** C a particular occasion when you do something or when something happens: *The first time I heard that song I cried.* • *This is the third time I've been to Scotland.* **2** U a time when something happens: *It's time for lunch.* **3** U an amount of time that you have to do something: *If I have time tomorrow, I'll go shopping.* • *What do you do in your free time?* (=time when you do not have to work) **4** C a period of history: *The 1960s was a time when black people in the USA demanded more civil rights.* **5 time of day, year, etc.** a particular time in the day, year, etc.: *The weather is lovely at this time of year.* **6 on time** arriving or happening at the correct time, and not late: *The plane arrived on time at 12 o'clock.* **7 in two hours'/three months'/ten years'** time two hours, three months, ten years from now: *What will your life be like in ten years' time?*

tiny /'taɪni/ **adjective** very small: *They live in a tiny apartment in Tokyo.*

tip /tɪp/ **noun** C **1** extra money that you give to a waiter or taxi driver, to thank them for their service: *Do you think we should leave a tip for the waiter?* • *He makes good tips working in a hotel.*

tissue /'tɪʃu:/ **noun** C a piece of soft paper that you use as a handkerchief (=to dry your nose or eyes, clean makeup off your face, etc.): *a box of tissues*

to /tu:/ **preposition** **1** used to say where someone is going: *I'm going to the post office.* • *Have you been to Paris?* • *How long is the journey from England to Australia?* **2** used with the base form of a verb to make the infinitive: *Sam's learning to drive.*

told /tould/ the past tense and past participle of **tell**

too /tu:/ **adverb** **1** more than you want, like, or need: *It's too expensive, I can't afford it.* • *Don't drive too fast.* • *I have too much homework to do.* **2 me too** say this to show that you agree with someone, or feel the same about something as they do: *"I really love this song." "Yes, me too."* **3** used at the end of a sentence to mean "also" or "as well": *Can I come too?* • *It's easy shopping on the Internet and it's cheaper too.*

took /tʊk/ the past tense of **take**

toothbrush /tu:θbrʌʃ/ *noun* C a small brush with a handle for cleaning your teeth

toothpaste /tu:θpeɪst/ *noun* U a soft substance you put on a toothbrush to clean your teeth

top /tɒp/ **1** *noun* C the highest or farthest part of something: *You should go up Castle Hill – there's a great view from the top.* • *What's in that box on top of the cabinet?* **2** *noun* C a piece of clothing you wear on the upper part of your body: *Do you like my new top?* **3** *adjective* in the highest position: *The bathroom's on the top floor.* **4** *adjective* best or most successful: *It's one of the top soccer clubs in the country.*

top ten /tɒp 'ten/ *noun* the **top ten** the ten pop songs that have sold the most copies in a particular week: *Her new single went straight into the top ten.*

toss /tɒs/ *verb* T **toss a coin** to throw a coin into the air and guess which side it will fall on. You can toss a coin as a way of deciding something: *Toss a coin to see which team will play first.*

touch /tʌtʃ/ **1** *verb* T to put your hand on something: *Don't touch the plate, it's hot.* **2** **get in touch with** to communicate with someone by phoning, writing, etc.: *You can get in touch with me on this number.* **3** **keep in touch** to continue to see, write, or telephone someone, so that you are still friends: *It's good to keep in touch with old friends.*

tour /tʊr/ *noun* C an organized trip or vacation in which you visit several different places: *We're going on a two-week tour of South Africa.*

tour guide /tʊr gaɪd/ *noun* C someone whose job is taking people on an organized trip or vacation to visit several different places

tourism /tʊrɪzəm/ *noun* U the business of providing services for tourists, for example places to visit and places to stay in: *Tourism is good for the local economy.*

tourist /tʊrɪst/ *noun* C someone who visits a place for enjoyment or interest, especially when they are on vacation: *There are a lot of tourists here in the summer.* • *a guidebook for tourists*

toward /tə'wɔ:rdz/ *preposition* in the direction of someone or something: *We drove toward the next town.* • *I looked out toward the sea.*

towel /taʊəl/ *noun* C a piece of cloth that you use to dry your body after you have taken a bath, been swimming, etc.

tower /taʊər/ *noun* C a tall narrow building or tall narrow part of a building such as a church or a castle

toy /tɔɪ/ *noun* C a thing for a child to play with, such as a doll, a puzzle, or model animals: *Jesse loves playing with toy cars.*

tradition /trə'dɪʃn/ *noun* C,U a custom that has existed for a long time among a group of people: *an old Chinese tradition* • *Tourists love the history and tradition in England.*

traditional /trə'dɪʃənəl/ *adjective* typical of ideas, customs, etc. that have existed for a long time and have not changed much: *We saw a traditional Zulu dance.* • *The restaurant serves traditional French food.*

traditionally /trə'dɪʃənəli/ *adverb* according to what is traditional: *Traditionally, being a nurse was a woman's job.*

traffic /'træfɪk/ *noun* U all the cars and other vehicles that are on the roads: *The traffic's very busy in the mornings and evenings.*

traffic jam /'træfɪk ˌdʒæm/ *noun* C a long line of cars, buses, etc., which are either moving very slowly or not moving at all: *I was sitting in a traffic jam for half an hour.*

traffic light /'træfɪk ˌlaɪt/ *noun* plural lights on a pole in a road that change from red to orange to green to tell drivers when to stop their cars and when they can move forward: *The accident happened while I was waiting at the traffic light.*

tragedy /'trædʒədi/ *noun* C a very sad event, especially one in which people die: *The shooting was a terrible tragedy.*

tragic /'trædʒɪk/ *adjective* a **tragic** event or story is very sad: *a tragic love story* • *It was tragic that John Lennon died when he was only 40.*

tragically /'trædʒɪkli/ *adverb* say this to show that something is very sad: *Tragically, every-one on the plane was killed.*

train /treɪn/ *verb* I **1** to learn the skills that you need in order to do a job, for example by taking a course and getting practical experience: *Ruth's training to be a teacher.* **2** to prepare yourself to play a sport by practicing a lot: *Athletes train very hard for several hours every day.* • *the Olympic training camp* (=a place where people train for the Olympics)

travel /ˈtrævl/ *verb* I to go from one place or country to another: *Joan has traveled all over the world.* • *He's traveling to Greece with a few friends.*

traveler /ˈtrævələr/ *noun* C a person who travels to different places

traveler's check /ˈtrævələrz ˌtʃek/ *noun* C a special check (=piece of paper that is worth an amount of money) that you can exchange for money when you go to different countries

tremble /ˈtreɪbl/ *verb* I to shake slightly, for example because you are cold, sick, frightened, etc.: *Her hands were trembling.*

trial /ˈtraɪəl/ *noun* C a legal process in which a court of law decides if someone is guilty of a crime or not: *At the trial he was found guilty of robbery.*

tribe /traɪb/ *noun* C a group of people of the same race, culture, or religion who live in the same place and are led by one person (=the chief): *She comes from the Dinka tribe.*

tried /traɪd/ the past tense and past participle of **try**

trip /trɪp/ *noun* C a short journey or visit to a place and back: *We went on a **day trip** (=for one day) with the school to Cambridge.* • *We're planning a trip to Mexico.*

truly /ˈtru:li/ *adverb* very – say this to emphasize something: *I'm truly sorry.* • *It was a truly fantastic day!*

try /traɪ/ [**tried, have tried**] *verb* I, T to make an attempt to do something: *I try to learn a few new English words every day.* • *She tried hard to forget about Rob.* • *Ms. Wood always tries to make the lesson interesting.*

turn /tɜ:m/ **1 turn left/right** to go to the left or right: *Turn left at the next traffic light.* **2 turn back time** to go back to a time in the past **3 take turns** to do something one after the other: *Tina and Mark took turns to drive to Washington.* • *We took turns to answer the questions.*

type /taɪp/ *noun* C a group of things that are the same or similar in some way: *What type of ball do they play with in rugby?* • *Spaghetti is a type of pasta.*

typewriter /ˈtaɪpraɪtər/ *noun* C a machine that prints letters or numbers onto paper when you press its keys. In most offices, they now usually have computers instead of typewriters

typical /ˈtɪpɪkl/ *adjective* having most of the qualities that a particular type of person, thing, or place usually has: *On a typical day I get up at 7 o'clock.*

typically /ˈtɪpɪkli/ *adverb* in a typical way: *Sushi is a typically Japanese dish.*

U

ugly /ˈʌgli/ *adjective* very unattractive to look at: *What an ugly dog!*

⇨ You can use **ugly** to describe buildings, cities, furniture, etc., but it is very rude to use it about a person.

umbrella /ʌmˈbrelə/ *noun* C a thing that you hold over your head to keep you dry when it rains

un- /ʌn/ *prefix* used at the beginning of an adjective to make it have the opposite meaning: *He felt unhappy (=not happy) in his new school.* • *The letter was on the table, unopened. (=not opened)*

unbelievable /ʌnbəˈli:vəbl/ *adjective* very surprising, and almost impossible to believe: *Winning the championship was the best day of my life – it was unbelievable!*

unconscious /ʌnˈkɔ:nʃəs/ *adjective* in a state similar to being asleep, caused for example by injury or illness, or by being given a drug: *The boy lay unconscious on the floor.*

under /ˈʌndər/ *preposition* **1** in a place that is lower than something else: *The money is in a box under the bed.* • *We sat under a tree and had our picnic.* • *Leave your burned hand under the faucet (=under a flow of water) for 20 minutes.* **2** less than a particular number, age, temperature, etc.: *You can't go to that club if you're under 18. (=less than 18 years old)*

underwear /ˈʌndərweɪ/ *noun* U pieces of clothing you wear next to your skin under your clothes: *Don't forget to take some clean underwear for your weekend away.*

unemployed /ʌnɪmˈplɔɪd/ **1** *adjective* without a job: *She's been unemployed for a few months.* **2 the unemployed** people who do not have a job

unexpectedly /ʌnɪkˈspektɪdli/ *adverb* if something happens **unexpectedly**, it happens in a way that is surprising because you did not expect it: *Ingrid came to visit me unexpectedly yesterday.*

unfit /ʌnˈfɪt/ *adjective* not fit (=when your body is in a healthy and strong condition): *Paul's really unfit, he never does any exercise.*

unfortunate /ʌnˈfɔ:rtʃənət/ *adjective* if a situation is **unfortunate**, you are sad or disappointed that it has happened: *It was an unfortunate mistake and we will correct it as soon as we can.*

unfortunately

unfortunately /ʌn'fɔ:tʃənətli/ *adverb* say this to show you are sad or disappointed about something that happened: *He didn't get the job, unfortunately.* • *Unfortunately it rained all day so we couldn't go out.*

unfriendly /ʌn'frendli/ *adjective* not friendly; not kind or nice to other people: *Lee's parents were very unfriendly to his girlfriend.*

unhelpful /ʌn'hɛlpfl/ *adjective* not wanting to help someone: *I thought the sales clerks in that store were unhelpful and quite rude.*

university /ju:nɪ'vɜ:rsəti/ *noun* C a place where you study at a very high level in order to get a **degree**. People usually go to a university when they are about 18: *Which university did you go to?* • *Bristol university*

unusual /ʌn'ju:ʒuəl, -zəl/ *adjective* different from what is usual or ordinary: *Beth chose an unusual name for her daughter.* • *It's very unusual to see an English man in a bowler hat.*

unwanted /ʌn'wa:ntɪd/ *adjective* not wanted: *an unwanted present*

up /ʌp/ **1** *adverb, preposition* towards a higher place: *We walked up the hill.* • *Let's climb up to the top.* **2** *adverb* from a sitting or horizontal position to a standing or upright one: *Please stand up.* **3** *adverb* to a higher amount, number, or level: *Your grades have gone up this term.* **4** *preposition* along; towards the other end of something: *The children ran up the road.*

⇨ The opposite of **up** is **down**.

urgent /'ɜ:dʒənt/ *adjective* something that is **urgent** must be dealt with immediately: *I got an urgent phone call from the hospital.*

useful /ju:sfl/ *adjective* a **useful** thing can help you do something more easily: *It's really useful to have a car.* • *a useful bag* • *His knowledge of languages came in useful (=was useful) when he was traveling.*

usual /'ju:ʒuəl, -zəl/ *adjective* normal and ordinary; happening often: *I'll have my usual breakfast – orange juice, tea, and toast.*

usually /'ju:ʒuəli, -zəli/ *adverb* used to say what is ordinary and what happens most of the time: *I usually walk to work.* • *Usually, I go to sleep at midnight, but tonight I'm going to bed early.*

V

varied /'verɪd/ *adjective* including several different kinds of things: *She has had a varied career as a singer, actor, and record producer.*

vase /veɪs, veɪz/ *noun* C an attractive container used for holding flowers

VCR /vi: sɪ: 'aɪ/ *noun* C a machine for recording and watching videotapes: *I've programed the VCR to record that concert.*

vegetable /'vedʒtəbl/ *noun* C food that comes from plants, such as carrots, potatoes, and beans: *Eat plenty of fruit and vegetables.*

velvet /'velvət/ *noun* U a type of thick material that is very soft on one side: *a black velvet scarf*

vending machine /'vendɪŋ məʃi:n/ *noun* C a machine that you can buy drinks, chocolate, cigarettes, etc. from by putting in a coin and pressing a button to choose what you want

verb /'vɜ:rb/ *noun* C a word that tells you what someone or something is or does. In these sentences, "love," "ride," and "is leaving" are verbs: *I love you.* • *Can you ride a horse?* • *The bus is leaving.*

very /'veri/ *adverb* used before another word to make it stronger: *It's very hot today.* • *He works very hard.* • *I liked the book very much.*

victory /'vɪktəri/ *noun* C, U when someone wins in a game, a war, an election, etc.: *the Greek goddess of victory* • *The army won a great victory over their enemy.*

video /'vɪdiəʊ/ *noun* **1** U a type of tape for recording movies, television programs, etc.: *You can record the movie on video/a video cassette and watch it later.* **2** C a movie or program that is recorded on videotape: *Let's rent a video tonight.*

view /vju:/ *noun* C the whole area you can see when you look out of a window, from the top of a hill, etc., especially in a beautiful place: *There's a lovely view of the river from Pete's apartment.*

villa /'vɪlə/ *noun* C a large house in the country or by the sea, especially one where people stay on vacation

village /'vɪlɪdʒ/ *noun* C a very small town in a country area: *They live in a village in the south of France.*

violence /'vaɪələns/ *noun* U when people fight other people and try to hurt them: *Martin Luther King spoke out against violence.* • *The demonstration was peaceful, there was no violence against the police.*

violent /'vaɪələnt/ *adjective* someone or something that is **violent** involves fighting and trying to hurt people: *The attack on Mr. Singh*

was a terrible, violent crime. • *I don't like children to watch violent movies.*

⇨The opposite of **violent** is **peaceful**.

violently /ˈvaɪələntli/ *adverb* in a violent way or using violence: *He died violently in a gun fight.*

⇨The opposite of **violently** is **peacefully**.

visit /ˈvɪzɪt/ **1 verb** T to go to see a person or a place for a short time: *There are lots of interesting places to visit in Florida.* • *We're visiting some friends in Wales next week.* **2 noun** C an occasion when you go to see a person or a place for a short time: *We hope you enjoy your visit to Disneyland.*

volcano /ˈvɒlˌkeɪnəv/ *noun* C a mountain with a large hole at the top, from which fire and hot rocks sometimes pour out

volunteer /ˈvɒlˌɒntɪr/ **1 noun** C someone who is willing to help to do something or who works without being paid: *A lot of people who work for organizations like Greenpeace are volunteers.* **2 verb** I to offer to do something without being asked and without being paid for it: *James volunteered to help me with my homework.*

volunteer work /ˈvɒlˌɒntri ˈwɜːrk/ *noun* U work that someone does to help people and without being paid

vote /vout/ *verb* I to take part in an election, by marking a piece of paper to show which person or party you want to choose: *Who are you going to vote for?*

voting form /ˈvɔʊtɪŋ ˈfɔːrm/ *noun* C a piece of paper that is printed with the names of candidates in an election. You put a mark next to the name of the person you want to vote for

W

wages /ˈweɪdʒɪz/ *noun* C the money you earn regularly when you work: *You earn good wages and make good tips working in a hotel.*

waiter /ˈweɪtər/ *noun* C a man or a woman who serves food in a restaurant

⇨A woman who does this is also called a **waitress**.

wake up /weɪk ˈʌp/ [**woke up, have woken up**] *verb* I to stop sleeping: *I woke up at six o'clock this morning.*

walk /wɒk/ *noun* go for a **walk** to walk somewhere for exercise or enjoyment: *We went for a walk in the country.*

walk away /ˈwɒk əˈweɪ/ *verb* I to leave a difficult situation because you do not want to stay and try to make it better: *Ann walked away from 10 years of marriage.*

war /wɔːr/ *noun* C, U a period of fighting between two countries or groups of people: *There was a war between England and Spain in the 1580s.* • *His father died in the war.* • *Have you seen the movie Star Wars?*

warm /wɔːm/ *adjective* **1 warm** weather or water is slightly hot: *In October the weather is still warm.* • *a warm shower* **2 warm** clothes stop you from feeling cold: *a warm winter coat* • *Those boots will keep your feet warm.*

warranty agreement /ˈwɒrənti əˈɡri:mənt/ *noun* C a written promise that a company will repair something free if there is a problem or it breaks down

wash /wɒʃ/ *verb* T to clean something with water: *Wash your hands before dinner.*

washing /ˈwɒʃɪŋ/ *noun* U clothes that you need to wash or that you have washed: *I do the washing on Mondays.*

washing machine /ˈwɒʃɪŋ məˈʃiːn/ *noun* C a machine for washing clothes

waste /weɪst/ **1 noun** a **waste of time/money** something that is not worth doing, buying, etc., because it has little value or use: *I think designer clothes are just a waste of money.* **2 verb** T to use too much of something, or use something in a way that has little value or use: *Don't waste water.* • *Susie wastes a lot of money on magazines.*

watch /wɒ:tʃ/ *verb* I, T to look at someone doing something or at something that is happening for a period of time: *I never watch television.* • *I don't play tennis, I just came to watch.*

watersport /ˈwɒ:təˌspɔːrt/ *noun* C a sport you can do in the sea such as sailing or surfing

wave /weɪv/ **1 verb** I to put your hand in the air, and move it from side to side: *Lucy waved from the train window.* **2 noun** C a raised area of moving water in the sea: *Surfers were out early, looking for big waves.*

wear /wer/ [**wore, have worn**] *verb* T to have clothes on your body: *Al wore a white suit to the wedding.* • *You should wear a hat in the sun.* • *She often wears blue.* (=clothes that are blue)

weather /ˈweðər/ *noun* U how hot or cold it is and how much sun, wind, or rain there is

website

somewhere at a particular time: *I love hot weather.* • *If the weather's nice, we can have lunch outside.* • *We had terrible weather on our vacation!* • *Did you listen to the weather forecast?*

website /'websaɪt/ *noun* C where a person, company, organization, etc. has information about itself on the Internet: *Look at the BBC website to find out the latest news.*

wedding /'wedɪŋ/ *noun* C the ceremony and party after it that take place when two people get married: *Have you had an invitation to Sophie's wedding?* • *a wedding present*

weigh /weɪ/ *verb* 1 T to measure how heavy someone or something is using a machine: *Have you weighed yourself lately?* 2 I to have a particular weight: *She weighs about 60 kilos.*

weight /weɪt/ *noun* U 1 **lose weight** to become thinner: *He's trying to lose weight so he's on a diet.* 2 **put on weight** to become fatter: *She put on some weight after she had a baby.*

welcome /'welkəm/ *verb* T to say hello to someone in a friendly way when they first arrive, especially on a plane or in a hotel, restaurant, etc.: *A sign on the road said "Welcome to Western Australia."* • *The manager welcomed us to the hotel.*

well-dressed /wel 'drest/ *adjective* someone who is **well-dressed** wears good quality, fashionable clothes: *a tall well-dressed man*

well-known /wel 'nəʊn/ *adjective* known by a lot of people: *a well-known actor*

well-mannered /wel 'mænəd/ *adjective* someone who is **well-mannered** behaves in a very polite way

well-qualified /wel 'kwɔ:lɪfaɪd/ *adjective* someone who is **well-qualified** for a job has a lot of qualifications (=exams that they have passed after completing a course of study)

went /went/ the past tense of **go**

west /west/ 1 *noun* one of the four points that tell you the direction of something. **West** is the way you look to see the sun go down: *The wind is coming from the west.* • *Perth is in the west of Australia.* 2 *adjective* in or towards the west: *an island on the west coast of Scotland.* • *the West Indies* • *north-west France* (=between the north and the west)

↪ The opposite direction from **west** is **east**.

wet /wet/ *adjective* not dry; covered with water: *I've just washed the floor and it's still wet.* • *The weather forecast said it's going to be wet this week.* (=it will rain)

whiskey /'wɪski/ *noun* U a strong alcoholic drink made from grain and produced in Scotland and other places

white-columned /'waɪtkɑ:ləmd/ *adjective* with white columns (=tall round pieces of stone that support part of a building)

widow /'wɪdʊ/ *noun* C a woman whose husband has died

widower /'wɪdʊər/ *noun* C a man whose wife has died

wig /wɪɡ/ *noun* C a covering of hair someone wears on their head to hide their real hair or because they have no hair: *I'm sure he's wearing a wig.*

wildlife /'waɪldlaɪf/ *noun* U animals and plants that live in the country

will /wɪl/ *noun* C a legal document that a person writes to say what they want to happen to their money and possessions after they die: *In her will Aunt Margo left her house to her grandchildren.*

win /wɪn/ [**won, have won**] *verb* I,T to be the most successful person or team in a game, race, competition, etc.: *I want Manchester United to win.* • *Who won the Oscar for Best Actor this year?* • *What's the prize if you win the competition?* • *What would you do if you won the lottery?*

windy /'wɪndi/ *adjective* when it is **windy**, there is a lot of wind: *The weather is going to be wet and windy today.*

wine-making /'waɪn meɪkɪŋ/ *noun* U the activity and process of making wine

wing /wɪŋ/ *noun* C one of the parts of a bird's body or of an airplane that it uses to fly

winner /'wɪnər/ *noun* C a person who wins a game, race, competition, etc.

wish /wɪʃ/ 1 *verb* T to want to do something. **Wish** is more formal than **want**: *How do you wish to pay – cash, credit card, or check?* 2 *noun* C something that someone says they want: *My wishes for the future are to become rich and successful!*

witch /wɪtʃ/ *noun* C a woman who some people believe has magic powers, especially to do bad things

witness /'wɪtnəs/ *noun* C someone who has seen something such as a crime or an accident and can describe what happened to the

police or a court of law: *Mr. Sims was a witness to the accident.* • *It will be difficult to catch the thief since there were no witnesses.*

woke up /wʊk 'ʌp/ the past tense of **wake up**

wonder /'wʌndər/ verb 1 T to feel that you want to know more about something, because you are interested or because you feel worried about it: *I wonder what life will be like in a hundred years' time.* 2 I wonder if say this as a polite way of asking a question: *I wonder if Max will marry Sonya?*

wonderful /'wʌndərfʌl/ adjective very good, pleasant, or enjoyable: *We had a wonderful day at the zoo.*

wonder of the world /'wʌndər əv ðə 'wɜːrld/ noun C a place that people admire because it is so beautiful or surprising: *Niagara Falls is one of the wonders of the world.*

wooden /'wʊdn/ adjective made of wood: a wooden floor

wool /wʊl/ noun U the soft hair that covers the body of a sheep and is used to make cloth: *New Zealand is famous for its wool.* • *These gloves are made of wool.*

woolen /'wʊlən/ adjective made of wool: a woolen jumper

wore /wɔːr/ the past tense of **wear**

work /wɜːrk/ verb I 1 to do a job: *Where do you work?* • *Dan works as a sports instructor.* • *I've been working here for two years.* • *Kate works in radio.* (=has a job in a radio station) • *I prefer to work with people.* • *What are you working on at the moment?* (=which particular piece of work are you doing now?) 2 if a machine works, it does the job it is supposed to do: *"Is the coffee machine working?" "No, it isn't, it's broken."*

working day /'wɜːrkɪŋ 'deɪ/ noun C the hours in a day that someone works or does their job: *My working day is from 9:30 to 5:30.*

world cup /'wɜːrld 'kʌp/ noun C a football competition between soccer teams from many different countries

world-famous /'wɜːrld 'feɪməs/ adjective known about by many people all over the world: a world-famous painting

world record holder /'wɜːrld 'rekɔːrd ˌhəʊldər/ noun C someone who has the world record for a sport or activity (=they have achieved the best result in a sport, for example the fastest person to do something)

worn /wɔːm/ the past participle of **wear**

worried /'wʌrɪd/ adjective feeling unhappy and unable to relax, because you are thinking about something bad that might happen: *Fiona's parents are worried about her because she is so thin and doesn't eat very much.* • *Some people are worried about using their credit card over the Internet.* • *Adam looks worried – he has an exam tomorrow.*

worry /'wʌrɪ/ [worried, have worried] verb I to be worried about something bad that might happen: *Don't worry – Ed will be home soon.* • *You shouldn't worry about making mistakes, it's all part of learning.* • *It worries me that there is so much violence in the world.*

would /wʊd/ modal verb 1 the past tense of **will**: *She said she would phone tonight.* 2 used to make a polite request or to offer something to someone: *Would you open the door, please?* • *Would you like a cup of coffee?* 3 used to talk about what you want to happen in the future: *I'd like to travel around the world.*

wrap /ræp/ verb T to cover something with paper, cloth, etc., for example when you are giving it as a present to someone: *She wrapped the present in gold paper.*

write down /raɪt 'daʊn/ verb T to write something on a piece of paper: *I know I wrote down Jo's new phone number somewhere!*

Y

young /jʌŋ/ adjective a young person has not yet lived for a long time: *a young man of about 20*

youth hostel /'juːθ ˌhɔːstl/ noun C a type of simple hotel for young people to stay at when they are traveling

Z

zinc /zɪŋk/ noun U a metal that is often mixed with another metal or is used to cover other types of metal to stop rust (=a brown substance that forms on metal)

AMERICAN CUTTING EDGE

Everything you expect from a world-class course ... and more

Cutting Edge is a multilevel general English course for adults and young adults. It combines rich international content, comprehensive grammar, and real-life functional language within a clear, easy-to-teach structure.

Cutting Edge includes these additional key features:

► **High-frequency, useful vocabulary**

A special focus on phrases and language “chunks” makes vocabulary easy to remember and easy to use

► **Regular, well-structured speaking tasks**

A straightforward structure of task preparation, performance, and outcome develops students' speaking skills

► **Complete teaching program**

- Unique *Minidictionary* helps train the learner to study independently
- *Teacher's Resource Books* with a large bank of photocopiable activities, teacher's tips, and alternative teaching suggestions

www.irLanguage.com

مرجع زبان ایرانیان



Students' Book (with *Minidictionary*)
Class Cassettes/Audio CDs (set of 2)
Workbook
Student's Cassette/Audio CD
Teacher's Resource Book
Tests

